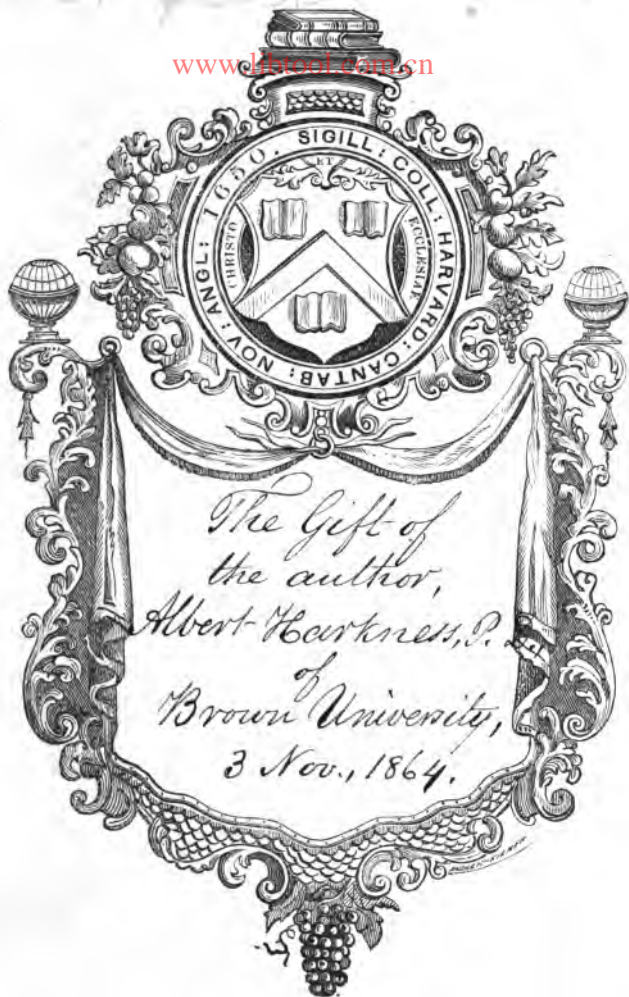


uc T  
8,61,445

[www.digitallibrary.com.cn](http://www.digitallibrary.com.cn)





3 2044 097 062 301

## Standard Classical Works.

**Cicero de Officiis.** With English Notes, mostly translated from -  
-Eamp and Botcher. By THOMAS A. TRACY, of Yale College.  
12mo. 194 pages. . . . . 80

**Horace, The Works of.** With English Notes, for the  
use of Schools and Colleges. By J. L. LISVON, Prof. of Latin Lan-  
guage and Literature in Brown Univ'y. 12mo. 575 pages. . . . . 1 25

**Livy.** Selections from the first five books, together with the  
twenty-first and twenty-second books entire. With a Plan of  
Rome, and a Map of the Passage of Hannibal, and English Notes  
for the Use of Schools. By J. L. LISVON, Prof. of the Latin Lan-  
guage and Literature in Brown Univ'y. 12mo. 329 pages. . . . . 1 00

**Quintus Curtius:** Life and Exploits of Alexander the Great.  
Edited and Illustrated with English Notes, by WILLIAM HENRY  
CROSBY. 12mo. 385 pages. . . . . 1 00

**Sallust's Jugurtha and Catiline.\*** With Notes and a  
Vocabulary. By BUTLER and STUBBS. 12mo. 397 pages. . . . . 1 00

It is believed that this will be found superior to any edition heretofore published in this country.

**The Histories of Tacitus.** With Notes for Colleges. By  
W. S. TYLER, Professor of Latin and Greek in Amherst College.  
12mo. 453 pages. . . . . 1 25

**Tacitus' Germania and Agricola.** With Notes for Col-  
leges. By W. S. TYLER. 12mo. 198 pages. . . . . 60

**Virgil's Æneid.\*** With Explanatory Notes. By HENRY  
FRIZZ, Professor of Latin in the State University of Michigan.  
(Recently published.) 12mo. 598 pages. . . . . 1 35

The type is unusually large and distinct. The work contains  
eighty-five engravings, which delineate the usages, customs, weapons,  
arts, and mythology of the ancients, with a vividness that can be  
obtained only by pictorial illustrations.

---

## Greek Text-Books.

**A First Greek Book\* and Introductory Reader.**  
By A. HARRISS, Ph. D., author of "Arnold's First Latin Book,"  
"Second Latin Book," &c. (Recently published.) 12mo. 278  
pages. . . . . 75

SEE END OF THIS VOLUME.

[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

# SECOND LATIN BOOK ;

COMPRISING

[www.libtopl.com.cn](http://www.libtopl.com.cn)

## HISTORICAL LATIN. READER,

*With Notes and Rules for Translating ;*

AND AN

## EXERCISE - BOOK,

DEVELOPING A

## COMPLETE ANALYTICAL SYNTAX,

IN A SERIES OF

## LESSONS AND EXERCISES,

INVOLVING THE

CONSTRUCTION, ANALYSIS AND RECONSTRUCTION  
OF LATIN SENTENCES.

BY

ALBERT HARKNESS, P. D.,

PROFESSOR OF THE GREEK LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE IN BROWN UNIVERSITY.

---

NEW YORK: .

D. APPLETON & CO., 448 & 445 BROADWAY.

1861.

Educ T 918.61.445  
v Educ T 940.535  
5285,64

[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

1864. Nov. 3

Gift of  
the Author.

---

ENTERED, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1853, by  
D. APPLETON AND COMPANY,  
in the Clerk's Office of the District Court for the Southern District of New-York.

---

## P R E F A C E .

---

THE volume now offered to the public is designed to be at once a Reader and an Exercise Book. It is in its plan and arrangement especially adapted to follow, in the course of classical study, the author's edition of Arnold's First Latin Book, and accordingly presupposes that the pupil has, by the use of that or some similar work, or at least by the study of Latin grammar, become familiar with the common forms and inflections of the language. Starting from this point, it aims to introduce the learner to a true knowledge and appreciation of the *structure* and *spirit* of the Latin tongue; and thus to prepare him to enter with success and pleasure upon the consecutive study of some Latin author.

It is a matter of regret that classes are often put upon the study of Cæsar or Virgil, before they have acquired sufficient knowledge of the structure and idioms of the language to prepare them for any just appreciation of those authors. Nothing tends more to lower the standard of true and accurate classical scholarship.

To explain more fully the plan of the present work, the author begs leave to specify the following points which are believed to be among its leading characteristics:

1. The Latin, which comprises the reading lessons, presents a brief epitome of Roman and Grecian history, and will furnish the pupil with a multitude of facts and incidents at once interesting and instructive.



2. The lessons and exercises, which are carefully adapted to the Latin text and are designed to be studied in connection with it, aim both to develop a complete analytical Syntax and to present a distinct picture of the Latin sentence in all the marked varieties of its form.

3. The analysis of the structure of the Latin sentence, is designed to be at once simple and symmetrical. While it aims to follow closely the growth of the simple sentence from its essential elements to its more expanded forms, while it marks the various ways in which these forms combine with each other, giving rise to a variety of complex and compound sentences, and yet further as it traces the combinations of these again with still others of any of the varieties just mentioned, it recognizes only a few well-defined and leading principles pervading and controlling all these changes—principles which the youngest pupil will readily understand and successfully apply.

4. The exercises consist of three distinct parts; viz.,

1st. A selection of Latin sentences, illustrative of the particular subject of the lesson. These are taken principally from the Latin text, and are designed to be carefully analyzed.

2d. An exercise in changing and reconstructing Latin sentences; in answering historical questions in Latin; or in forming new sentences on given models,—an exercise which the author has found eminently successful both in awakening interest and in giving the learner power and facility in the use of the language.

3d. Translations of English into Latin. The sentences here used are, as far as practicable, conversational, and relate to the historical facts and incidents learned from the reading lessons, thus securing to the pupil a degree of interest and profit which could scarcely be expected from any set exercises on miscellaneous subjects.

5. Rules designed to aid the pupil in recognizing the idioms of the language and in rendering them into good English

are inserted in the volume, and constantly used by means of reference in the notes. This, it is hoped, will not only save the teacher much labor, but will afford him the pleasure of listening to translations comparatively free from those foreign idioms which too often mar the beauty and correctness even of the early efforts of the young student in translating Latin and Greek.

In the preparation of the present work, the author has resorted freely to whatever sources of information were within his reach. He has had before him numerous Grammars of the Latin, Greek, and English languages, editions of Latin authors, works on the structure of language, and on the general subject of Philology. Among the Latin Grammars which have come under his notice, the German of Kritz and Berger deserves special mention, as having furnished important aid in the development of the structure and analysis of the Latin sentence.

The Latin has been selected from Arnold's *Historiæ Antiquæ Epitome*, founded on the *Lateinisches Elementarbuch* of Professors Jacobs and Döring. It consists, with a few unimportant exceptions, of selections from the Latin historians, Eutropius, Justin, and Cornelius Nepos. The work of Eutropius was really an abridgment, founded on "the best authorities, and is, in style, plain, concise, and simple;" Justin's history is made up mainly of selections from Trogius Pompeius, who lived and wrote in the Augustan age; while Nepos belongs to the same period, and was at once the contemporary and friend of Cicero.

In the arrangement of the volume, the Roman history is placed before the Grecian, not only because the former is more simple in style, but also because, in the study of Latin, the history of Rome justly claims an earlier attention than that of Greece.

The present volume is designed to be used in connection with some Latin grammar; for the purposes of those, however,

who do not intend to pursue the study to any considerable extent, the summary of Grammar contained in the author's edition of Arnold's *First Latin Book* may be found sufficient. Accordingly in the preparation of the notes, such grammatical points as seemed to require notice have been explained mainly by appropriate references to the *First Latin Book*, to the *Latin Grammar of Andrews and Stoddard*, and to that of *Zumpt*; thus adapting the notes to the convenience of all who use either of the above works.

The author is happy in this connection to acknowledge his obligations to his friends who have aided him in this work; especially to Professors J. L. LINCOLN and S. S. GREENE of Brown University, for their generous interest in his efforts, and for the valuable suggestions with which they have kindly favored him.

With the above statement of the design and plan of the work, the author now commits it to classical teachers, and to the public generally, in the hope that it may not be found unworthy of a share, at least, of the marked favor with which they have been pleased to receive his former work.

A. HARKNESS.

Providence, *April*, 1853.

## CONTENTS.

---

### READING LESSONS.

#### ROMAN HISTORY.

Period.	Page.
I. Italian and Roman Kings . . . . .	1
II. Roman Struggles and Conquests . . . . .	7
III. Roman Triumphs . . . . .	14
IV. Civil Dissensions . . . . .	22
V. Roman Empire . . . . .	32

#### GRECIAN HISTORY.

I. Traditionary Greece . . . . .	37
II. Grecian Triumphs . . . . .	40
III. Civil Wars in Greece . . . . .	45
IV. Graeco-Macedonian Empire . . . . .	54
V. Decline of Grecian Power . . . . .	65

### LESSONS AND EXERCISES IN SYNTAX.

INTRODUCTION . . . . .	75
------------------------	----

#### CHAPTER I.

##### SIMPLE SENTENCES.

Lesson.	
I. Principal Elements of Sentences; Subject and Predicate.— Declarative Sentences . . . . .	78
II. Subordinate Elements; Modifiers . . . . .	80

Lesson.	Page.
III. Elements of Sentences, continued.—Interrogative and Imperative Sentences . . . . .	88
IV. Simple Subject . . . . .	85
V. Complex Subject.—Modifier; Simple . . . . .	87
VI. Complex Subject.—Modifier; Complex . . . . .	91
VII. Simple Predicate . . . . .	93
VIII. Complex Predicate.—Direct Object; Simple . . . . .	95
IX. Complex Predicate.—Direct Object; Complex . . . . .	97
X. Complex Predicate.—Indirect Object; Simple or Complex . . . . .	99
XI. Complex Predicate.—Remote Object; Genitive . . . . .	101
XII. Complex Predicate.—Remote Object; Ablative . . . . .	104
XIII. Complex Predicate.—Direct Object with Attributive Accusative . . . . .	106
XIV. Complex Predicate.—Combined Objects; two Accusatives . . . . .	109
XV. Complex Predicate.—Combined Objects; Accusative and Dative . . . . .	111
XVI. Complex Predicate.—Combined Objects; Accusative and two Datives . . . . .	113
XVII. Complex Predicate.—Combined Objects; Accusative and Genitive . . . . .	115
XVIII. Complex Predicate.—Combined Objects; Accusative and Ablative . . . . .	117
XIX. Complex Predicate.—Combined Objects; two Datives . . . . .	119
XX. Complex Predicate.—Combined Objects; Dative and Ablative . . . . .	121
XXI. Complex Predicate.—Adverbial Attribute; Adverbs . . . . .	122
XXII. Complex Predicate.—Adverbial Expressions of <i>Manner, Means, &amp;c.</i> . . . . .	126
XXIII. Complex Predicate.—Adverbial Expressions of <i>Time</i> . . . . .	129
XXIV. Complex Predicate.—Adverbial Expressions of <i>Place</i> . . . . .	131
XXV. Complex Predicate.—Oblique Cases with Prepositions as Adverbial Expressions . . . . .	134

CONTENTS.

ix

Lesson.	Page.
XXVI. Complex Substantive-Predicate.—Modifier; Objective or Attributive . . . . .	137
XXVII. Complex Adjective-Predicate.—Modifier; Objective or Attributive . . . . .	139
XXVIII. Complex Adjective-Predicate.—Modifier; Complex	142
XXIX. Elements of Sentences.—Recapitulation . . . . .	144

CHAPTER II

COMPLEX SENTENCES.

§ 1.—COMPLEX SENTENCES; UNABRIDGED.

XXX. Sentence as Subject . . . . .	152
XXXI. Sentence as Predicate . . . . .	157
XXXII. Sentence as Modifier of Subject or other Noun . . . . .	160
XXXIII. Accusative with Infinitive, or Sentence with <i>Quod</i> as Object . . . . .	165
XXXIV. Dependent Question as Object . . . . .	168
XXXV. Sentence with <i>ut</i> or <i>ne</i> as Object.—Indirect Object	170
XXXVI. Adverbial Attributive-Sentences.— <i>Place</i> . . . . .	174
XXXVII. Adverbial Attributive-Sentences.— <i>Time</i> . . . . .	177
XXXVIII. Adverbial Attributive-Sentences.— <i>Cause</i> . . . . .	182
XXXIX. Adverbial Attributive-Sentences.— <i>Cause</i> ; Condition and Concession . . . . .	185
XL. Adverbial Attributive-Sentences.— <i>Manner</i> ; Conse- quence and Comparison . . . . .	191
XLI. Complex and Compound Sentences as Elements of other Sentences . . . . .	194

§ 2.—COMPLEX SENTENCES; ABRIDGED.

XLII. Principal Elements, Abridged . . . . .	198
XLIII. Modifier of Subject or other Noun, Abridged . . . . .	203
XLIV. Object of Predicate, Abridged . . . . .	206
XLV. Attribute of Predicate, Abridged.— <i>Comparison</i> and <i>Participles</i> . . . . .	210

Lesson.	Page.
XLVI. Attribute of Predicate, Abridged; <i>Gerunds</i> and <i>Supines</i> . . . . .	214

[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

### CHAPTER III.

#### COMPOUND SENTENCES.

##### § 1.—COMPOUND SENTENCES; UNABRIDGED.

XLVII. Classes of Compound Sentences . . . . .	218
XLVIII. Formation of Compound Sentences . . . . .	221

##### § 2. COMPOUND SENTENCES; ABRIDGED.

XLIX. Compound Elements.—Subjects, United . . . . .	224
L. Compound Elements.—Predicates, United . . . . .	228
LI. Compound Elements.—Modifiers of Subject, United . . . . .	231
LII. Compound Elements.—Objects of Predicate, United . . . . .	233
LIII. Compound Elements.—Attributives of Predicate, United . . . . .	235
LIV. Elements Common to Different Members . . . . .	237
LV. Classification of Sentences.—Recapitulation . . . . .	239
 RULES FOR TRANSLATING . . . . .	 245
NOTES . . . . .	257
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY . . . . .	287
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY . . . . .	327
HISTORICAL AND GEOGRAPHICAL INDEX . . . . .	348

## EXPLANATIONS.

- A. & S. . . — Andrews & Stoddard's Latin Grammar.  
Z. . . . . — Zumpt's Latin Grammar, American edition.  
F. B. . . . — Harkness' Arnold's First Latin Book.  
P. C. . . . — Arnold's Latin Prose Composition, American edit.  
Smith's Dict. — Smith's Dictionary of Greek and Roman Antiquities.  
Schmitz's Hist. — Schmitz's History of Rome, Andover edition.

Numerals not preceded by any initials refer to articles in this work; and, in the Notes, those enclosed in parentheses refer to the *Rules for Translating*.

The enclosed numerals standing at the beginning of each lesson refer to the paragraphs in the Latin which this lesson is designed to accompany; thus, [1 & 2] at the beginning of the 1st and 2d lessons denotes that those lessons are designed to be learned in connection with the 1st and 2d paragraphs of the Latin.



[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

## SECOND LATIN BOOK.

### ROMAN HISTORY.

#### PERIOD I.—*Italian and Roman Kings.*

FROM THE EARLIEST TIMES TO THE BANISHMENT OF TARQUIN,  
510 B. C.

##### *Early Italian Kings.—Aeneas in Italy.*

1. ANTIQUISSĪMIS temporĭbus Saturnus in Italiam venisse dicĭtur. Ibi haud procul a Janicŭlo arcem condidit, eamque Saturniam appellavit. Hic Itālos primus agricultŭram docuit.

2. Postea Latĭnus in illis regionĭbus imperavit. Sub hoc rege Troja in Asia eversa est. Hinc Aenēas, Anchĭsae filius, cum multis Trojānis, quibus ferrum Graecōrum pepercerat, aufugit, et in Italiam pervēnit. Ibi Latĭnus rex ei benigne recepto filiam Laviniam in matrimonium dedit. Aenēas urbem condidit, quam in honōrem conjūgis Lavinium appellavit.

##### *Ascanius and the Kings of Alba.*

3. Post Aenēae mortem Ascanius, Aenēae filius, regnum accēpit. Hic sedem regni in alium locum traustulit, urbemque condidit in monte Albāno, eamque Albam Longam nuncupavit. Eum secutus est Silvius, qui post Aenēae mortem a Lavinia genitus erat.

Ejus postēri omnes, usque ad Romam conditam, Albae regnavērunt.

4. Unus horum regum, Romūlus Silvius, se Jove majōrem esse dicebat, et, quum tonāret, militibus imperāvit, ut clypeos hastis percutērent, dicebatque hunc sonum multo clariōrem esse quam tonitru. Fulmīne ictus, et in Albānum lacum praecipitātus est.

5. Silvius Procas, rex Albanōrum, duos filios reliquit, Numitōrem et Amulium. Horum minor natu, Amulius, fratri optiōnem dedit, utrum regnum habēre vellet, an bona, quae pater reliquisset. Numitōr paterna bona praetūlit; Amulius regnum obtinuit.

*Birth of Romulus and Remus.*

6. Amulius, ut regnum firmissime possidēret, Numitōris filium per insidias interēmit, et filiam fratris, Rheam Silviam, Vestālem virgīnem fecit. Nam his Vestae sacerdotibus non licet viro nubere. Sed haec a Marte geminos filios, Romūlum et Remum, pepērit. Hoc quum Amulius comperisset, matrem in vincūla conjēcit, puēros autem in Tibērim abjici jussit.

7. Forte Tibēris aqua ultra ripam se effudērat, et, quum puēri in vado essent positi, aqua refluens eos in sicco reliquit. Ad eōrum vagitum lupa accurrit, eosque uberibus suis aluit. Quod videns Faustūlus quidam, pastor illius regiōnis, puēros sustūlit, et uxōri Accae Laurentiae nutriendos dedit.

*Rome founded, 753 B. C.*

8. Sic Romūlus et Remus pueritiam inter pastōres transegērunt. Quum adolevissent, et forte comperissent, quis ipsōrum avus, quae mater fuisset, Amulium inter-

fecērunt, et Numitōri avo regnum restituērunt. Tum urbem condidērunt in monte Aventīno, quam Romūlus a suo nomīne Romam vocāvit. Haec quum moenibus circumdarētur, Remus occisus est, dum fratrem irrīdens moenia transiliēbat.

*Seizure of the Sabine Women.*

9. Romūlus, ut civium numērum augēret, asylum patefēcit, ad quod multi ex civitatibus suis pulsī accurērunt. Sed novae urbis civibus conjūges deērunt. Festum itaque Neptūni et ludos instituit. Ad hos quum multi ex finitimis populis cum mulieribus et libēris venissent, Romāni inter ipsos ludos spectantes virgīnes rapuērunt.

10. Popūli illi, quorum virgīnes raptae erant, bellum adversus raptōres suscepērunt. Quum Romae appropinquārent, forte in Tarpēiam virgīnem incidērunt, quae in arce sacra procurābat. Hanc rogābant, ut viam in arcem monstrāret, eīque permisērunt, ut munus sibi poscēret. Illa petiit, ut sibi darent, quod in sinistris manibus gerērent, annūlos aureos et armillas significans. At hostes in arcem ab ea perducti scutis Tarpēiam obruērunt; nam et ea in sinistris manibus gerēbant.

*The Sabines are received into the City.—Death of Romulus.*

11. Tum Romūlus cum hoste, qui montem Tarpēium tenēbat, pugnam conseruit in eo loco, ubi nunc forum Romānum est. In media caede raptae processērunt, et hinc patres, hinc conjūges et socēros complectebantur, et rogābant, ut caedis finem facērent. Utrīque his precibus commōti sunt. Romūlus foedus icit, et Sabīnos in urbem recēpit.

12. Postea civitatem descripsit. Centum senatores legit, eosque cum ob aetatem, tum ob reverentiam iis debitam, Patres appellavit. Plebem in triginta curias distribuit, easque raptarum nominibus nuncupavit. Anno regni tricesimo septimo, quum exercitum lustraret, inter tempestatem ortam repente oculis hominum subductus est. Hinc alii eum a senatoribus interfectum, alii ad deos sublatum esse existimaverunt.

*Numa Pompilius.*

13. Post Romuli mortem unius anni interregnum fuit. Quo exacto, Numa Pompilius Curibus, urbe in agro Sabinorum, natus rex creatus est. Hic vir bellum quidem nullum gessit; sed non minus civitati profuit. Nam et leges dedit, et sacra plurima instituit, ut populi barbari et bellicosi mores molliret. Omnia autem, quae faciebat, se nymphae Egeriae, conjugis suae, monitu facere dicebat. Morbo decessit, quadragesimo tertio imperii anno.

*Tullus Hostilius.*

14. Numae successit Tullus Hostilius, cuius avus se in bello adversus Sabinos fortem et strenuum virum praestiterat. Rex creatus bellum Albanis indixit, idque trigeminorum, Horatiorum et Curiatorum, certamine finivit. Albam propter perfidiam Metii Suffetii diruit. Quum triginta duobus annis regnasset, fulmine ictus cum domo sua arsit.

*Ancus Marcius.*

15. Post hunc Ancus Marcius, Numae ex filia nepos, suscepit imperium. Hic vir aequitate et religione

avo similis, Latīnos bello domuit, urbem ampliāvit, et nova ei moenia circumdēdit. Carcērem primus aedificāvit. Ad Tibēris ostia urbem condidit, Ostiamque vocāvit. Vicesimo quarto anno imperii morbo obiit.

*Lucius Tarquinius Priscus*

16. Deinde regnum Lucius Tarquinius Priscus accēpit, Demarāti filius, qui tyrannos patriae Corinthi fugiens in Etruriam venērat. Ipse Tarquinius, qui nomen ab urbe Tarquiniis accēpit, aliquando Romam profectus erat. Advenienti aquila pileum abstūlit, et, postquam alte evolavērat, reposuit. Hinc Tanāquil conjux, mulier auguriōrum perita, regnum ei portendi intellexit.

17. Quum Romae commorarētur, Anci regis familiaritatem consecutus est, qui eum filiōrum suōrum tutōrem reliquit. Sed is pupillis regnum intercēpit. Senatoribus, quos Romūlus creavērat, centum alios addidit, qui minōrum gentium sunt appellāti. Plura bella feliciter gessit, nec paucos agros, hostibus ademptos, urbis territorio adjunxit. Primus triumphans urbem intrāvit. Cloācas fecit; Capitolium inchoāvit. Tricesimo octāvo imperii anno per Anci filios, quibus regnum eripuērat, occisus est.

*Servius Tullius.*

18. Post hunc Servius Tullius suscepit imperium, genitus ex nobili femina, captiva tamen et familia. Quum in domo Tarquini Prisci educarētur, flamma in ejus capite visa est. Hoc prodigio Tanāquil ei summam dignitatem portendi intellexit, et conjūgi persuāsit, ut eum sicūti liberos suos educāret. Quum adolevisset, rex ei filiam in matrimonium dedit.

19. Quum Priscus Tarquinius occisus esset, Tanāquil de superioriōre parte domus populūm allocūta est, dicens: regem grave quidem, sed non letāle vulnus accepisse; eum petere, ut populū, dum convaluisset, Servio Tullio obediret. Sic Servius regnāre coepit, sed bene imperium administrāvit. Montes tres urbi adjunxit. Primus omnium censum ordināvit. Sub eo Roma habuit capītum octoginta tria millia civium Romanōrum cum his, qui in agris erant.

20. Hic rex interfectus est scelēre filiae Tulliae et Tarquiniī Superbi, filii ejus regis, cui Servius successerat. Nam ab ipso Tarquinio de gradibus curiae dejectus, quum domum fugeret, interfectus est. Tullia in forum properāvit, et prima conjūgem regem salutāvit. Quum domum rediret, aurīgam super patris corpus, in via jacens, carpentum agere jussit.

*Banishment of Tarquinius Superbus, 510 B. C.*

21. Tarquinius Superbus cognōmen moribus meruit. Bello tamen strenuus plures finitimōrum populōrum vicit. Templum Jovis in Capitolio aedificāvit. Postea, dum Ardeam oppugnābat, urbem Latii, imperium perdidit. Nam quum filius ejus Lucretiae, nobilissimae femīnae, conjūgi Tarquiniī Collatīni, vim fecisset, haec se ipsa occidit in conspectu marīti, patris et amicōrum, postquam eos obtestāta fuērat, ut hanc injuriam ulciscerentur.

22. Hanc ob causam L. Brutus, Collatīnus, aliique nonnulli in exitium regis conjurāunt, populōque persuaserunt, ut ei portas urbis clauderet. Exercitus quoque, qui civitatem Ardeam cum rege oppugnābat, eum reliquit. Fugit itaque cum uxore et libēris suis. Ita

Romae regnātum est per septem reges annos ducentos quadraginta tres.

[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

PERIOD II.—*Roman Struggles and Conquests.*

FROM THE ESTABLISHMENT OF THE COMMONWEALTH TO THE FIRST PUNIC WAR, 244 B. C.

*Consuls at Rome, 509 B. C.—War with Tarquin.*

23. Tarquinio expulso, consules coepere pro uno rege duo creari, ut, si unus malus esset, alter eum coerceret. Annum iis imperium tributum est, ne per diuturnitatem potestatis insolentiores redderentur. Fuerunt igitur anno primo, expulsis regibus, consules L. Junius Brutus, acerrimus libertatis vindex, et Tarquinius Collatinus, maritus Lucretiae. Sed Collatino paulo post dignitas sublata est. Placuerat enim, ne quis ex Tarquiniorum familia Romae maneret. Ergo cum omni patrimonio suo ex urbe migravit, et in ejus locum Valerius Publicola consul factus est.

24. Commovit bellum urbi rex Tarquinius. In prima pugna Brutus consul, et Aruns, Tarquini filius, sese invicem occiderunt. Romani tamen ex ea pugna victores recesserunt. Brutum Romanae matronae, quasi communem patrem, per annum luxerunt. Valerius Publicola Sp. Lucretium, Lucretiae patrem, collegam sibi fecit; qui quum morbo extinctus esset, Horatium Pulvillum sibi collegam sumpsit. Ita primus annus quinque consules habuit.

*War with Porsena, 508 B. C.*

25. Secundo quoque anno iterum Tarquinius bellum Romanis intulit, Porsena, rege Etruscorum, auxi-



lium ei ferente. In illo bello Horatius Cocles solus pontem ligneum defendit, et hostes cohibuit, donec pons a tergo ruptus esset. Tum se cum armis in Tibērim conjēcit, et ad suos transnāvit.

26. Dum Porsēna urbem obsidēbat, Qu. Mucius Scaevōla, juvēnis fortis anīmi, in castra hostium se contūlit eo consilio, ut regem occidēret. At ibi scribam regis pro ipso rege interfēcit. Tum a regiis satellitibus comprehensus et ad regem deductus, quum Porsēna eum ignibus allātis terrēret, dextram arae accensae imposuit, donec flammis consumpta esset. Hoc facinus rex mirātus juvēnem dimisit incolūmem. Tum hic, quasi beneficium refērens, ait, trecentos alios juvēnes in eum conjurasse. Hac re territus Porsēna pacem cum Romānis fecit, Tarquinius autem Tuscūlum se contūlit, ibique privātus cum uxōre consenuit.

*Secession to the Mons Sacer, 494 B. C.*

27. Sexto decīmo anno post reges exactos, popūlus Rōmae seditiōnem fecit, questus quod tribūtis et militia a senātu exhaurirētur. Magna pars plebis urbem reliquit, et in montem trans Aniēnem amnem secessit. Tum patres turbāti Menenium Agrippam miserunt ad plebem, qui eam senatui conciliāret. Hic iis inter alia fabūlam narrāvit de ventre et membris humani corpōris; qua popūlus commōtus est, ut in urbem rediret. Tum primum tribūni plebis creati sunt, qui plebem adversum nobilitātis superbiam defendērent.

*Banishment of Coriolanus, 491 B. C.*

28. Octāvo decīmo anno post exactos reges, Qu. Marcius, Coriolānus dictus ab urbe Volscōrum Coriōlis,

quam bello cepērat, plebi invīsus fieri coepit. Quare urbe expulsus ad Volscos, acerrimos Romanōrum hostes, contendit, et ab iis dux exercitus factus Romānos saepe vicit. Jam usque ad quintum milliarium urbis accesserat, nec ullis civium suōrum legationibus flecti poterat, ut patriae parceret. Denique Veturia mater et Volumnia uxor ex urbe ad eum venērunt; quarum fletu et precibus commōtus est, ut exercitum removēret. Quo facto a Volscis ut proditor occisus esse dicitur.

*The Fabii cut off at the Cremēra, 477 B. C.*

29. Romāni quum adversum Veientes bellum gererent, familia Fabiōrum sola hoc bellum suscepit. Profecti sunt trecenti sex nobilissimi homines, duce Fabio consule. Quum saepe hostes vicissent, apud Cremēram fluvium castra posuerunt. Ibi Veientes dolo usi eos in insidias pellexerunt. In proelio ibi exorto omnes perierunt. Unus superfuit ex tanta familia, qui propter aetatem puerilem duci non potuerat ad pugnam. Hic genus propagavit ad Qu. Fabium Maximum illum, qui Hannilālem prudenti cunctatione debilitavit.

*The Decemviri.—Laws of the Twelve Tables, 451 B. C.*

30. Anno trecentesimo et altero ab urbe condita decemviri creati sunt, qui civitati leges scriberent. Hi primo anno bene egerunt; secundo autem dominationem exercere coeperunt. Sed quum unus eorum Appius Claudius virginem ingenuam, Virginiam, Virginii centurionis filiam, corrumpere vellet, pater eam occidit. Tum ad milites profugit, eosque ad seditionem commovit. Sublata est decemviris potestas, ipsique omnes aut morte aut exilio puniti sunt.

*Election of Military Tribunes, 444 B. C.*

31. Anno trecentesimo decimo ab urbe condita dignitates mutatae sunt, et prouidibus consulibus facti tribuni militares consulari potestate. Hinc jam coepit Romana res crescere. Nam Camillus eo anno Volscorum civitatem, quae per septuaginta annos bellum gesserat, vicit; et Aequorum urbem et Sutrinorum, omnibus delictis exercitiis, occupavit, et tres simul triumphos egit.

*Camillus and the Schoolmaster of Falerii.*

32. In bello contra Veientanos Furius Camillus urbem Falerios obsidebat. In qua obsidione quum ludi literarii magister principum filios ex urbe in castra hostium duxisset, Camillus scelestum munus non accipit, sed hominem nudatum, manibus post tergum illigatis, reducendum Falerios pueris tradidit; virgasque iis dedit, quibus proditorem in urbem agerent.

*Vei taken, 396 B. C.—Rome taken and burnt by the Gauls, 390 B. C.*

33. Hac tanta animi nobilitate commoti Falisci urbem Romanis tradiderunt. Camillo autem apud Romanos crimini datum est, quod albis equis triumphasset, et praedam inique divisisset; damnatusque ob eam causam, et civitate expulsus est. Paulo post Galli Senones ad urbem venerunt, Romanos apud flumen Alliam vicērunt, et urbem etiam occuparunt. Jam nihil praeter Capitolium defendi potuit. Et jam praesidium fame laborabat, et in eo erant, ut pacem a Gallis auro emerent, quum Camillus cum manu militum superveniens hostes magno proelio superaret.

*Valor of Titus Manlius Torquatus, 461 B. C.*

34. Anno trecentesimo nonagesimo quarto post urbem conditam Gallii iterum ad urbem accesserant, et quarto milliario trans Anienem fluvium consederant. Contra eos missus est T. Quinctius. Ibi Gallus quidam eximia corporis magnitudine fortissimum Romanorum ad certamen singulare provocavit. T. Manlius, nobilissimus juvenis, provocacionem accepit, Gallum occidit, eumque torque aureo spoliavit, quo ornatus erat. Hinc et ipse et posteri ejus Torquati appellati sunt. Galli fugam capessiverunt.

*Valor of Valerius Corvus, 348 B. C.—The Gauls cease to trouble Rome.*

35. Novo bello cum Gallis exorto, anno urbis quadringentesimo sexto, iterum Gallus processit robore atque armis insignis, et provocavit unum ex Romanis, ut secum armis decerneret. Tum se M. Valerius, tribunus militum, obtulit; et, quum processisset armatus, corvus ei supra dextrum brachium sedit. Mox, commissa pugna, hic corvus alis et unguibus Galli oculos verberavit. Ita factum est, ut Gallus facili negotio a Valerio interficeretur, qui hinc Corvini nomen accepit.

*Beginning of Samnite Wars, 343 B. C.*

36. Postea Romani bellum gesserunt cum Samnitibus, ad quod L. Papirius Cursor cum honore dictatoris profectus est. Qui quum negotii ejusdam causa Romam rediret, praecepit Q. Fabio Rulliano, magistro equitum, quem apud exercitum reliquit, ne pugnam cum hoste committeret. Sed ille occasione nactus felicissime dimicavit, Samnites delavit. Ob hanc rem

a dictatōre capītis damnātus est. At ille in urbem confūgit, et ingenti favōre militum et popūli liberātus est; in Papirium autem tanta exorta est seditio, ut paene ipse interficeretur. [www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

*The Roman Army is made to pass under the yoke, 321 B. C.—  
The Samnites are conquered, 290 B. C.*

37. Duōbus annis post T. Veturius et Spurius Postumius consules bellum adversum Samnītes gerēbant. Hi a Pontio Thelesīno, duce hostium, in insidias induciti sunt. Nam ad Furcūlas Caudīnas Romānos pellexit in angustias, unde sese expedire non poterant. Ibi Pontius patrem suum Herennium rogāvit, quid faciendum putāret. Ille respondit, aut omnes occidendos esse, ut Romanōrum vires frangerentur, aut omnes dimittendos, ut beneficio obligarentur. Pontius utrumque consilium improbāvit, omnesque sub jugum misit. Samnītes denique post bellum undequinquaginta annōrum superāti sunt.

*War with Pyrrhus, 281 B. C.*

38. Devictis Samnitibus, Tarentīnis bellum indicatum est, quia legātis Romanōrum injuriam fecissent. Hi Pyrrhum, Epīri regem, contra Romānos auxilium poposcērunt. Is mox in Italiam venit, tumque primum Romāni cum transmarīno hoste pugnavērunt. Missus est contra eum consul P. Valerius Laevīnus. Hic, quum exploratōres Pyrrhi cepisset, jussit eos per castra duci, tumque dimitti, ut renuntiārent Pyrrho, quaecunque a Romānis agerentur.

39. Pugna commissa, Pyrrhus auxilio elephantōrum vicit. Nox proelio finem dedit. Laevīnus tamen per

noctem fugit. Pyrrhus Romānos mille octingentos cepit, eosque summo honōre tractāvit. Quum eos, qui in proelio interfecti fuērant, omnes adversis vulneribus et truci vultu etiam mortuos jacere videret, tulisse ad coelum manus dicitur cum hac voce: "Ego cum talibus viris brevi orbem terrarum subigērem."

40. Postea Pyrrhus Romam perrexit; omnia ferro ignēque vastavit; Campaniam depopulatus est, atque ad Praeneste venit milliario ab urbe octavo decimo. Mox terrōre exercitus, qui cum consule sequebatur, in Campaniam se recepit. Legati ad Pyrrhum de captivis redimendis missi honorifice ab eo suscepti sunt; captivos sine pretio reddidit. Unum ex legatis, Fabricium, sic admiratus est, ut ei quartam partem regni sui promitteret, si ad se transiret; sed a Fabricio contemptus est.

41. Quum jam Pyrrhus ingenti Romanorum admiratione teneretur, legatum misit Cineam, praestantissimum virum, qui pacem peteret ea conditione, ut Pyrrhus eam partem Italiae, quam armis occupaverat, obtineret. Romani responderunt, eum cum Romanis pacem habere non posse, nisi ex Italia recessisset. Cineas quum rediisset, Pyrrho eum interroganti, qualis ipsi Roma visa esset; respondit, se regum patriam vidisse.

42. In altero proelio cum rege Epīri commisso Pyrrhus vulneratus est, elephantī interfecti, viginti millia hostium caesa sunt. Pyrrhus Tarentum fugit. Interjecto anno, Fabricius contra eum missus est. Ad hunc medicus Pyrrhi nocte venit promittens, se Pyrrhum veneno occisurum, si munus sibi daretur. Hunc Fabricius vinctum reduci iussit ad dominum. Tunc rex admiratus illum dixisse fertur: "Ille est Fabricius, qui

difficilius ab honestate, quam sola cursu suo averti potest." Paulo post Pyrrhus, tertio etiam proelio fusus, a Tarento recessit, et, quum in Graeciam rediisset, apud Argos, Peloponnēsi urbem, interfectus est.

### PERIOD III.—*Roman Triumphs.*

FROM THE FIRST PUNIC WAR TO THE CONQUEST OF GREECE,  
146 B. C.

#### *First Punic (Carthaginian) War, 264 B. C.*

43. Anno quadringentesimo nonagesimo post urbem conditam Romanorum exercitus primum in Siciliam trajecerunt, regemque Syracusarum Hieronem, Poenosque, qui multas civitates in ea insula occupaverant, superaverunt. Quinto anno hujus belli, quod contra Poenos gerebatur, primum Romani, C. Duillio et Cn. Cornelio Asina consulibus, in mari dimicaverunt. Duillius Carthaginenses vicit, triginta naves occupavit, quatuordecim mersit, septem millia hostium cepit, tria millia occidit. Nulla victoria Romanis gratior fuit. Duillio concessum est, ut, quum a coena rediret, pueri funalia gestantes et tibicen eum comitarentur.

#### *First Punic War, continued.—Invasion of Africa, 256 B. C.*

44. Paucis annis interjectis, bellum in Africam translatum est. Hamilcar, Carthaginensium dux, pugna navali superatur; nam perditis sexaginta quatuor navibus se recepit; Romani viginti duas amisērunt. Quum in Africam venissent, Poenos in pluribus proeliis vicerunt, magnam vim hominum cepērunt, septua-

ginta quatuor civitates in fidem accepērunt. Tum victi Carthaginienses pacem a Romānis petiērunt. Quam quum M. Atilius Regūlus, Romanōrum dux, dare nolle nisi durissimis conditionibus, Carthaginienses auxilium petiērunt a Lacedaemoniis. Hi Xanthippum miserunt, qui Romānum exercitum magno proelio vicit. Regūlus ipse captus et in vincūla coniectus est.

45. Non tamen ubique fortuna Carthaginensibus favit. Quum aliquot proeliis victi essent, Regūlum rogaverunt, ut Romam proficisceretur, et pacem captivorumque permutatiōnem a Romānis obtineret. Ille quum Romam venisset, inductus in senātum dixit, se desiisse Romānum esse ex illa die, qua in potestatem Poenōrum venisset. Tum Romānis suasit, ne pacem cum Carthaginensibus facerent: illos enim tot casibus fractos spem nullam nisi in pace habere: tanti non esse, ut tot millia captivōrum propter se unum et paucos, qui ex Romānis capti essent, redderentur. Haec sententia obtinuit. Regressus igitur in Africam crudelissimis suppliciis exstinctus est.

*End of the First Punic War, 241 B. C.*

46. Tandem, C. Lutatio Catūlo, A. Postumio consulibus, anno belli Punīci vicesimo tertio magnum proelium navāle commissum est contra Lilybaeum, promontorium Siciliae. In eo proelio septuaginta tres Carthaginensium naves captae, centum viginti quinque demersae, triginta duo millia hostium capta, tredēcim millia occisa sunt. Statim Carthaginenses pacem petiērunt, eisque pax tributa est. Captivi Romanōrum, qui tenebantur a Carthaginensibus, redditi sunt. Poeni Sicilia, Sardinia, et ceteris insulis, quae inter Italiam



Africamque jacent, decesserunt, omnemque Hispaniam, quae citra Ibērum est, Romānis permisērunt.

*Siege of Saguntum.—The Second Punic War, 218 B. C.*

47. Paulo post Punīcum bellum renovātum est per Hannibālem, Carthaginiensium ducem, quem pater Hamilcar novem annos natum aris admoverat, ut odium perenne in Romānos jurāret. Hic annum agens vicesī-mum aetātis Saguntum, Hispaniae civitatem, Romānis amīcam, oppugnāre aggressus est. Huic Romāni per legātos denuntiavērunt, ut bello abstinēret. Qui quum legātos admittēre nollet, Romāni Carthagīnem misērunt, ut mandarētur Hannibāli, ne bellum contra socios popūli Romāni gereret. Dura responsa a Carthaginiensībus reddīta. Saguntīnis interea fame victis, Romāni Carthaginiensībus bellum indixērunt.

*Hannibal crosses the Alps, 218 B. C.—Battles of the Ticinus, Trebia, and Lake Trasimēnus.—Battle of Cannae, 216 B. C.*

48. Hannībal, fratre Hasdrubāle in Hispania relicto, Pyrenaeum et Alpes transiit. Tradītur in Italiam octoginta millia pedītum, et viginti millia equītum, septem et triginta elephantos abduxisse. Interea multi Ligūres et Galli Hannibāli se conjunxērunt. Primus ei occurrit P. Cornelius Scipio, qui, proelio ad Ticīnum commisso, superātus est, et, vulnēre accepto, in castra rediit. Tum Sempronius Gracchus conflixit ad Trebam amnem. Is quoque vincitur. Multi popūli se Hannibāli dedidērunt. Inde in Tusciam progressus Flaminium consulem ad Trasimēnum lacum supērat. Ipse Flaminus interemptus, Romanōrum viginti quinque millia caesa sunt.

49. Quingentesimo et quadragesimo anno post urbem conditam L. Aemilius Paullus et P. Terentius Varro contra Hannibalem mittuntur. Quamquam intellectum erat, Hannibalem non aliter vinci posse quam mora, Varro tamen, morae impatiens, apud vicum, qui Cannae appellatur, in Apulia pugnavit; ambo consules victi, Paullus interemptus est. In ea pugna consulares aut praetorii viginti, senatores triginta capti aut occisi; militum quadraginta millia, equitum tria millia et quingenti periierunt. In his tantis malis nemo tamen pacis mentionem facere dignatus est. Servi, quod nunquam ante factum, manumissi et milites facti sunt.

50. Post eam pugnam multae Italiae civitates, quae Romanis paruerant, se ad Hannibalem transtulerunt. Hannibal Romanis obtulit, ut captivos redimerent; responsumque est a senatu, eos cives non esse necessarios, qui armati capi potuissent. Hos omnes ille postea variis suppliciiis interfecit, et tres modios aureorum annulorum Carthaginem misit, quos manibus equitum Romanorum, senatorum, et militum detraxerat. Interea in Hispania frater Hannibalis, Hasdrubal, qui ibi remanserat cum magno exercitu, a duobus Scipionibus vincitur, perditque in pugna triginta quinque millia hominum.

51. Anno quarto postquam Hannibal in Italiam venerat, M. Claudius Marcellus consul apud Nolam, civitatem Campaniae, contra Hannibalem bene pugnavit. Illo tempore Philippus, Demetrii filius, rex Macedoniae, ad Hannibalem legatos mittit, eique auxilia contra Romanos pollicetur. Qui legati quum a Romanis capti essent, M. Valerius Laevinus cum navibus missus est, qui regem impediret, quo minus copias in

Italiam trajicēret. Idem in Macedoniam penētrans regem Philippum vicit.

52. In Sicilia quoque res prospere gesta est. Marcellus magnam hujus insulae partem cepit, quam Poeni occupaverant; Syracūsas, nobilissimam urbem, expugnāvit, et ingentem inde praedam Romam misit. Laevinus in Macedonia cum Philippo et multis Graeciae populis amicitiam fecit; et in Siciliam profectus Hannōnem, Poenorum ducem, apud Agrigentum cepit; quadraginta civitates in deditiōnem accēpit, viginti sex expugnāvit. Ita omni Sicilia recepta, cum ingenti gloria Romam regressus est.

53. Interea in Hispaniam, ubi duo Scipiōnes ab Hasdrubāle interfecti erant, missus est P. Cornelius Scipio, vir Romanorum omnium fere primus. Hic, puer duodeviginti annorum, in pugna ad Ticinum, patrem singulāri virtute servāvit. Deinde post cladem Cannensem multos nobilissimorum juvenum Italiam deserere cupientium, auctoritate sua ab hoc consilio deterruit. Viginti quatuor annorum juvenis in Hispaniam missus, die, qua venit, Carthaginem Novam cepit, in qua omne aurum et argentum et belli apparatus Poeni habebant, nobilissimos quoque obsides, quos ab Hispanis acceperant. Hos obsides parentibus suis reddidit. Quare omnes fere Hispaniae civitates ad eum uno animo transierunt.

54. Ab eo inde tempore res Romanorum in dies laetiores factae sunt. Hasdrūbal a fratre ex Hispania in Italiam evocatus, apud Senam, Picēni civitatem, in insidias incidit, et strenue pugnans occisus est. Plurimae autem civitates, quae in Bruttis ab Hannibāle tenebantur, Romanis se tradiderunt.

55. Anno decimo quarto postquam in Italiam Hannibal venerat, Scipio consul creatus, et in Africam missus est. Ibi contra Hannonem, duce[m] Carthaginiensium, prospere pugnatus, totumque ejus exercitum delet. Secundo proelio undecim millia hominum occidit, et castra cepit cum quatuor millibus et quingentis militibus. Syphacem, Numidiae regem, qui se cum Poenis conjunxerat, cepit, eumque cum nobilissimis Numidis et infinitis spoliis Romam misit. Qua re audita, omnis fere Italia Hannibalem deseruit. Ipse a Carthaginiensibus in Africam redire jubetur. Ita anno decimo septimo Italia ab Hannibale liberata est.

*Battle of Zama, 202 B. C.*

56. Post plures pugnas et pacem plus semel frustratentatam, pugna ad Zama committitur, in qua peritissimi duces copias suas ad bellum educabant. Scipio victor recedit; Hannibal cum paucis equitibus evadit. Post hoc proelium pax cum Carthaginiensibus facta est. Scipio, quum Romam rediisset, ingenti gloria triumphavit, atque Africanus appellatus est. Sic finem accipit secundum Punicum bellum post annum undecimum quam coeperat.

*War with Philip.—Cynoscephalae, 197 B. C.*

57. Finito Punico bello, secutum est Macedonicum contra Philippum regem. Superatus est rex a T. Quinctio Flaminio apud Cynoscephalas, paxque ei data est his legibus: ne Graeciae civitatibus, quas Romani contra eum defenderrant, bellum inferret; ut captivos et transfugas redderet; quinquaginta solum naves haberet; reliquas Romanis daret; mille talenta praestaret.

ret, et obsidem daret filium Demetrium. T. Quinctius etiam Lacedaemoniis intulit bellum, et ducem eorum Nabidem vicit.

[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

*War with Antiochus, 192 B. C.*

58. Finīto bello Macedonico, secūtum est bellum Syriacum contra Antiōchum regem, cum quo Hannibal se junxerat. Missus est contra eum L. Cornelius Scipio consul, cui frater ejus Scipio Africānus legātus est additus. Hannibal navāli proelio victus, Antiōchus autem ad Magnesiam, Asiae civitatem, a Cornelio Scipione consule ingenti proelio fusus est. Tum rex Antiōchus pacem petit. Data est ei hac lege, ut ex Eurōpa et Asia recederet, atque intra Taurum se contineret, decem millia talentorum et viginti obsides praebere, Hannibalem, concitorem belli, dedere. Scipio Romam rediit, et ingenti gloria triumphavit. Nomen et ipse, ad imitationem fratris, Asiatici accēpit.

*War with Perseus.—Pydna, 168 B. C.*

59. Philippo, rege Macedoniae, mortuo, filius ejus Perseus rebellavit, ingentibus copiis paratis. Dux Romanorum, P. Licinius consul, contra eum missus, gravi proelio a rege victus est. Rex tamen pacem petebat. Cui Romani eam praestare noluērunt, nisi his conditionibus, ut se et suos Romanis dedere. Mox Aemilius Paullus consul regem ad Pydnam superavit, et viginti millia pedītum ejus occidit. Equitatus cum rege fugit. Urbes Macedoniae omnes, quas rex tenuerat, Romanis se dediderunt. Ipse Perseus ab amicis desertus in Paulli potestatem venit. Hic, multis etiam aliis rebus gestis, cum ingenti pompa Romam rediit in nave Per-

sei, inusitātae magnitudinis; nam sedēcim remōrum ordīnes habuisse dicitur. Triumphāvit magnificentissime in curru aureo, duōbus filiis utrōque latēre adstantibus. Ante currum inter captivos duo regis filii et ipse Perseus ducti sunt.

*Third Punic War, 149-6 B. C.*

60. Tertium deinde bellum contra Carthagīnem susceptum est sexcentesimo et altero anno ab urbe condita, anno quinquagesimo primo postquam secundum bellum Punicum transactum erat. L. Marcius Censorinus et M. Manlius consules in Africam trajecerunt, et oppugnaverunt Carthagīnem. Multa ibi praeclāre gesta sunt per Scipionem, Scipionis Africani nepotem, qui tribunus in Africa militabat. Hujus apud omnes ingens metus et reverentia erat, neque quidquam magis Carthaginensium duces vitabant, quam contra eum proelium committere.

61. Quum jam magnum esset Scipionis nomen, tertio anno postquam Romani in Africam trajecerant, consul est creatus, et contra Carthagīnem missus. Is hanc urbem a civibus acerrime defensam cepit ac diruit. Ingens ibi praeda facta, plurimaeque inventa sunt, quae multarum civitatum excidiis Carthago collegerat. Haec omnia Scipio civitatibus Italiae, Siciliae, Africae reddidit, quae sua recognoscabant. Ita Carthago septingentesimo anno, postquam condita erat, delēta est. Scipio nomen Africani junioris accēpit.

*Corinth taken, 146 B. C.*

62. Intērim in Macedonia quidam Pseudophilippus arma movit, et P. Juvencium, Romanorum ducem, ad

interneciōnem vicit. Post eum Q. Caecilius Metellus dux a Romānis contra Pseudophilippum missus est, et, viginti quinque millibus ex militibus ejus occisis, Macedoniam recepit; ipsum etiam Pseudophilippum in potestātem suam redēgit. Corinthiis quoque bellum indictum est, nobilissimae Graeciae civitāti, propter injuriam Romānis legātis illātam. Hanc Mummius consul cepit ac diruit. Tres igitur Romae simul celeberrimi triumphi fuērunt; Scipiōnis ex Afrīca, ante cujus currum ductus est Hasdrūbal; Metelli ex Macedonia, cujus currum praecessit Andriscus, qui et Pseudophilippus dicitur; Mummi ex Corintho, ante quem signa aenea et pictae tabulae et alia urbis clarissimae ornamenta praelāta sunt

---

#### PERIOD IV.—*Civil Dissensions.*

FROM THE CONQUEST OF GREECE TO THE DISSOLUTION OF THE  
ROMAN COMMONWEALTH, 31 B. C.

*War with the Lusitanians.—Viriathus, 149 B. C.*

63. Anno sexcentesimo decimo post urbem conditam Viriathus in Lusitania bellum contra Romanos excitavit. Pastor primo fuit, mox latronum dux; postremo tantos ad bellum populos concitavit, ut vindex libertatis Hispaniae existimaretur. Denique a suis interfectus est. Quum interfectores ejus praemium a Caepione consule peterent, responsum est, nunquam Romanis placuisse, imperatorem a militibus suis interfici.

*Numantia taken, 133 B. C.*

64. Deinde bellum exortum est cum Numantīnis, civitatē Hispaniae. Victus ab his Qu. Pompēius, et post eum C. Hostilius Mancīnus consul, qui pacem cum iis fecit infāmē, quam popūlus et senātus jussit infringi, atque ipsum Mancīnum hostībus tradi. Tum P. Scipio Africānus in Hispaniam missus est. Is primum militem ignāvum et corruptum correxit; tum multas Hispaniae civitates partim bello cepit, partim in deditiōnem accēpit. Postrēmo ipsam Numantiam fame ad deditiōnem coēgit, urbemque evertit; reliquam provinciam in fidem accēpit.

*War with Jugurtha, 112 B. C.*

65. P. Scipiōne Nasīca et L. Calpurnio Bestia consulibus, Jugurthae, Numidārum regi, bellum illātum est, quod Adherbālem et Hiempsālem, Micipsae filios, patruēles suos, interemisset. Missus adversus eum consul Calpurnius Bestia corruptus regis pecunia pacem cum eo flagitiosissimam fecit, quae a senātu improbāta est. Denīque Qu. Caecilius Metellus consul Jugurtham variis proeliis vicit, elephantos ejus occīdit vel cepit, multas civitates ipsius in deditiōnem accēpit. Ei successit C. Marius, qui bello terminum posuit, ipsumque Jugurtham cepit. Ante currum triumphantis Marii Jugurtha cum duōbus filiis ductus est vinctus, et mox jussu consūlis in carcēre strangulātus.

*Social or Marsian War, 91 B. C.*

66. Sexcentesimo quinquagesimo nono anno ab urbe condita in Italia gravissimum bellum exarsit. Nam



Picentes, Marsi, Pelignique, qui multos annos populo Romāno obediērant, aequa cum illis jura sibi dari postulābant. Perniciōsum admōdum hoc bellum fuit. P. Rutilius consul in eo occisus est; plures exercitus fusi fugatīque. Tandem L. Cornelius Sulla cum alia egregie gessit, tum Cluentium, hostium ducem, cum magnis copiis, fudit. Per quadriennium cum gravi utriusque partis calamitāte hoc bellum tractum est. Quinto demum anno L. Cornelius Sulla ei imposuit finem. Romāni tamen, id quod prius negaverant, jus civitātis, bello finīto, sociis tribuērunt.

*Mithridatic War.—First Civil War.—Marius, Sulla, 88 B. C.*

67. Anno urbis conditae sexcentesimo sexagesimo sexto primum Romae bellum civile exortum est; eodem anno etiam Mithridaticum. Causam bello civili C. Marius dedit. Nam quum Sullae bellum adversus Mithridatem, regem Ponti, decretum esset, Marius ei hunc honorem eripere conatus est. Sed Sulla, qui adhuc cum legionibus suis in Italia morabatur, cum exercitu Romam venit, et adversarios cum interfecit, tum fugavit. Tum rebus Romae utcunque compositis, in Asiam profectus est, pluribusque proeliis Mithridatem coegit, ut pacem a Romanis peteret, et Asia, quam invaserat, relicta, regni sui finibus contentus esset.

*Civil War, continued.*

68. Sed dum Sulla in Graecia et Asia Mithridatem vincit, Marius, qui fugatus fuerat, et Cornelius Cinna, unus ex consulibus, bellum in Italia repararunt, et ingressi Romam nobilissimos ex senatu et consulares viros interfecerunt; multos proscripserunt; ipsius Sullae

domo eversa, filios et uxōrem ad fugam compulērunt. Universus reliquus senātus ex urbe fugiens ad Sullam in Graeciam venit, orans ut patriae subveniret. Sulla in Italiam trajecit, hostium exercitus vicit, mox etiam urbem ingressus est, quam caede et sanguine civium replēvit. Quatuor millia inermium, qui se dedidērunt, interfici jussit; duo millia equitum et senatorum proscriptis. Tum de Mithridate triumphavit. Duo haec bella funestissima, Italicum, quod et sociale dictum est, et civile, consumpsērunt ultra centum et quinquaginta millia hominum, viros consulares viginti quatuor, praetorios septem, aedilitios sexaginta, senatores fere ducentos.

*Mithridatic War, continued.—Lucullus.*

69. Anno urbis conditae sexcentesimo septuagesimo sexto, L. Licinio Lucullo et M. Aurelio Cotta consulibus, mortuus est Nicomēdes, rex Bithyniae, et testamento populum Romanum fecit heredem. Mithridates, pace rupta, Asiam rursus voluit invadere. Adversus eum ambo consules missi variam habuere fortunam. Cotta apud Chalcedonem victus proelio, a rege etiam intra oppidum obsessus est. Sed quum se inde Mithridates Cyzicum transtulisset, ut, hac urbe capta, totam Asiam invaderet, Lucullus ei, alter consul, occurrit, ac dum Mithridates in obsidione Cyzici commoratur, ipse eum a tergo obsedit, fameque consumptum multis proeliis vicit. Postrimo Byzantium fugavit; navali quoque proelio ejus duces oppressit. Ita una hieme et aestate a Lucullo centum fere millia militum regis extincta sunt,

*War of the Gladiators.—Spartacus, 73 B. C.* JV

70. Anno urbis sexcentesimo septuagesimo octavo novum in Italia bellum commotum est. Septuaginta enim quatuor gladiatores, ducibus Spartaco, Crixo, et Oenomao, e ludo gladiatorio, qui Capuae erat, effugerunt, et per Italiam vagantes paene non levius bellum, quam Hannibal, moverunt. Nam contraxerunt exercitum fere sexaginta millium armatorum, multosque duces et duos Romanos consules vicerunt. Ipsi victi sunt in Apulia a M. Licinio Crasso proconsule, et, post multas calamitates Italiae, tertio anno huic bello finis est impositus.

*Successes of Lucullus against Mithridates.*

71. Interim L. Lucullus bellum Mithridaticum persecutus regnum Mithridatis invasit, ipsumque regem apud Cabira civitatem, quo ingentes copias ex omni regno adduxerat Mithridates, ingenti proelio superatum fugavit, et castra ejus diripuit. Armenia quoque Minor, quam tenebat, eidem erepta est. Susceptus est Mithridates a Tigrane, Armeniae rege, qui tum ingenti gloria imperabat; sed hujus quoque regnum Lucullus est ingressus. Tigranocerta, nobilissimam Armeniae civitatem, cepit; ipsum regem, cum magno exercitu venientem, ita vicit, ut robur militum Armeniorum deleret. Sed quum Lucullus finem bello imponere pararet, successor ei missus est.

*Pompey puts down the Pirates, 67 B. C.—Is appointed successor to Lucullus.—Death of Mithridates, 63 B. C.*

72. Per illa tempora piratae omnia maria infestabant ita, ut Romanis, toto orbe terrarum victoribus, sola

navigatio tuta non esset. Quare id bellum Cn. Pompēio decretum est, quod intra paucos menses incredibīli felicitāte et celeritāte confēcit. Mox ei delātum bellum contra regem Mithridātem et Tigrānem. Quo suscepto, Mithridātem in Armenia Minōre nocturno proelio vicit, castra diripuit, et quadraginta millibus ejus occīsis, viginti tantum de exercītu suo perdīdit et duos centuriōnes. Mithridātes fugit cum uxōre et duōbus comitibus, neque multo post, Pharnācis filii sui seditiōne coactus, venēnum hausit. Hunc vitae finem habuit Mithridātes, vir ingentis industriae atque consilii. Regnāvit annis sexaginta, vixit septuaginta duōbus: contra Romānos bellum habuit annis quadraginta.

*Victories of Pompey over Tigranes: he takes Jerusalem, 63 B. C.*

73. Tigrāni deinde Pompēius bellum intūlit. Ille se ei dedīdit, et in castra Pompēii venit, ac diadēma suum in ejus manibus collocāvit, quod ei Pompēius reposuit. Parte regni eum multāvit et grandi pecunia. Tum alios etiam reges et popūlos superāvit. Armeniam Minōrem Deiotāro, Galatiae regi, donāvit, quia auxilium contra Mithridātem tulērat. Seleuciam, vicinam Antiochiāe civitātem, libertāte donāvit, quod regem Tigrānem non recepisset. Inde in Judaeam transgressus, Hierosolymam, caput gentis, tertio mense cepit, duodēcim millibus Judaeōrum occīsis, cetēris in fidem receptis. His gestis finem antiquissīmo bello imposuit. Ante triumphantis currum ducti sunt filii Mithridātis, filius Tigrānis, et Aristobūlus, rex Judaeōrum. Praelāta ingens pecunia, auri atque argenti infinītum. Hoc tempore nullum per orbem terrarum grave bellum erat.

*Catiline's Conspiracy, 63 B. C.*

74. M. Tullio Cicerōne oratōre et C. Antonio consulibus, anno ab urbe condita sexcentesimo undenonagesimo L. Sergius Catilina, nobilissimi generis vir, sed ingenii pravissimi, ad delendam patriam conjuravit cum quibusdam claris quidem sed audacibus viris. A Cicerone urbe expulsus est, socii ejus deprehensi et in carcere strangulati sunt. Ab Antonio, altero consule, Catilina ipse proelio victus est et interfectus.

*Caesar Consul, 59 B. C.: in Gaul, 58 B. C.*

75. Anno urbis conditae sexcentesimo nonagesimo tertio C. Julius Caesar cum L. Bibulo consul est factus. Quum ei Gallia decreta esset, semper vincendo usque ad Oceanum Britannicum processit. Domuit autem annis novem fere omnem Galliam, quae inter Alpes, flumen Rhodanum, Rhenum et Oceanum est. Britannis mox bellum intulit, quibus ante eum ne nomen quidem Romanorum cognitum erat; Germanos quoque trans Rhenum aggressus, ingentibus proeliis vicit.

*Crassus slain by the Parthians, 53 B. C.*

76. Circa eadem tempora M. Licinius Crassus contra Parthos missus est. Et quum circa Carras contra omnia et auspicia proelium commisisset, a Surena, Ordidis regis duce, victus et interfectus est cum filio, clarissimo et praestantissimo juvene. Reliquiae exercitus per C. Cassium quaestorem servatae sunt.

*Civil War of Pompey and Caesar, 49 B. C.*

77. Hinc jam bellum civile successit, quo Romani nominis fortuna mutata est. Caesar enim victor e Gal-

lia rediens, absens coepit poscere alterum consulatum; quem quum aliqui sine dubitatione deferrent, contradictum est a Pompēio et aliis, jussusque est, dimissis exercitibus, in urbem redire. Propter hanc injuriam ab Arimino, ubi milites congregatos habebat, infesto exercitu Romam contendit. Consules cum Pompēio, senatusque omnis atque universa nobilitas ex urbe fugit, et in Graeciam transiit; et, dum senatus bellum contra Caesarem parabat, hic vacuam urbem ingressus dictatorem se fecit.

*Defeat of Pompey's party in Spain.—Battle of Pharsalia. 48 B. C.—Death of Pompey.*

78. Inde Hispanias petit, ibique Pompēii legiones superavit; tum in Graecia adversum Pompēium ipsum dimicavit. Primo proelio victus est et fugatus; evasit tamen, quia nocte interveniente Pompēius sequi noluit; dixitque Caesar, nec Pompēium scire vincere, et illo tantum die se potuisse superari. Deinde in Thessalia apud Pharsalum ingentibus utrinque copiis commissis dimicaverunt. Nunquam adhuc Romanae copiae majores neque melioribus ducibus conveniant. Pugnatum est ingenti contentione, victusque ad postrimum Pompēius, et castra ejus direpta sunt. Ipse fugatus Alexandriam petiit, ut a rege Aegypti, cui tutor a senatu datus fuerat, acciperet auxilia. At hic fortunam magis quam amicitiam secutus, occidit Pompēium, caput ejus et anulum Caesari misit. Quo conspecto, Caesar lacrymas fudisse dicitur, tanti viri intuens caput, et generi quondam sui.

*Caesar assassinated in the Senate-House, 44 B. C.*

79. Quum ad Alexandriam venisset Caesar, Ptolemaeus ei insidias parare voluit, qua de causa regnum illatum est. Rex victus in Nilo periit, inventumque est corpus ejus cum lorica aurea. Caesar, Alexandria potitus, regnum Cleopatrae dedit. Tum inde profectus Pompeianarum partium reliquias est persecutus, bellisque civilibus toto terrarum orbe compositis, Romam rediit. Ubi quum insolentius agere coepisset, conjuratum est in eum a sexaginta vel amplius senatoribus, equitibusque Romanis. Praecipui fuerunt inter conjuratos Bruti duo ex genere illius Bruti, qui, regibus expulsis, primus Romae consul fuerat, C. Cassius et Servilius Casca. Ergo Caesar, quum in curiam venisset, viginti tribus vulneribus confossus est.

*The Second Triumvirate, Octavius, Antony, and Lepidus, 43 B. C.  
—Death of Cicero.*

80. Interfecto Caesare, anno urbis septingentesimo nono bella civilia reparata sunt. Senatus favēbat Caesaris percussoribus, Antonius consul a Caesaris partibus stabat. Ergo turbata republica, Antonius, multis sceleribus commissis, a senatu hostis judicatus est. Fusus fugatusque Antonius, amisso exercitu, confugit ad Lepidum, qui Caesari magister equitum fuerat, et tum grandes copias militum habebat; a quo susceptus est. Mox Octavianus cum Antonio pacem fecit, et quasi vindicaturus patris sui mortem, a quo per testamentum fuerat adoptatus, Romam cum exercitu profectus extorsit, ut sibi juveni viginti annorum consulatus daretur. Tum junctus cum Antonio et Lepido rempublicam ar-

mis tenēre coepit, senatumque proscripsit. Per hos etiam Cicēro orātor occīsus est, multique alii nobīles.

*Battle of Philippi, 42 B. C.*

81. Interea Brutus et Cassius, interfectōres Caesāris, ingens bellum movērunt. Profecti contra eos Caesar Octaviānus, qui postea Augustus est appellātus, et M. Antonius, apud Philippos, Macedoniae urbem, contra eos pugnāvērunt. Primo proelio victi sunt Antonius et Caesar; periit tamen dux nobilitātis Cassius; secundo Brutum et infīnitam nobilitātem, quae cum illis bellum suscepērat, victam interfecērunt. Tum victōres rempublicam ita inter se divisērunt, ut Octaviānus Caesar Hispanias, Gallias, Italiam tenēret; Antonius Orientem, Lepīdus Afrīcam accipēret.

*Battle of Actium, 31 B. C.*

82. Paulo post Antonius, repudiāta sorōre Caesāris Octaviāni, Cleopātram, regīnam Aegypti, uxōrem duxit. Ab hac incitātus ingens bellum commōvit, dum Cleopātra cupiditāte muliēbri optat Romae regnāre. Victus est ab Augusto navāli pugna clara et illustri apud Actium, qui locus in Epīro est. Hinc fugit in Aegyptum, et, desperātis rebus, quum omnes ad Augustum transīrent, se ipse interēmit. Cleopātra quoque aspīdem sibi admīsit, et venēno ejus exstincta est. Ita bellis toto orbe confectis, Octaviānus Augustus Romam rediit anno duodecimo quam consul fuērat. Ex eo inde tempore rempublicam per quadraginta et quatuor annos solus obtinuit. Ante enim duodēcim annis cum Antonio et Lepīdo tenuerat. Ita ab initio principātus ejus usque ad finem quinquaginta sex anni fuēre.



## PERIOD V.—*Roman Empire.*

FROM THE DISSOLUTION OF THE COMMONWEALTH TO THE DEATH OF DOMITIAN, THE LAST OF THE CAESARS, 96 A. D.

*Tiberius, 14 A. D.*

83. Tiberius Nero, privignus idem ac gener heresque Augusti, totus ab illo diversus fuit; ingenio non solum arroganti trucique, sed etiam occulto, fingendis que virtutibus subdolo. Principia ejus imperii moderata, Germanici Caesaris metu. Quo extincto, metu solutus, mores solvit. Sed ejus petulantiae a Livia matre, quam reverebatur, non nihil obstitum. Rege Cappadociae, per speciem amicitiae, evocato retentoque, ejus regnum in provinciam redēgit. Herodem Agrippam, in custodiam tradidit, quia publice precatus erat, ut Caium, Germanici filium, vidēret Augustum. Inter haec, Livia matre demortua, in omne ruit crudelitatis genus. Drusum Caesarem, ex se genitum, affectati regni suspectum, veneno sustulit. Nerōnem ac Drusum, Germanici filios, nepotes suos, fame necavit. Sejani praefecti praetorii instinctu, Romam primorum civitatis caedibus polluit. Sed tandem ira Principis in ipsum vertit crudelitatis auctorem. In Capream insulam quum secessisset, eam infamem reddidit sua nequitia luxūque. Ad ultimum, deliciis confectus, ad Misenum exstinguitur, principatus sui anno vicesimo tertio.

*Caligula, 37 A. D.*

84. Caius Caligula, Germanico et Agrippina genitus, in castris militari habitu educatus, ex eoque Caligula dictus est. Is primo quidem haud indignum se

Germanico patre, ac populi Romani favore, prae-  
buit. Sed brevi tyrannus existit, Tiberio immanior. Quum  
plurima vesanae mentis deliria edidisset, et adversum  
cunctos ingenti avaritia, libidine, crudelitate saeviret,  
interfectus in palatio est anno imperii tertio.

*Claudius, 41 A. D.*

85. Claudius Nero, Caligulae patruus, ab eo ad lu-  
dibrium reservatus, imperii successor fuit; bonus prin-  
ceps magis, quam sapiens. Britanniam et Orcadas in-  
sulas, sine proelio ac sanguine, subegit. In amicos  
adeo effusus, ut A. Plautium, ob res in Britannia pros-  
pere gestas triumphantem, Caesar ipse prosequeretur,  
eique Capitolium conscendenti laevum tegeret latus.  
Illud dementer, quod, praeterito Britannico filio, Nerone  
privignum heredem imperii fecit. Itaque privigni  
fraude pater cum filio exstinguitur. Tenet fama, venenum  
Claudio ab Agrippina conjuge in bolito datum.  
Annos imperavit quatuordecim.

*Nero, 54 A. D.*

86. Nero, Germanici ex filia nepos, Caligulae avun-  
culo magis, quam avo, se similem prae-  
buit. Agrippinam matrem, Octaviam conjugem, Antoniam amitam,  
aliosque cognatione proximos, Senecam quoque prae-  
ceptorem, Lucani poetae patruum, ipsumque Lucanum,  
necavit. Ad haec magnam urbis partem, obscuris  
aedibus informem, per ludum incendit, ut Trojae re-  
praesentaret incendium: culpam poenamque in Chris-  
tianos transtulit. In re militari nihil omnino ausus,  
Britanniam paene amisit. A senatu hostis judicatus, e  
palatio fugit, et in suburbano se liberti sui interfecit,

trigesimo et altero aetatis anno, imperii quarto decimo ;  
atque in eo omnis familia Augusti consumpta est.

*Galba, 68 A. D., Otho and Vitellius, 69 A. D.*

87. Sergius Galba, Caesar ab exercitu creatus, Nerōni successit. Sed nimia severitas breve ejus imperium fecit. Othōnis insidiis mense septimo jugulatur.

88. Otho Silvius, invāso imperio, haud diuturnior eo, quem sustulerat, Caesar fuit. Quippe, a Vitellio, qui a Germanicis legionibus imperium acceperat, ad Cremōnam levi proelio victus, voluntariam mortem optiit mense imperii quarto.

89. Vitellius, a Vespasiāni ducibus multo cum dedecore captus, per urbem raptatur nudus. Tandem jugulatus, praecipitatur in Tibērim mense imperii octavo.

*Vespasian, 70 A. D.*

90. Vespasiānus huic successit, factus apud Palaestīnam imperator ; princeps obscurē quidem natus, sed optimis comparandus. A Claudio in Germaniam, deinde in Britanniam missus, tricies et bis cum hoste conflixit, duas validissimas gentes, viginti oppida, insulam Vectam, Britanniae proximam, imperio Romano adjecit. Romae se in imperio moderatissime gessit : pecuniae tantum avidior fuit, ita ut eam nulli injuste auferret ; quam quum omni diligentia colligeret, tamen studiosissime largiebatur, praecipue indigentibus. Placidissimae lenitatis, ut qui majestatis quoque contra se reos non facile puniret ultra exsilii poenam. Sub hoc Judaea Romano accessit imperio, et Hierosolyma, quae fuit urbs nobilissima Palaestinae. Achaiam, Lyciam, Rhodum, Byzantium, Samum, quae liberae ante hoc

tempus fuērant, item Thraciam, Ciliciam, Commagēnen, quae sub regībus amīcis egērant, in provinciārum formam redēgit.

91. Offensarum et inimicitiarum immemor fuit: convicia, a cauidicis et philosophis in se dicta, leniter tulit: diligens tamen coercitor disciplinae militaris. Hic cum Tito filio de Hierosolymis triumphavit. Per haec quum senatui et populo, postrēmo cunctis amabilis ac jucundus esset, exstinctus est in villa propria, circa Sabīnos, annum aetatis agens sexagesimum nonum, imperii nonum et diem septimum: atque inter Divos relatus est.

*Titus, 79 A. D.*

92. Huic Titus filius successit, qui et ipse Vespasianus est dictus; vir omnium virtutum genere mirabilis adeo, ut amor et deliciae humani generis dicerentur. Romae tantae civilitatis in imperio fuit, ut nullum omnino puniret, convictos adversum sese conjurationis ita dimiserit, ut in eadem familiaritate, qua antea, habuerit. Facilitatis et liberalitatis tantae fuit, ut negaret quemquam oportere tristem a principe discedere; praeterea quum quodam die in coena recordatus fuisset, nihil se illo die cuiquam praestitisse, dixerit: "Amici, hodie diem perdidit." Hic Romae amphitheatrum aedificavit, et quinque millia ferarum in dedicatione ejus occidit.

93. Per haec inusitato favore dilectus, morbo periit in ea, qua pater, villa, post biennium, menses octo, dies viginti, quam imperator erat factus, aetatis anno altero et quadragesimo. Tantus luctus eo mortuo publicus fuit, ut omnes tanquam in propria doluerint orbitate.

Senātus, obītu ipsīus circa vesp̄eram nunciāto, nocte irrūpit in curiam, et tantas ei mortuo laudes gratiasque congressit, quantas nec vivo unquam egērat, nec prae-senti. Inter Divos relātus est.

*Domitian, 81 A. D.*

94. Domitiānus mox accēpit imperium, frater ipsīus junior; Nerōni, aut Caligūlae, aut Tiberio similior, quam patri, vel fratri suo. Primis tamen annis moderātus in imperio fuit, mox ad ingentia vitia progressus, libidīnis, iracundiae, crudelitātis, avaritiae, tantum in se odii concitāvit, ut merīta et patris et fratris aboleret. Interfēcit nobilissīmos ex senātu: domīnum se et deum primus appellāri jussit: nullam sibi nisi auream et argenteam statuam in Capitolio poni passus est: consobrīnos suos interfēcit: superbia quoque in eo execrabilis fuit. Expeditionēs quatuor habuit: unam adversum Sarmātas; altēram adversum Cattos; duas adversum Dacos. De Dacis Cattisque duplicem triumphum egit: de Sarmātis solam lauream usurpāvit. Multas tamen calamitātes iisdem bellis passus est. Quum ob scelēra universis exōsus esse coepisset, interfectus est suōrum conjuratiōne in pālatio, anno aetātis quadragesīmo quinto, imperii quinto decīmo. Funus ejus cum ingenti dedecōre per vespillōnes exportātum, et ignobiliter est sepultum.

## GRECIAN HISTORY.

PERIOD I.—*Traditional Greece.*

FROM THE FOUNDING OF ATHENS BY CECROPS, 1556 B. C., TO THE  
PERSIAN INVASION, 490 B. C.

*The Early Kings of Attica.*

95. Ante Deucaliōnis tempōra Athenienses regem habuere Cecrōpem Aegyptium; quem, ut omnis antiquitas fabulōsa est, biforem tradidēre, quia primus marem femīnae matrimonio junxit. Huic successit Cranaus, cujus filia Atthis regiōni nomen dedit. Post hunc Amphictyon regnāvit, qui primus Minervae urbem sacrāvit, et nomen civitatī Athēnas dedit. Hujus temporibus aquarum illuvies majōrem partem populōrum Graeciae absumpsit. Superfuērunt, qui in montes se recepēruūt, aut ad regem Thessaliae Deucaliōnem ratibus evecti sunt; a quo propterea genus humanum conditum dicitur. Per ordinem deinde successiōnis regnum ad Erectheum descendit, sub quo frumenti satio apud Eleusin a Triptolēmo reperta est. In hujus munēris honōrem noctes initiōrum sacrātae. Tenuit et Aegcus, Thesei pater, Athēnis regnum: cui quum Theseus successisset, Atticos demigrāre ex agris, et in astu, quod appellātur, omnes se conferre jussit.

*The Founders and first Princes of other Cities.*

96. Argivōrum rex primus Ināchus exstīit; cujus filius Phorōneus vagos homīnes ac dispersos in unum coegisse locum, et moenibus legibusque sepsisse memorātur. Danāus, quinquaginta genēris per totīdem filias

contrucidātis, Argos occūpat. Cadmus, Eurōpae frater, litēras e Phoenicia deportāvit in Graeciam; Thebas in Boeotia condīdit. Rhadamanthus in Lycia, Minos in Creta, summa cum severitātis laude regnārunt. Pelops quoque, Tantāli filius, Pisae rex, deductis colōnis, Peloponnēso nomen fecit.

*Grecian Colonies.*

97. Tum Graecia maxīmis concussa est motībus. Achaei, ex Laconica pulsi, eas occupavēre sedes, quas nunc obtīnent: Pelasgi Athēnas commigravēre; acerque belli juvēnis, nomīne Thessālus, natiōne Thesprotius cum magna civium manu eam regiōnem armis occupāvit, quae nunc ab ejus nomīne Thessalia appellātur.

*Lycurgus, 884 B. C.: Some of his Laws.*

98. Ea tempestāte clarissīmus Graii nomīnis Lycurgus Lacedaemonius, vir genēris regii, fuit severissimārum justissimarumque legum auctor, et disciplīnae convenientissimāe viris: cujus quamdiu Sparta diligens fuit, excelsissīme floruit. Ac primum quidem popūlum in obsequia princīpum, princīpes ad justitiam imperiōrum formāvit. Parsimoniam omnībus suasit. Emi singūla non pecunia, sed compensatiōne mercium jussit. Auri argentīque usum, velut omnium scelērum materiam, sustūlit. Fundos omnium aequaliter inter omnes divīsit. Convivāri omnes publice jussit, ne cujus divitiae vel luxuria in occulto essent. Puēros pubēres in agrum dedūci praecēpit, ut primos annos non in luxuria, sed in opēre et laborībus agērent. Virgīnes sine dote nubēre jussit, ut uxōres eligerentur non pecuniae. Maxīmum honōrem senum esse voluit. Haec quoniam

primo, solūtis antea morībus, dura vidēbat esse, auctōrem eōrum Apollīnem Delphicum fingit. Dein, ut aeternitatem legībus suis daret, jurejurando obligat civitatem, nihil eos de ejus legībus mutatūros, priusquam reverterētur, et simulat, se ad oraculum Delphicum proficisci, consultūrum, quid addendum mutandumque legībus viderētur Deo. Proficiscitur autem Cretam, ibique perpetuum exsilium egit, abjicique in mare ossa sua moriens jussit, ne, reliquiis suis Lacedaemōnem relātis, Spartāni se religiōne jurisjurandi solūtos arbitrarentur.

*Institution of the Olympic Games.—Decennial Archons at Athens.  
—Annual Archons.*

99. Clarissimum deinde omnium ludicrum certamen, et ad excitandam corpōris animique virtutem efficacissimum, Olympiōrum initium habuit, auctōre Iphīto Elio. Is eos ludos mercatumque instituit ante annos quam Roma conderētur septuaginta. Hoc sacrum eodem loco instituisse fertur Atreus, quum Pelōpi patri funēbres ludos faceret. Quo quidem in ludicō, omnisque genēris certaminum Hercūles victor exstīit. Tum Athēnis perpetui Archontes esse desiērunt, quum fuisset ultīmus Alcmaeon : coeperuntque in denos annos creāri ; quae consuetūdo in annos septuaginta mansit : ac deinde annuis commissa est magistratibus respūblica. Ex iis, qui denis annis praefuerunt, primus fuit Charops, ultīmus Eryxias ; ex annuis, primus Creon.

*Legislation of Solon, 594 B. C.*

100. Quum Dracōnis leges crudeliōres essent, quam ut possent observāri, legitur Solon, vir justitia insignis,



qui velut novam civitatem novis legibus condēret. Quo munere ita functus est, ut et apud plebem et optimates, diuturnis antea dissidiis agitatos, parem iniret gratiam. Hujus viri, inter multa egregia, illud quoque memorabile fuit. Inter Athenienses et Megarenses de Salamīne insula, quam sibi uterque populus vindicabat, prope usque ad interitum dimicatum fuerat. Post multas clades acceptas, Athenienses legem tulerunt, ne quis illud bellum reparandum proponeret. Solon igitur quum opportunitatem quandam vidisset insulae vindicandae, dementiam simulat; habitūque deformis, more vecordium, in publicum evolat; factoque concursu hominum, versibus suadere populo coepit, quod vetabatur; omniumque animos ita inflammavit, ut extemplo bellum adversus Megarenses decerneretur, et, devictis hostibus, insula Atheniensium fieret.

---

## PERIOD II.—*Grecian Triumphs.*

FROM THE PERSIAN INVASION TO THE PELOPONNESIAN WAR,  
481 B. C.

*Darius invades Scythia: prepares to invade Greece.*

101. Multis in Asia feliciter gestis, Darius Scythis bellum intulit, et armatis septingentis millibus hominum, Scythiam ingressus, quum hostes ei pugnae potestatem non facerent, metuens, ne interrupto ponte Istri, reditus sibi intercluderetur, amissis octoginta millibus hominum, trepidus refugit. Inde Macedoniam domuit: et quum ex Europa in Asiam rediisset, hortantibus amicis ut Graeciam redigeret in suam potestatem, clas-

sem quingentārum navium comparāvit, eīque Datim praefecit et Artaphernen; hisque ducenta pedītum millia, et decem equītum dedit, causam intersērens, se hostem esse Atheniensibus, quod eōrum auxilio Iōnes Sardes expugnassent, suāque praesidia interfecissent.

*Battle of Marathon, 490 B. C.*

102. Praefecti regii, classe ad Euboeam appulsa, celeriter Eretriam cepērunt, omnesque ejus gentis cives abreptos in Asiam ad regem misērunt. Inde ad Atticam accessērunt, ac suas copias in Campum Marathōna deduxērunt. Is abest ab oppīdo circiter millia passuum decem. Hoc in tempore nulla civitas Atheniensibus auxilio fuit, praeter Plataeenses; ea mille misit militum. Itaque horum adventu decem millia armatorum complēta sunt: quae manus mirabili flagrabat pugnandi cupiditate: quo factum est, ut plus, quam collēgae, Miltiades valuērit, qui unus maxime nitebatur, ut primo quoque tempore dimicarent. Ejus auctoritate impulsī, Athenienses copias ex urbe eduxērunt, locoque idoneo castra fecērunt; deinde postero die, sub montis radicibus, vi summa proelium commiserunt. Datis etsi non aequum locum vidēbat suis, tamen, fretus numero copiarum suarum, configere cupiebat; eoque magis, quod, priusquam Lacedaemonii subsidio venirent, dimicare utile arbitrabatur. Itaque in aciem pedītum centum, equītum decem millia produxit, proeliumque commisit. In quo tanto plus virtute valuērunt Athenienses, ut decemplīcem numerum hostium profīgārint; adeoque perterruerunt, ut Persae non castra, sed naves petierint. Qua pugna nihil est nobilius; nulla enim unquam tam exigua manus tantas opes prostravit.

*Xerxes invades Greece, 480 B. C.*

103. Quum Darius, bellum instauraturus, in ipso apparatu decessisset, filius ejus Xerxes Europam cum tantis copiis invasit, quantas neque antea neque postea habuit quisquam: hujus enim classis mille et ducentarum navium longarum fuit, quam duo millia onerariarum sequebantur: terrestres autem exercitus septingentorum millium pedum, equitum quadringentorum millium fuerunt. Cujus de adventu quum fama in Graeciam esset perlata, et maxime Athenienses peti dicerentur, propter pugnam Marathoniam, miserunt Delphos consultum, quidnam facerent de rebus suis. Deliberantibus Pythia respondit, ut moenibus ligneis se munirent. Id responsum quo valeret, quum intelligeret nemo, Themistocles persuasit, consilium esse Apollinis, ut in naves se suaque conferrent: eum enim a deo significari murum ligneum. Tali consilio probato, addunt ad superiores totidem naves triremes: suaque omnia, quae moveri poterant, partim Salamina, partim Troezena, asportant; arcem sacerdotibus paucisque majoribus natu, ac sacra procuranda tradunt; reliquum oppidum relinquunt.

*Actions at Thermopylae and Artemisium, 480 B. C.*

104. Hujus consilium plerisque civitatibus displicebat, et in terra dimicari magis placebat. Itaque missi sunt delecti cum Leonida, Lacedaemoniorum rege, qui Thermopylas occuparent, longiusque barbaros progredi non paterentur. Hi vim hostium non sustinuerunt, eoque loco omnes interiierunt. At classis communis Graeciae trecentarum navium, in qua ducentae erant

Atheniensium, primum apud Artemisium, inter Euboeam continentemque terram, cum classariis regiis conflixit: angustias enim Themistocles quaerebat, ne multitudine circumiretur. Hinc etsi pari proelio discesserant, tamen eodem loco non sunt ausi manere, quod erat periculum, ne, si pars navium adversariorum Euboeam superasset, ancipiti premerentur periculo. Quo factum est, ut ab Artemisio discederent, et ex adversum Athenas, apud Salamina, classem suam constituerent.

*Battle of Salamis, 480 B. C.*

105. At Xerxes, Thermopylis expugnatis, protinus accessit astu, idque, nullis defendentibus, interfectis sacerdotibus, quos in arce invenerat, incendio delēvit. Cujus fama perterriti classarii quum manere non auderent, et plurimi hortarentur, ut domos suas quisque discederent, moenibusque se defenderent; Themistocles unus restitit, et, universos esse pares posse aiēbat, dispersos testabatur perituros. Idque Eurybiadi, regi Lacedaemoniorum, qui tum summae imperii praeerat, fore affirmabat. Quem quum minus, quam vellet, moveret, noctu de servis suis, quem habuit fidelissimum, ad regem misit, ut ei nuntiaret suis verbis: adversarios ejus in fuga esse, qui si discessissent, majore cum labore, et longinquiore tempore bellum confecturum, quum singulos consecrari cogeretur; quos si statim aggrediretur, brevi universos oppressurum. Hoc eo valebat, ut ingratis ad depugnandum omnes cogerentur. Hac re audita, barbarus, nihil doli subesse credens, postridie alienissimo sibi loco, contra opportunissimo hostibus, adeo angusto mari conflixit, ut ejus multitudo navium

explicāri non potuērit. Victus ergo est magis consilio Themistōclis, quam armis Graeciae.

*Xerxes flies back into Asia.*

106. Hic etsi male rem gessērat, tamen tantas habēbat reliquias copiārum, ut etiam cum his opprimēre posset hostes. Itērum ab eōdem gradu depulsus est. Nam Themistōcles, verens ne bellāre perseverāret, certiorē eum fecit, id agi, ut pons, quem ille in Hellesponto fecerat, dissolverētur, ac reditu in Asiam excluderētur; idque ei persuāsit. Itaque, qua sex mensibus iter fecerat, eādem minus diēbus triginta in Asiam reversus est, seque a Themistōcle non superātum, sed conservātum judicāvit. Sic unius viri prudentia Graecia liberāta est, Europaeque succubuit Asia. Haec altera victoria, quae cum Marathonio possit comparāri tropaeo: nam pari modo apud Salamīna, parvo numēro navium, maxīma post homīnum memoriā classis est devicta.

*Battles of Plataea and Mycale, 479 B. C.*

107. Postēro anno quam Xerxes in Asiam refugerat, Graeci, duce Pausania, Mardonium, regis genērū, apud Plataeas fuderunt: quo proelio ipse dux cecidit, Barbarorumque exercitus interfectus est. Reprehensus Pausanias, quod ex praeda tripōdem aureum Delphis posuit, epigrammāte scripto, in quo erat haec sententia: suo ductu Barbāros apud Plataeas esse delētos, ejusque victoriae ergo Apollīni donum dedisse. Hos versus Lacedaemonii exsculpsērunt, neque aliud scripsērunt, quam nomīna eārum civitātum, quārum auxilio Persae erant victi. Eōdem forte die, quo Mardonii

copiae delētae sunt, in Asia, ad montem Mycālen, Persae a Graecis navāli proelio superāti sunt. Jamque omnibus pacātis, Athenienses belli damna reparāre coepērunt. Quumque Phalerico portu neque magno neque bono uterentur, Themistōclis consilio triplex Piraei portus constitūtus est, isque moenibus circumdātus, ut ipsam urbem dignitāte aequiparāret, utilitatē superāret. Idem muros Athenārum restituit, non sine pericūlo suo, quum Lacedaemonii legātos Athēnas mississent, qui id fiēri vetārent.

---

### PERIOD III.—*Civil Wars in Greece.*

FROM THE PELOPONNESIAN WAR TO THE ACCESSION OF PHILIP OF MACEDON, 360 B. C.

#### *The Peloponnesian War, 431 B. C.—Pericles.*

108. Quum Athenienses maris imperium non sine superbia sociorumque injuria exercērent, multīque, gravi eōrum jugo fatigāti, alios, qui se tuerentur, circumspicērent; tota Graecia, ducibus Lacedaemoniis, aemulāe urbi magnitudīnem et incrementa invidentibus, in duas partes divīsa, velut in viscēra sua arma convertit. Hoc bellum, quo nullum aliud florentes Graeciae res gravius afflixit, saepius susceptum et depositum est. Initio Spartāni fines Attīcae populabantur, hostesque ad proelium provocābant. Sed Athenienses, Pericles consilio, uliōnis tempus expectantes intra moenia se continēbant. Deinde, paucis diēbus interjectis, naves conscendunt, et, nihil sentientibus Lacedaemoniis, totam Laconiam depraedantur. Clara quidem haec Pericles

expeditio est habita; sed multo clarior privati patrimonii contemptus fuit. Nam in populatione ceterorum agrorum, Pericles agros hostes intactos reliquerant, ut aut invidiam ei apud cives concitarent, aut in proditiōnis suspiciōnem adducerent. Quod intelligens, Pericles agros reipublicae dono dedit. Post haec aliquot diebus interjectis, navali proelio dimicatum est. Victi Lacedaemonii fugerunt. Post plures annos, fessi malis, pacem in annos quinquaginta fecere, quam non nisi sex annos servaverunt. Nam inducias, quas proprio nomine pepigerant, ex sociorum persona rumpabant. Hinc bellum in Siciliam translatum est.

*Expedition of the Athenians against Sicily, 415 B. C.*

109. Quum enim jam antea, bello inter Catinienses et Syracusanos exorto, Athenienses Catiniensibus opem tulissent, tempore interjecto, quum pacis conditiones a Syracusanis non servarentur, illi denuo legatos Athenas miserunt, qui sordida veste, capillo barbâque promissa, concionem adeunt, populumque lacrymis movent, ut, quamvis Peloponnesiaco bello districtus, auxilium illis mittendum censeret. Ig̃tur classis ingens decernitur; creantur duces Nicias, Alcibiades et Lamachus; tantaeque vires in Siciliam effusae sunt, ut iis ipsis terrōri essent, quibus auxilio venerant.

*Sicilian Expedition, continued.*

110. Brevi post, quum Alcibiades revocatus esset, Nicias et Lamachus duo proelia pedestria secundo Marte pugnant; munitionibusque urbi Syracusarum circumdatis, incolae etiam marinis comitatibus intercludunt. Quibus rebus fracti Syracusani, auxilium a

Lacedaemoniis petivērunt. Ab his mittitur Gylippus, qui, quum in itinere de belli jam inclināto statu audivisset, auxiliis partim in Graecia, partim in Sicilia contractis, opportūna bello loca occupat. Duobus deinde proeliis victus, tertio hostes in fugam conjecit, sociosque obsidiōne liberavit. In eo proelio Lamachus fortiter pugnans occisus est.

*Fatal termination of the Expedition, 413 B. C.*

111. Sed quum Athenienses, terrestri bello superati, portum Syracusarum tenerent, Gylippus classem Lacedaemone cum auxiliis arcessit. Quo cognito et ipsi Athenienses in locum amissi ducis Demosthenem et Eurymedonta cum supplemento copiarum mittunt; et, quasi Graeciae bellum in Siciliam translatum esset, ita ex utraque parte summis viribus dimicabatur. Prima igitur congressione navalis certaminis Athenienses vincuntur; castra quoque cum omni publica ac privata pecunia amittunt. Inter haec mala quum etiam terrestri proelio victi essent, Demosthenes censere coepit, ut abirent Sicilia, dum res, quamvis afflictas, nondum tamen perditas essent. Nicias autem, seu pudore male actae rei, seu impellente fato, manere contendit. Reparatur igitur navale bellum; sed inscitia ducum, qui Syracusanos, inter angustias maris facile se tuentes, temere aggressi fuerant, Atheniensium copiae iterum vincuntur. Eurymedon dux in prima acie fortissime dimicans, primus cadit: triginta naves, quibus praefuerat, incenduntur; Demosthenes et Nicias autem cum reliquiis exercitus terrestri itinere fugiunt. Ab his relictas centum triginta naves Gylippus invasit, ipsos deinde insequitur; fugientes partim capit, partim caedit.



Demosthēnes, amisso exercītu, a captivitāte gladio et voluntaria morte se vindicat: Nicias autem cladem suōrum auxit dedecōre captivitātis.

*Alcibiades negotiates with the Athenians at Samos.—The Four Hundred, 411 B. C.*

112. Per idem tempus Alcibiādes cum duce exercitus Atheniensium, qui apud Samum morabatur, per internuntios colloquitur, polliceturque his amicitiam, si respublica a populo ad senatum translata foret. Itaque, permittente populo, imperium ad senatum transfertur. Qui quum crudeliter in plebem consuleret, ab exercitu Alcibiādes exsul revocatur, duxque classi constituitur. Statim igitur Athēnas scripsit, se cum exercitu venturum, recepturumque a quadringentis jura populi, nisi ipsi redderent. Hac denuntiatiōne territi senatores, primo urbem prodere Lacedaemoniis tentavere; dein, quum id nequissent, in exsilium profecti sunt. Itaque Alcibiādes, patria ab intestino malo liberata, summa cura classem instruit, atque ita in bellum adversus Lacedaemonios perrexit.

*Successes of Alcibiades against the Lacedaemonians.*

113. Hac expeditiōne tanta subito rerum commutatio facta est, ut Lacedaemonii, qui paulo ante victores viguerant, perterriti pacem peterent; victi enim erant quinque terrestribus proeliis, tribus navalibus, in quibus trecentas trirēmes amisserant, quae captae in hostium venerant potestatem. Alcibiādes simul cum collegis receperat Ioniam, Hellespontum, multas praeterea urbes Graecas, quae in ora sitae sunt Asiae: quarum expugnaverant quam plurimas, in his Byzantium; ne-

que minus multas consilio ad amicitiam adjunxerant, quod in captos benevolentia fuerant usi. Inde praeda onusti, locupletato exercitu, maximis rebus gestis, Athēnas venērunt.

*Cyrus (the Younger) favors Lysander and the Lacedaemonians, 407 B. C.*

114. Dum haec geruntur, a Lacedaemoniis Lysander classi bellōque praeficitur; et in locum Tissaphernis Darius, rex Persarum, filium suum, Cyrum, Ioniae Lydiaeque praeposuit, qui Lacedaemonios auxiliis opibusque ad spem fortunae prioris erexit. Aucti igitur viribus Alcibiadem cum centum navibus in Asiam profectum, dum agros populatur, repentino adventu oppressere. Magnae et inopinatae cladis nuntius quum Athēnas venisset, tanta Atheniensium desperatio fuit, ut statim Cononem in Alcibiadis locum mitterent, ducis se fraude magis quam belli fortuna victos arbitran-tes. Alcibiades autem, impetum multitudinis veritus, in voluntarium exsilium proficiscitur.

*Fatal defeat of the Athenians at Aegospotamos, 405 B. C.*

115. Itaque Conon, Alcibiadi suffectus, classem maxima industria adornat; sed navibus exercitus de-erat. Nam, ut numerus militum expleretur, senes et pueri arma capere coacti sunt. Pluribus itaque proeliis adverso Marte pugnatis, tandem Lysander, Spartānorum dux, Atheniensium exercitum, qui, navibus relictis, in terram praedatum exierat, ad Aegos flumen oppressit, eoque impetu totum bellum delēvit. Hac enim clade res Atheniensium penitus inclinata est. Tributariae civitates, quas metus in fide retinuerat,

Lysandro se tradidērunt; qui, ejectis iis, qui Atheniensium rebus studērent, decem in unaquāque civitatē delēgit viros, quibus summum imperium potestatemque omnium rerum commisit.

*Athens surrenders to Lysander, 404 B. C.*

116. Lysander Athēnas navigāvit, miseramque civitatem, obsidiōne circumdātā, fame urget. Sciēbat enim, neque ex advectis copiis multum superesse, et, ne novae advēhi possent, providēbat. Quibus malis Athenienses fracti, multis fame et ferro amissis, pacem petivēre; quae an dari debēret, diu inter Spartānos sociosque deliberātum est. Quum nonnulli nomen Atheniensium delendum, urbemque incendio consumendam censērent, Spartāni negārunt, se passūros, ut ex duōbus Graeciae oculis alter erueretur; pacemque Atheniensibus sunt pollicīti, si longi muri brachia dejicerent, navesque, quae reliquae forent, tradērent; denique si respublica triginta rectōres, ex civibus deligendos, accipēret.

*Tyranny of the Thirty.*

117. His legibus acceptis, tota civitas subīto mutāri coepit. Triginta rectōres reipublicae constituuntur, Lacedaemoniis et Lysandro dediti, qui brevi tyrannidem in cives exercēre coepērunt. Quippe a principio tria millia satellitum sibi statuunt; et, quasi hic numerus ad continendam civitatem non sufficēret, septingentos milites a victoribus accipiunt. His copiis instructi exhaustam urbem caedibus et rapinis fatigant: quumque hoc uni ex numero suo Theramēni displicēre didicissent, ipsum quoque ad terrōrem omnium interficiunt.

Quo factum est, ut multi, urbe relicta, exsilio miseriae, quam domesticum terrorem pati mallent.

*Thrasybulus occupies Phyle, 404 B. C.*

118. Quum triginta tyranni, praepositi a Lacedaemoniis, servitute oppressas tenērent Athēnas, Thrasybūlus (cui nemo fere praeferendus fide, constantia, magnitudine animi, in patriam amore) Phylon confūgit, quod est castellum in Attica munitissimum, quum non plus secum haberet, quam triginta de suis. Contemptus est primo a tyrannis, ignorantibus, nihil in bello debere contemni. Hinc, viribus paulatim auctis, in Piraeum transiit, Munychiamque munivit. Hanc bis tyranni oppugnare sunt adorti, ab eaque turpiter repulsi protinus in urbem, armis impedimentisque amissis, refugerunt. Usus est Thrasybūlus non minus prudentia, quam fortitudine, nam cedentes violari vetuit: cives enim civibus parcere aequum censēbat; neque quisquam est vulneratus, nisi qui prior impugnare voluit; neminem jacentem veste spoliavit; nihil attigit praeter arma, quorum indigebat, et quae ad victum pertinēbant. In secundo proelio cecidit Critias, triginta tyrannorum acerrimus.

*The Expedition of Cyrus the Younger.—Retreat of the Ten Thousand, 401 B. C.*

119. Eodem fere tempore Dariūs, rex Persarum, moritur, Artaxerxe et Cyro filiis relictis. Regnum Artaxerxi, Cyro urbes Lydiae, quibus praefectus fuit, testamento legavit. Sed Cyro iudicium patris injuria videbatur; itaque occulte adversus fratrem bellum paravit. Quod quum nuntiatum esset Artaxerxi, Cyrum

ad se arcessitum compediibus aureis vinxit, interfecissetque, nisi mater prohibuisset. Quod periculum quum effugisset, Cyrus jam non occulte bellum, sed palam parare coepit; auxilium undique contrahit. Sed quum in proelio commisso fratrem imprudentius aggreditur, hunc quidem equi fuga periculo subtrahit, Cyrus autem a cohorte regia circumventus interficitur. In eo proelio decem millia Graecorum in auxilio Cyri fuere; quae et in cornu, in quo steterant, vicerunt, et post mortem Cyri neque armis a tanto exercitu vinci, neque dolo capi potuerunt, sed per indomitas nationes et gentes barbaras, virtute sua confisi, in patriam revertuntur.

*Peace of Antalcidas, 387 B. C.—Phoebidas seizes the Cadmea, 382 B. C.*

120. Dum haec geruntur, Artaxerxes, rex Persarum, legatos in Graeciam mittit, per quos jubet omnes ab armis discedere; qui aliter fecisset, eum se pro hoste habiturum: civitatibus libertatem suamque omnia restituit. Fessi tot bellis Graeci cupide paruunt. Paucis annis interjectis, Phoebidas Lacedaemonius, quum exercitum Olynthum duceret, itaque per Thebas faceret, Cadmeam occupavit impulsu perpaucorum Thebanorum, qui, adversariae factioni quo facilius resisterent, Lacorum rebus studebant. Quo facto, eum Lacedaemonii ab exercitu removērunt, pecuniāque multarunt; neque eo magis arcem Thebanis reddiderunt. Liberandae patriae propria laus est Pelopidae, qui, exilio multatus, Athenas se contulerat. Ille, quum tempus est visum rei gerendae, communiter cum his, qui Thebis idem sentiēbant, diem delēgit, ad inimicos op-

primendos civitatemque liberandam, eum, quo maximi magistrātus simul consueverant epulāri. Quum, vesperscente coelo, duodēcim adolescentūli Thebas pervenissent, magistratuum statim ad aures pervēnit, exsulēs in urbem devenisse. Id illi, vino epulisque dediti, usque eo despexerunt, ut ne quaerere quidem de tanta re laborārint: qui omnes, quum jam nox processisset, vinolenti ab exsulibus, duce Pepolida, sunt interfecti. Quibus rebus confectis, vulgo ad arma libertatemque vocāto, non solum qui in urbe erant, sed etiam undique ex agris concurrerunt; praesidium Lacedaemoniorum ex arce pepulerunt; patriam obsidione liberaverunt.

*Epaminondas.—Battle of Leuctra, 371 B. C.: of Mantinea, 362 B. C.*

121. Paucis post annis, Epaminondas, dux Thebanus, apud Leuctra superavit Lacedaemonios, eoque res utrorumque perduxit, ut Thebani Spartam oppugnarent, Lacedaemonii satis haberent, si salvi esse possent. Idem imperator apud Mantinēam, quum universi in unum hostes impetum fecissent, graviter vulneratus concidit. Hujus casu aliquantum retardati sunt Boeotii, neque tamen prius pugna excesserunt, quam repugnantes profligarunt. At Epaminondas quum animadverteret, mortiferum se vulnus accepisse, simulque, si ferrum, quod ex hastili in corpore remanserat, extraxisset, animam statim emissurum, usque eo retinuit, quoad renuntiatum est, vicisse Boeotios. Id postquam audivit, "Satis," inquit, "vixi; invictus enim morior." Tum, ferro extracto, confestim exanimatus est.

PERIOD IV.—*Graeco-Macedonian Empire.*

FROM THE ACCESSION OF PHILIP TO THE DEATH OF ALEXANDER,  
323 B. C.

*Decline of the Grecian States.—Rise of the Macedonian Power.*

122. Sine dubio post Leuctricam pugnam Lacedaemonii se nunquam refecerunt; et Thebae, quod, quamdiu Epaminondas praefuit reipublicae, caput fuit totius Graeciae, et ante eum natum, et post ejus interitum, perpetuo alieno paruerunt imperio. Athenienses, non ut olim in classem et exercitum, sed in dies festos apparatusque ludorum reditus publicos effundebant, frequentiusque in theatris quam in castris versabantur. Quibus rebus effectum est, ut obscurum antea Macedonum nomen emergeret; et Philippus, obses triennio Thebis habitus in Epaminondae domo, hujus praestantissimi viri et Pelopidae virtutibus eruditus, Graeciae servitutis jugum imponeret.

*Philip takes Amphipolis, 358 B. C.*

123. Huic regi primum cum Atheniensibus certamen ad Amphipolin fuit; quibus per insidias victis, quum interficere omnes posset, incolumes sine pretio dimisit. Post haec, bello in Illyrios translato, multa millia hostium caedit. Urbem nobilissimam Larissam capit in Thessalia, non praedae cupiditate, sed quod exercitui suo robur Thessalorum equitum adjungere gestiabat.

*Extension of Philip's power.*

124. Philippus, quum magnam gloriam apud omnes nationes adeptus esset, Olynthios aggreditur. Re-

cepērant enim per misericordiam, post caedem unius, duos fratres ejus, quos Philippus ex noverca genitos, velut aemulos regni, interficere gestiēbat. Ob hanc igitur causam urbem antiquam et nobilem excindit, et fratres olim destināto supplicio tradit, simulque praeda ingenti fruītur. Inde auraria in Thessalia, argenti metalla in Thracia occūpat. His ita gestis, forte evēnit, ut eum fratres duo, reges Thraciae, disceptatiōnum suarum iudicem eligērent. Sed Philippus ad iudicium, velut ad bellum, instructo exercitu supervēnit, et regno utrumque spoliāvit.

*Battle of Chaeronea, 338 B. C.*

125. Quum, in Scythiam praedandi causa profectus, virtute et numero praestantes Scythas dolo vicisset, diu dissimulatum bellum Atheniensibus infert, quorum causae Thebani se junxerunt. Facta igitur inter duas antea infestissimas civitates societate, legationibus Graeciam fatigant. Communem hostem putant communibus viribus summovendum; neque enim cessaturum Philippum, nisi omnem Graeciam domuerit. Motae quaedam civitates Atheniensibus se jungunt; quasdam autem ad Philippum belli metus traxit. Proelio ad Chaeroniam commisso, quum Athenienses longe majore militum numero praestarent, tamen assiduis bellis indurata Macedonum virtute vincuntur. Non tamen immemores pristinae virtutis ceciderunt; quippe adversis vulneribus omnes loca, quae tuenda a ducebatur accepērant, morientes corporibus texerunt. Hic dies universae Graeciae et gloriam dominationis et vetustissimam libertatem finivit.



*Philip prepares to invade Persia.*

126. Hujus victoriae callide dissimulata laetitia est. Non solita sacra Philippus illa die fecit; non in convivio risit; non coronas aut unguenta sumpsit; et, quantum in illo fuit, ita vicit, ut victorem nemo sentiret. Atheniensibus, quos passus infestissimos fuerat, et captivos gratis remisit, et bello consumptorum corpora sepulturae reddidit. Compositis in Graecia rebus, omnium civitatum legatos ad formandum rerum praesentium statum evocari Corinthum jubet. Ibi pacis leges universae Graeciae pro meritis singularum civitatum statuit, conciliumque omnium, veluti unum senatum, ex omnibus legit. Auxilia deinde singularum civitatum describuntur; nec dubium erat, eum Persarum imperium et suis et Graeciae viribus impugnatum esse.

*Death of Philip, 336 B. C.*

127. Interea dum auxilia a Graecia coeunt, nuptias Cleopatrae filiae, et Alexandri, quem regem Epiri fecerat, magno apparatu celebrat. Ubi quum Philippus ad ludos spectandos, medius inter duos Alexandros, et filium et genitorem, contendere, Pausanias, nobilis ex Macedonibus adolescens, occupatis angustiis, Philippum in transitu obruncat. Hic ab Attalo indigno modo tractatus, quum saepe querelam ad Philippum frustra detulisset, et honoratum insuper adversarium videret, iram in ipsum Philippum vertit, ultionemque, quam ab adversario non poterat, ab iniquo iudice exegit.

*Alexander the Great succeeds to the Macedonian Throne, 336 B. C.*

128. Philippo Alexander filius successit, et virtute et vitiis patre major. Vincendi ratio utriusque diversa.

Hic aperte, ille artibus bella tractabat. Deceptis ille gaudere hostibus, hic palam fusis. Prudentior ille consilio, hic animo magnificentior. Iram pater dissimulare, plerumque etiam vincere; hic ubi exarsisset, nec dilatio ultionis, nec modus erat. Vini uterque nimis avidus; sed ebrietatis diversa ratio. Pater de convivio in hostem procurrere, manum conserere, periculis se temere offerre; Alexander non in hostem, sed in suos saevire. Regnare ille cum amicis volebat; hic in amicos regna exercēbat. Amari pater malle, hic metui. Literarum cultus utriusque similis. Solertiae pater majoris, hic fidei. Verbis atque oratione Philippus, hic rebus moderatior. Parcendi victis filio animus promptior; ille nec sociis abstinēbat. Frugalitati pater, luxuriae filius magis deditus erat. Quibus artibus orbis imperii fundamenta pater jecit, operis totius gloriam filius consummavit.

*Beginning of Alexander's Reign.*

129. Imperio suscepto, prima Alexandro cura paternarum exsequiarum fuit; in quibus ante omnia caedis conscios ad tumulum patris occidi jussit. Inter initia regni multas gentes rebellantes compescuit; orientes nonnullas seditiones exstinxit. Deinde ad Persicum bellum proficiscens, patrimonium omne suum, quod in Macedonia et Europa habebat, amicis divisit; sibi Asiam sufficere praefatus. Nec exercitui alius quam regi animus fuit. Quippe omnes obliti conjugum liberorumque, et longinqua a domo militiae, nihil nisi Orientis opes cogitabant. Quum delati in Asiam essent, primus Alexander jaculum velut in hostilem terram jecit; armatusque de navi tripudianti similis pro-

siluit, atque ita hostias caedit, precātus, ne se regem illae terrae invītae accipiant. In Ilio quoque ad tumūlos herōum, qui Trojāno bello cecidērunt, parentāvīt.

*Battle of the Granicus, 334 B. C.*

180. Inde hostem petens milītes a populatiōne Asiae prohibuit parcendum suis rebus praefātus, nec perdenda ea, quae possessūri venērunt. In exercītu ejus fuēre pedītum triginta duo millia, equītum quatuor millia quingenti, naves centum octoginta duae. Hac tam parva manu universum terrārum orbem vincēre est aggressus. Quum ad tam periculōsum bellum exercītum legēret, non juvēnes robustos, sed veterānos, qui cum patre patrisque militavērunt, elēgit: ut non tam milītes, quam magistros militiae electos putāres. Prima cum hoste congressio in campis Adrastīae fuit. In acie Persārū sexcenta millia militum fuērunt, quae non minus arte quam virtūte Macedōnum superāta, terga vertērunt. Magna itāque caedes Persārū fuit. De exercītu Alexandri novem pedītes, centum viginti equītes cecidēre; quos rex magnifice humātos statuis equestribus donāvit; cognātis eōrum autem immunitātes a publicis muneribus dedit. Post victoriam major pars Asiae ad eum defēcit. Habuit et plura proelia cum praefectis Darīi, quos jam non tam armis, quam terrōre nomīnis sui vicit.

*Battle of Issus, 333 B. C.*

181. Interea Darīus cum quadringentis millibus pedītum ac centum millibus equītum in aciem procēdit. Commisso proelio, Alexander non ducis magis quam milītis munia exsequēbātur, opīmum decus caeso rege

expētens. Quippe Darius curru sublimis eminēbat, et suis ad se tuendum, et hostibus ad incessendum, ingens incitamentum. Macedōnes cum rege ipso in equitum agmen irrumpunt. Tum vero similis ruinae strages erat. Circa currum Darii jacēbant nobilissimi duces, ante oculos regis egregia morte defuncti. Macedōnum quoque, non quidem multi, sed promptissimi tamen caesi sunt: inter quos Alexandri dextrum femur leviter mucrone perstrictum est. Jamque qui Darium vehēbant equi, confossi hastis et dolore efferati, jugum quatere et regem curru excutere coeperant: quum ille, veritas ne vivus veniret in hostium potestatem, desilit, et in equum, qui ad hoc ipsum sequebatur, imponitur, insignibus quoque imperii, ne fugam prodirent, indecore abjectis. Tum vero ceteri dissipantur metu, et, qua cuique patēbat via, erumpunt. Inter captivos castrorum mater et uxor et filiae duae Darii fuere: in quas Alexander ita se gessit, ut omnes ante eum reges et continentia et clementia vinceret.

*Tyre besieged and taken, 332 B. C.*

132. Jam tota Syria, jam Phoenice quoque Macedōnum erat, excepta Tyro, cujus urbis incolae, fiducia loci, obsidionem ferre decreverant. Alexander, quam et classem procul haberet, et longam obsidionem magno sibi ad cetera impedimento vidēret fore, caduceatōres, qui ad pacem eos compellerent, misit: quos Tyrii contra jus gentium occisos praecipitaverunt in altum. Atque ille, tam indigna morte commotus, urbem obsidere statuit. Sed ante jacienda moles erat, quae continenti urbem committeret: magna vis saxorum ad manum erat, Tyro vetere praebente: materies ex Libano

monte ratibus et turribus faciendis advehebatur. Incepto operi et fretum ipsum, Africo maxime objectum, obstabat; et Tyrii, quicquid ad impediendam molem excogitari poterat, non segniter exsecuebantur. Septimo demum mense capta est urbs et vetustate originis et crebra fortunae varietate ad memoriam posteritatis insignis. Alexander, exceptis qui in templa confugerant, omnes interfici, ignemque tectis injici jubet. His per praecōnem nuntiatis, nemo tamen armatus opem a diis petere sustinuit: pueri virginesque templa compleverant; viri in vestibulo suarum quisque aedium stabant, parata saevientibus turba: quantumque sanguinis fusum sit, vel ex hoc aestimari potest, quod intra munita urbis sex millia armatorum trucidati sunt. Triste deinde spectaculum victoribus ira praebuit regis. Duo millia, in quibus occidendis defecerat rabies, erucibus affixi per ingens litoris spatium pendērunt.

*Alexander in Egypt, 332 B. C.—He visits the Temple of Jupiter Hammon.*

133. Aegyptii, olim Persarum opibus infensi, Alexandrum laeti receperunt: nec sustinere adventum ejus Persae, defectiōne quoque perterriti. A Memphi, Nilo amne vectus rex in interiōra penētrat; compositisque rebus ita, ut nihil ex patrio Aegyptiorum more mutaret, adire Jovis Hammōnis oraculum statuit. Quatriduo per vastas solitudines absumpto, tandem ad sedem consecratam deo ventum est, undique ambientibus ramis contactam. Regem propius adeuntem maximus natus e sacerdotibus FILIUM appellat, hoc nomen illi parentem Jovem reddere affirmans. Ille se vero et accipere ait et agnoscere, humanae sortis oblitus. Con-

sūlit deinde, an totū orbis imperium sibi destināret PATER. Aequē in adulationem compositus, terrarum omnium rectōrem fore ostendit. Post haec instītit quārere, an omnes parentis sui interfectōres poenas dedissent. Sacerdos PARENTEM ejus negat ullius scelēre posse violārī, PHILIPPI autem omnes luisse supplicia. Sacrificio deinde facto, dona et sacerdotibus et deo data, permissumque amicis, ut ipsi quoque consulērent Jovem. Nihil amplius quaesivērunt, quam an auctor esset sibi divinis honoribus colendi suum regem. Hoc quoque acceptum fore Jovi vates respondit. Vera et salūbri aestimatione fides oraculi vana profecto ei vidēri potuisset: sed fortūna, quos uni sibi credere coēgit, magna ex parte avidos gloriae magis quam capāces facit. Rex ex Hammōne rediens elēgit urbi locum, ubi nunc est Alexandriā, appellationem trahens ex nomine auctōris.

*Darius makes his last proposals of Peace.*

134. Jam Darīus pervenērat Arbēla vicum, nobīlem sua clade factūrus. Hic, quum fides ei facta esset, reginam suam quae captīva in Alexandri castris paulo antedecesserat, caste sanctēque habitam esse, victus contentia hostis, ad novas pacis conditiones ferendas decem legatos, cognatorum principes, misit. Neque jam imperio Alexandri finem destinat Halym amnem, qui Lydiam terminat: quicquid inter Hellespontum et Euphratem est, in dotem filiae offert. Quum Parmenio ingrata regi oratione suasisset, ut optimum regnum conditione occuparet, non bello: "Et ego," inquit, "pecuniam quam gloriam mallet, si Parmenio essem." Dimissi legati nuntiant, adesse certamen.

*Darius conquered near Arbela, 331 B. C.*

135. Alexander, non alias magis territus, sacrificio rite perpetrato, reliquum noctis acquieturus in tabernaculum rediit. Sed nec somnum capere nec quietum pati poterat: tandem gravatum animi anxietate corpus altior somnus oppressit. Jamque luce orta, quum duces ad accipienda imperia convenissent, Parmenio, regem saepius nomine compellatum, quum voce non posset, tactu excitavit. Raro admōdum, admonitu magis amicorum quam metu discriminis adeundi, thorace uti solēbat: tunc quoque munimento corporis sumpto processit ad milites. Haud alias tam alacrem viderant regem, et vultu ejus interrito spem victoriae augurabantur. Raro in ullo proelio tantum sanguinis fusum est. Tandem Darii auriga, qui ante ipsum sedens equos regēbat, hasta transfixus est; nec aut Persae aut Macedones dubitavere, quin ipse rex esset occisus. Cedere Persae, et laxare ordines; jamque non pugna sed caedes erat, quum Darius quoque currum suum in fugam vertit; victori Alexandro Asiae imperium obtigit.

*Disturbances in Greece.*

136. Dum haec in Asia gerebantur, Graecia fere omnis, spe recuperandae libertatis, ad arma concurrerat, auctoritatem Lacedaemoniorum secuta. Dux hujus belli Agis, rex Lacedaemoniorum, fuit. Quem motum Antipater, dux ab Alexandro in Macedonia relictus, in ipso ortu oppressit. Magna tamen utrimque caedes fuit. Agis rex, quum suos terga dantes videret, dimissis satellitibus ut Alexandro felicitate, non virtute inferior videretur, tantam stragem hostium edidit, ut agmi-

na interdum fugāret. Ad postrēmum, etsi a multitudine victus, gloria tamen omnes vicit.

*Alexander invades India.*

137. Post haec Indiam petit, ut Oceāno finiret imperium. Cui gloriae ut etiam exercitus ornamenta convenirent, phalēras equōrum et arma militum argento indūcit; exercitumque suum, ab argenteis clypeis, Argyraspidas appellāvit. Quum ad Nysam urbem venisset, oppidānis non repugnantibus, fiducia Libēri patri, a quo condita urbs erat, parci jussit. Tunc ad sacrum montem duxit exercitum, vite hederāque non aliter vestitum, quam si manu cultus exornatusque esset. Ubi ad montem accessit, exercitus, repentinō mentis impētū correptus, ululāre coepit, et Bacchantium more discurrit.

*The limit of Alexander's Conquests.*

138. Quum ad Hyphāsīm venisset, ubi eum cum ducentis millibus equitum hostes opperiebantur, exercitus omnis laboribus fessus, lacrymis eum precatur, finem tandem bellī faceret; aliquando patriae reditusque meminisset, militumque annos respiceret. Ostendere alius canitiem, alius vulnera, alius aetate consumptum corpus et cicatricibus obductum. Motus eorum precibus, veluti finem victoriis facturus, castra solito magnificentiora fieri jussit, quorum molitionibus et hostis terreretur, et posteris sui admiratio relinqueretur. Nullum opus laetius milites fecerunt. Itaque caesis hostibus cum gratulatione in haec castra revertērunt.



*Alexander returns to Babylon, 324 B. C.*

139. Ab ultimis oris Oceani Babyloniam revertenti nuntiatur, non solum legationes Carthaginiensium ceterarumque Africæ civitatum, sed et Hispaniarum, Siciliae, Galliae, Sardiniae, nonnullas quoque ex Italia ejus adventum Babyloniae opperiri. Hac igitur ex causa Babyloniam festinanti quidam ex Magis praedixit, ne urbem introiret, testatus, hunc locum ei fatalem fore. Sed ab Anaxarcho philosopho compulsus, ut Magorum praedicta contempneret, Babyloniam reversus, convivium solemniter instituit. Ibi quum totus in laetitiam effusus esset, recedentem jam e convivio Medius Thessalus, instaurata comissatione invitat. Accepto poculo, inter bibendum veluti telo confixus ingemuit, elatusque e convivio semianimis, tanto dolore cruciatus est, ut ferrum in remedia posceret.

*Death of Alexander, 323 B. C.*

140. Quarta die Alexander indubitatum mortem sentiens, agnoscere se fatum domus majorum suorum, ait; namque plerosque Aeacidarum intra tricesimum annum defunctos. Tumultuantes deinde milites, insidiis periisse regem suspicantes, ipse sedavit, eosque omnes ad conspectum suum admisit, osculandamque dextram porrexit. Quum lacrymarent omnes, ipse non sine lacrymis tantum, verum etiam sine ullo tristiorensis mentis argumento fuit. Ad postrimum corpus suum in Hammōnis templo condi jubet. Quum deficere eum amici viderent, quaerunt, quem imperii faciat heredem; respondit, dignissimum. Hac voce omnes amicos suos ad aemulam regni cupiditatem accendit. Sexta die,

praecūsa voce, exemptum digīto annūlum Perdicae tradidit, quae res gliscentem amicōrum discordiam sedāvit. Nam etsi non voce nuncupātus heres, iudicio tamen electus esse videbātur.

*Remarks on the character of Alexander.*

141. Decessit Alexander mensem unum tres et triginta annos natus, vir supra humanum modum vi animi praeditus. Omnia quaedam magnitudinem ejus in ipso ortu portendisse existimabantur. Quo die natus est, pater ejus nuntium duarum victoriarum accepit; alterius belli Illyrici, alterius certaminis Olympiaci, in quod quadrigas miserat. Puer acerrimis literarum studiis eruditus fuit. Exacta pueritia, per quinquennium Aristotele, philosopho praestantissimo, usus est magistro. Accepto tandem imperio tantam militibus suis fiduciam fecit, ut, illo praesente, nullius hostis arma timere. Itaque cum nullo hoste unquam congressus est, quem non vicere; nullam urbem obsedit, quam non expugnaverit. Victus denique est non virtute hostili, sed insidiis suorum et fraude.

---

PERIOD V.—*Decline of Grecian Power.*

FROM THE DEATH OF ALEXANDER TO THE SUBJUGATION OF GREECE BY THE ROMANS, 146 B. C.

*Aridaeus, the son of Philip, is proclaimed King.*

142. Pedites Aridaeum, Alexandri fratrem, regem appellant, satellitesque illi ex turba sua legunt, et nomine Philippi patris vocari jubent. Magna hinc in

castris seditiōne orta, tandem ab equitibus quoque Aridaeus rex agnoscitur. His ita compositis, Macedoniae et Graeciae Antipater praenitur: regiae pecuniae custodia Cratero traditur: castrorum et exercitus cura Meleagro et Perdiccae assignatur; jubeturque Aridaeus rex corpus Alexandri in Hammōnis templum deducere. Tunc Perdicca, lustratiōne castrorum indicta, seditiosos supplicio occulte tradi jubet. Reversus inde, provincias inter principes divisit.

*Disputes between Alexander's Generals.*

143. Post haec bellum inter Perdiccam et Antigōnum oritur, quod, velut incendium, mox latius serpsit. Macedonia, in duas partes discurrentibus ductibus, in sua viscera armatur, ferrumque a barbaris in civilem sanguinem vertit. In hoc bello Perdicca occisus est: pluresque ejusdem partis duces periērunt. Et jam finitum certamen inter successores Alexandri Magni videbatur, quum repente inter ipsos victores nata est discordia. Ptolemaeus et Cassander, Antipatri filius, inita cum Lysimacho et Seleuco societate, contra Antigōnum bellum terra marique enixe instruunt. Tenēbat Ptolemaeus Aegyptum cum Africae parte minore et Cypro et Phoenice. Cassandro parēbat Macedonia cum Graecia. Asiam et partes Orientis occupaverat Antigōnus, cujus filius Demetrius, prima belli congressiōne, a Ptolemaeo apud Gamalam vincitur. In quo proelio major Ptolemaei moderatiōnis gloria, quam ipsius victoriae fuit. Siquidem et amicos Demetrii non solum cum suis rebus, verum etiam additis insuper muneribus, dimisit; et ipsius Demetrii privatum omne instrumentum ac familiam reddidit, dicens: non se propter praedam,

sed propter dignitatem inisse bellum, indignatum, quod Antigonus, devictis diversae factionis ducibus, solus communis victoriae praemia corripuisset.

*www.fbtool.com.cn*

*The Generals assume the title of Kings.*

144. Interea Ptolemaeus cum Demetrio navali proelio iterato congregitur, et, amissa classe, in Aegyptum refugit. Hac victoria elatus Antigonus regem se cum Demetrio filio appellari jubet. Ptolemaeus quoque, ne minoris apud suos auctoritatis esset, rex ab exercitu cognominatur. Quibus auditis, Cassander et Lysimachus et ipsi regiam sibi majestatem vindicarunt.

*War in Greece.*

145. Omnes ferme Graeciae civitates, ducibus Spartanis, ad spem libertatis erectae, in bellum prorumpunt; et, ne cum Antigono, sub cujus regno erant, bellum cepisse viderentur, socios ejus Aetolos aggrediuntur,—causam belli praetendentes, quod sacratum Apollini campum Cirrhaeum per vim occupassent. Conjuncto exercitu, Aetolorumque finibus devastatis, magnam cladem passi sunt. Deinde, Spartanis bellum reparantibus, auxilium multae gentes negaverunt, existimantes, dominationem eos, non libertatem Graeciae quaerere.

*Irruption of the Gauls into Greece, 279 B. C.*

146. Galli, abundante multitudiue, quum eos non caperent terrae, quae genuerant, trecenta millia hominum ad sedes novas quaerendas miserunt. Ex his portio in Italia consedit, quae et Romam incendit; alia portio in Illyricos sinus penetravit, et in Pannonia con-

sēdit, ubi per multos annos bella cum finitīmis gessē-  
runt. Hortante deinde successu, divisīs agminibus,  
alii Graeciam, alii Macedoniam petivēre. Tantusque  
terror Gallīci nomīnis fuit, ut etiam reges non lacessiti  
ultro pacem ingenti pecunia mercarentur.

147. Paulo post Brennus, quo duce portio Gallōrum  
in Graeciam se effudērat, cum centum et quinquaginta  
millibus pedītum et quīndēcim millibus equitum in  
Macedoniam irrumpit. Victo exercītu, totius regiōnis  
agros depraedātur. Tum Delphos iter vertit ad Apol-  
linis templum spoliandum. Hoc templum positum est  
in monte Parnasso, in rupe undīque impendente, cujus  
praecipitiis, ut naturāli praesidio, defenditur. Multa  
ibi et opulenta regum populorumque visuntur munēra,  
quaeque magnificentia sua et gratam homīnum volun-  
tātem, et Apollīnis responsa manifestant.

*The Gauls are repulsed.*

148. Brennus quum in conspectu habēret templum,  
ad acuendos suōrum anīmos, praedae ubertātem militi-  
bus ostendēbat, statuasque cum quadrīgis, quarum in-  
gens copia procul visebātur, solido auro fusas esse affir-  
mābat. Qua asseveratiōne incitāti Galli, simul et mero  
saucii, sine respectu periculōrum in bellum ruēbant.  
Habēbat Brennus lecta ex omni exercītu pedītum sexa-  
ginta quinque millia; Delphōrum sociōrumque nonnīsi  
quatuor millia militum erant. Hi plus in Deo, quam  
in viribus spei ponentes, cum contemptu hostium resis-  
tēbant, Gallosque scandentes e summo montis vertice,  
partim saxo, partim armis obruēbant. Inter haec tem-  
plōrum antistītes, sparsis crinibus, cum insignibus et  
infūlis, in primam pugnantium aciem procurrunt, eos

hortantes, ne cunctarentur diis antesignānis hostem caedēre. Quibus vocībus incensi omnes certātīm in proelium prosiliunt. Praesentiam Dei statim sensēre. Nam et terrae motu portio montis abrupta Gallōrum stravīt exercītum, et tempestas insecūta grandīne et frigōre saucios absumpsit. Dux ipse Brennus, quum dolōrem vulnērū ferre non posset, pugione vitam finīvit. Alter ex ducībus cum decem millībus sauciōrum citātō agmīne Graecia excēdit. Sed nec fugientībus fortūna aequior fuit; nullus sine labōre et pericūlo dies; assidui imbres et gelu, nix, fames, lassitūdo, et pervigiliae misēras infelīcis belli reliquias obterēbant. Quo pacto evēnit, ut brevi ex tanto exercītu nemo superesset.

*Pyrrhus, King of Epirus, invades Macedonia, 274 B. C.*

149. Interea Pyrrhus ex Sicilia in Epīrum reversus fines Macedoniae invādit; cui Antigōnus cum exercītu occurrit, victusque proelio in fugam vertitur. Atque ita Pyrrhus Macedoniam in deditiōnem accipit; Antigōnus autem cum paucis equitibus Thessalonīcam se recēpit, ut inde cum conducta Gallōrum manu bellum reparāret. Rursus a Ptolemaeo, Pyrrhi filio, funditus victus, cum septem comitibus fugiens salutis latēbras in solitudīne quaerit.

*A general change of Rulers.*

150. Iisdem ferme temporibus prope universi orbis imperia novā regum successiōne mutāta sunt. Nam et in Macedonia Philippus, mortuo Antigōno, regnum suscēpit; et in Asia, interfecto Seleuco, impūbes adhuc rex Antiōchus constitūtus est. Aegyptum, patre ac matre interfectis, occupavērat Ptolemaeus, cui ex cri-

mīne facinōris cognōmen Philopātor fuit. Etiam Spartāni in locum Cleomēnis suffecēre Lycurgum; et apud Carthaginienses aetāte immatūra dux Hannībal constituitur, non penuria seniorum, sed odio Romanōrum, quo eum a pueritia sciēbant imbūtum. In his regibus puēris magna indōles virtūtis enituit. Solus Ptolemaeus, sicut scelestus in occupando regno, ita et segnis in administrando fuit.

*The Romans declare War against Philip, 200 B. C.: Battle of Cynoscephalae, 197 B. C.*

151. Nec multo post tempore tota Graecia, fiducia Romanōrum ad spem pristinae libertātis erecta, bellum Philippo intulit; atque ita quum rex undique urgeretur, pacem petere compellitur. Repudiata a Senatu pace, proelium commissum est apud Cynoscephalas in Thessalia inter Philippum et Flaminium, Romanorum ducem. Macedonas Romana fortuna vicit. Fractus itaque bello Philippus, pace accepta, nomen quidem regium retinuit; sed, omnibus Graeciae urbibus extra terminos antiquae possessionis amissis, solam Macedoniam retinuit.

*Perseus plots successfully against his brother's life.*

152. Intērim regis Macedonum domus intestinis malis agitabatur. Nam quum Demetrius, Philippi filius, a patre Romam missus, ob insignem pudorem multa favoris documenta a senatu accepisset, patri invisus esse coepit, indignanti, plus momenti apud senatum personam filii, quam auctoritatem patris habuisse. Igitur Perseus, major filiorum regis, perspecta patris aegritudine, quotidie absentem Demetrium apud eum criminari, et primo invisum, mox etiam suspectum reddere;

nunc amicitiam Romanōrum, nunc proditiōnem ei patris objectāre. Ad postrēmum insidias sibi ab eo paratas confingit, ad cujus criminis probatiōnem immittit indices, testesque subornat. Quibus rebus patrem impulit, ut supplicium de innocente sumeret.

*Death of Philip, 179 B. C.*

153. Occiso Demetrio sublatōque aemulo, non negligentior tantum Perseus in patrem, verum etiam contumacior erat; nec herēdem regni, sed regem se gerēbat. His rebus offensus Philippus impatientius in dies mortem Demetrii dolēbat, et, denique fraude cognita, non minus scelēre Persei, quam innoxii Demetrii morte cruciabatur. Brevi post tempore, morbo ex aegritudine animi contracto decessit, relicto magno belli apparatu adversus Romānos, quo postea Perseus usus est.

*Perseus conquered.—Macedonia a Roman Province.*

154. Jam Macedonicum bellum summa omnium virium contentiōne a Romānis geri coeptum est. Prima equitum congressio fuit, qua Perseus victor suspensam omnium expectatiōnem in sui favorem traxit; misit tamen legatos ad consulem, qui pacem petērent, quam patri suo Romāni etiam victo dedissent, impensas belli lege victi suscepturus. Sed consul Sulpicius non minus graves, quam victo, leges dixit. Dum haec aguntur, Romāni Aemilium Paulum consulem creant, eīque extra ordinem Macedonicum bellum decernunt; qui quum ad exercitum venisset, non magnam moram pugnae fecit. Pridie, quam proelium consereretur, luna nocte defecit; quod ostentum Perseo cladem finemque Macedonici regni portendēre vaticinabantur.



Quod vaticinium non fefellit. Perseus rex fuga cum decem millibus talentum Samothraciam defertur; quem Cnaeus Octavius ad persequendum missus a consule, cum duobus filiis, Alexandro et Philippo, cepit, captumque ad consulem duxit. Macedonia Romanorum ditioni addita. Aetolorum, nova semper bella in Graecia excitantium, principes Romam missi; ibique, ne quid in patria novarent, diu detenti sunt. Tandem per multos annos legationibus civitatum senatu fatigato, in suam quisque patriam remissus est.

*The Romans seek occasion to quarrel with the Achaeans.*

155. Macedonibus subactis, Aetolorumque viribus debilitatis, soli adhuc ex universa Graecia Achaei nimis potentes tunc temporis Romanis videbantur, non propter singularum civitatum nimias opes, sed propter conspirationem universarum. Namque Achaei, licet per civitates divisi, unum tamen imperium habent, singularumque urbium pericula mutuis viribus propulsant. Quaerentibus igitur Romanis causas belli, tempestive fortuna querelas Spartanorum obtulit, quorum agros Achaei propter mutuum odium populabantur. Spartanis a senatu responsum est, legatos se ad inspiciendas res sociorum in Graeciam missuros. Legatis clam mandatum est, ut corpus Achaeorum dissolverent. Hi itaque, omnium civitatum principibus Corinthum evocatis, decretum senatus recitant, dicentes, expedire omnibus, ut singulae civitates sua jura et suas legeſ habeant. Quod ubi omnibus innotuit, velut in furorem versi universum peregrinum populum trucidant: legatos quoque ipsos Romanorum violassent, nisi hi, audito tumultu, trepidi fugissent.

*The Achaeans are conquered.—Corinth plundered by Mummius,  
146 B. C.*

156. Haec ubi Romae nuntiata sunt, statim senatus Mummiō consūli bellum Achaicum decernit, qui, omnibus strenue provīsis, pugnandi copiam hostibus fecit. Sed apud Achaeos omnia neglecta et solūta fuērunt. Itaque praedam, non proelium agitantes, vehicūla ad spolia hostium reportanda, secum duxērunt, et conjūges liberosque suos ad spectaculum certaminis in montibus posuērunt. Sed proelio commisso ante oculos suorum caesi sunt. Conjūges quoque et libēri eōrum praeda hostium fuere. Urbs Corinthus diruitur: populus omnis sub corōna venditur; ut hoc exemplo cetēris civitatibus metus novārum rērum imponeretur.

[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)  
**EXERCISES IN SYNTAX.**

---

**INTRODUCTION.**

157. IN Latin, as in English, words are divided, according to their use, into various classes, called *Parts of Speech*.

158. Parts of speech, either singly or combined, form *Propositions*; e. g.,

Audis.

| *Thou hearest.*

Puer ludit.

| *The boy plays.*

159. Propositions, either singly or combined, form *Sentences*; e. g.,

Equus currit (*one prop.*).

| *The horse runs.*

Puer ludit et equus currit  
(*two propositions*).

| *The boy is playing and the  
horse is running.*

160. Sentences, in their various forms and combinations, of course, comprise the *Language*.

161. The object of all language is the expression of thought.

162. A sentence may express thought,

- 1) In the form of an *assertion*, either affirmative or negative. It is then called a *declarative sentence*; e. g.,

Puer legit.

| *The boy is reading.*

Puer non legit.

| *The boy is not reading.*

- 2) In the form of a *question*. It is then called an *interrogative* sentence; e. g.,

Quis legit? | Who is reading?

- 3) In the form of a *command, exhortation, or entreaty*. It is then called an *imperative* sentence; e. g.,

Lege.		Read thou.
Legat.		Let him read.

163. In each of the above forms, sentences sometimes imply *passion* or *emotion* on the part of the speaker, and may then be called *exclamatory declarative* if of the declarative form, *exclamatory interrogative* if of the interrogative form, and *exclamatory imperative* if of the imperative form. The *emotion*, however, does not affect the structure of the sentence, though it often renders it elliptical.

164. A sentence may express,

- 1) A single thought; i. e., may make but one assertion, ask but one question, or give but one command. It may then be called a *simple* sentence; e. g.,

Balbus a nullo videbatur. | Balbus was seen by no one.

- 2) Two or more thoughts so related to each other that one or more of them are made dependent upon the others. It may then be called a *complex* sentence; e. g.,

Quod ubi Caesar compērit,		When Caesar learned this,
se in Galliam recēpit.		he retired into Gaul.

REM.—The two simple sentences, which compose the above *complex*, are, (1) *Caesar learned this*, and (2) *Caesar retired into Gaul*.

These are, however, so combined that the first does little more than specify the *time* of the action denoted by the second. *Caesar retired into Gaul (when?) when he learned this.*

3) Two or more independent thoughts. It may then be called a *compound sentence*; e. g.,

<p>Balbus a nullo videbatur, ipse autem omnia vidē- bat.</p>	<p><i>Balbus was seen by no one, but he himself saw every thing.</i></p>
--	--

www.liberalarts.com  
CHAPTER I.

SIMPLE SENTENCES.

LESSON I.

*Principal Elements of Sentences ; Subject and Predicate.—  
Declarative Sentences.*

[1 & 2.]

165. EVERY sentence, however simple, consists of two distinct parts ; viz.,

- 1) The *Subject*, or that of which it speaks, as *puer* in the sentence, *puer ludit*.
- 2) The *Predicate*, or that which is said of the subject, as *ludit* in the above sentence.

166. In Latin the subject is often omitted, because the form of the predicate shows what subject is meant ; thus, the single word *rides*, thou art laughing, is in itself a complete proposition, because the ending *es* shows that the subject in English cannot be *I*, *he*, or *they*, but must be *thou*.

167. When a proposition is thus expressed by a single word, that word is always a verb, and the omitted subject, implied in the ending of the verb, is always a pronoun of the same number and person as the verb itself ; as, *Amat*, *He loves*.

168. The *analysis* of a proposition, or sentence, consists in separating it into its elements or parts.

MODELS.

1. Proposition : *Puer ludit*, *The boy is playing*.

This is a *simple* sentence, because it expresses a *single* thought.

*Puer* is the subject, because it is that of which the proposition speaks. *Ludit* is the predicate, because it is that which is said of the subject *puer*.

2. Proposition : *Rides, Thou art laughing.*

This is a *simple* sentence.

*Rides* is the predicate, because it is that which is said of the omitted subject. The subject is a pronoun of the second person singular (*tu, thou*), implied in the ending *es* of the predicate.

### 169. VOCABULARY.

Citadel, *arx, arcis, f.*

City, *urbs, urbis, f.*

Come, *venio, venire, vēni, ventum.*

Destroy, *everto, evertēre, tī, sum.*

Flee, *fugio, fugēre, fūgi, fugitum; aufugio, fugēre, fūgi.*

Found, *condo, dēre, dīdi, dītum.*

He, *ille, a, ud*, or, as subject, it may be implied in the ending of the verb.

I, *ego, mei, &c.*, or, as subject, it may be omitted.

You, *tu, tui, &c.*, or, as subject, it may be omitted.

Teach, *doceo, ēre, ui, tum.*

Trojan, *Trojānus, a, um.*

### 170. EXERCISES.

I. *Translate and analyze the following Latin, explaining the omitted subjects :*

1. *Latīnus imperābat.* 2. *Imperāvit.* 3. *Troja eversa est.* 4. *Aenēas aufūgit.* 5. *Aufugiēbant.* 6. *Hic docuit.* 7. *Docuērunt.* 8. *Docuimus.*

II 1. *Construct one or more Latin declarative sentences on each of the following subjects :*

*Puer, puellae, patres, avis, aves.*



2. Construct three Latin declarative sentences, using the following predicates :

Discēbant, legēbat, currunt.

3. Construct five or more Latin declarative sentences with subjects omitted, using as predicates some parts of the following verbs :

Ridēre, laudāre, docēre, currēre, timēre.

#### MODELS.

- |                |  |                     |
|----------------|--|---------------------|
| 1. Ridebātis.  |  | You were laughing.  |
| 2. Laudabītur. |  | He will be praised. |

#### III. Translate into Latin.

1. They have come. 2. A citadel will be founded.  
 3. Cities will be founded. 4. Cities have been founded.  
 5. We have been taught. 6. The cities had been destroyed.  
 7. The Trojans fled. 8. You will flee. 9. We were fleeing.  
 10. I shall come.

## LESSON II.

*Subordinate Elements ; Modifiers.—Declarative Sentences.*

[1 & 2.]

171. Both subject and predicate may have qualifying words and clauses connected with them, to limit or modify their meaning ; e. g.,

1. Latīnus rex regnāvit. | *Latinus the king reigned.*

REM.—In this example, *rex* limits *Latinus* ; i. e., it shows that the predicate *regnāvit* is not affirmed of every one who may have borne the name *Latinus*, but only of *Latinus the king*.

2. Milītes fortīter pugnant. | *The soldiers fight bravely.*

REM. 1.—Here the predicate is modified by *fortīter*, showing *how* the soldiers fight.

REM. 2.—Qualifying words and clauses, whether belonging to the subject or predicate, may be called *modifiers*.

172. Any modifier, whether in the subject or predicate, may be itself modified; e. g.,

Latīnus, *bonus* rex, regnāvit. | *Latinus, the good king, reigned.*

173. The subject (*expressed* or *implied*) and the predicate are essential to the structure of every sentence, and may, therefore, be called the *essential* or *principal elements* of sentences.

174. All modifiers are subordinate to the subject and predicate, and may, therefore, be called the *subordinate elements* of sentences.

### 175. VOCABULARY.

Aeneas, <i>Aenās, ae.</i>	with accus., as in <i>matrimonium</i> ).
Agriculture, <i>agricultūra, ae, f.</i>	King, <i>rex, regis.</i>
Anchises, <i>Anchises, ae.</i>	Latinus, <i>Latīnus, i.</i>
Call, <i>appello, are, avi, ātum.</i>	Marriage, <i>matrimonium, i, n.</i>
Daughter, <i>filia, ae.</i>	Rome, <i>Roma, ae, f.</i>
Early, ancient, <i>antīquus, a, um.</i>	Saturn, <i>Saturnus, i.</i>
First, <i>primus, a, um.</i>	Saturnia, <i>Saturnia, ae, f.</i>
Give, <i>do, dare, dedi, dātum.</i>	Son, <i>filius, i.</i>
Italian, <i>Itālus, a, um.</i>	Time, <i>tempus, ōris, n.</i>
In, <i>in</i> (with abl.; sometimes	

### 176. EXERCISES.

I. Translate the following sentences, and analyze them so far as to show their subjects and predicates, and the separate modifiers of each:

1. Hic docuit.
2. Hic *primus* docuit.
3. Hic Itālos *primus* docuit.
4. Hic Itālos *primus agricultūram* docuit.
5. Troja eversa est.
6. *Sub rege* Troja eversa

est. 7. Sub hoc rege Troja eversa est. 8. Aenēas aufūgit. 9. Aenēas *filius* aufūgit. 10. Aenēas, *Anchīsae* filius, aufūgit. 11. *Hinc* Aenēas, *Anchīsae* filius, aufūgit. 12. *Hinc* Aenēas, *Anchīsae* filius, *cum Trojānis* aufūgit. 13. *Hinc* Aenēas, *Achīsae* filius, *cum multis Trojānis* aufūgit.

II. *First construct three or more Latin declarative sentences without modifiers; then add modifiers, either to the subject or predicate, or to both.*

#### MODELS.

*Without modifiers.*

- |                    |  |                             |
|--------------------|--|-----------------------------|
| 1. Puer scribēbat. |  | <i>The boy was writing.</i> |
| 2. Canis mordēbit. |  | <i>The dog will bite.</i>   |

*With modifiers.*

- |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|
| 1. <i>Bonus</i> puer <i>epistolam</i> scribēbat. |  | <i>The good boy was writing a letter.</i>    |
| 2. <i>Pastōris</i> canis <i>puerum</i> mordēbit. |  | <i>The shepherd's dog will bite the boy.</i> |

#### III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Saturn taught *the Italians*. 2. Saturn was the first to teach (lit. *the first taught*) the Italians. 3. *In very early times* he taught the Italians *agriculture*. 4. They will call the citadel Saturnia. 5. The city was called Rome. 6. Latinus gave his daughter to Aeneas. 7. Latinus the king gave his daughter in marriage to Aeneas. 8. Latinus the king gave his daughter in marriage to Aeneas, the son of Anchises.

LESSON III.

www.libtool.com.cn

*Elements of Sentences, continued.—Interrogative and Imperative Sentences.*

[3 & 4.]

177. Interrogative sentences are used in asking questions, and may be introduced,

- 1) By an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb; e. g.,

Quis venit?		<i>Who has come?</i>
Quot sunt?		<i>How many are there?</i>
Unde venis?		<i>Whence do you come?</i>

- 2) By one of the interrogative particles, *ne*, *nonne*, *num*; e. g.,

Scribitne Caius?		<i>Is Caius writing?</i>
Nonne scribit?		<i>Is he not writing?</i>
Num scribit?		<i>Is he writing?</i>

REM. 1.—If *ne* is used, it must follow some other word, and be joined to it, as in the first example.

REM. 2.—A question with *ne* asks for information (Ex. 1), with *nonne* expects the answer *yes* (Ex. 2), and with *num* expects the answer *no* (Ex. 3).

REM. 3.—*Ne*, *nonne*,\* and *num*, are not modifiers of the predicate, but mere particles showing the *interrogative* character of the sentence.

178. Imperative sentences are used in *commands*, *exhortations*, and *entreaties*, and take the verb either in

\* *Nonne*, strictly speaking, is compounded of the modal adverb *non* and the particle *ne*; but we are now regarding it merely as an interrogative particle.

the *imperative* or in the *subjunctive* mood, and usually in the *present* tense; e. g.,

Perge in exilium.	Go into exile.
Conservāte vos.	Preserve yourselves.
Veniat servus.	Let the slave come.
Veniāmus.	Let us come.

## 179. VOCABULARY.

Alba, <i>Alba</i> , ae, f.	Longa, <i>Longa</i> , ae, f.
Ascanius, <i>Ascanius</i> , i.	Reign, <i>regno</i> , āre, āvi, ātum.
He, <i>is, ea, id</i> ; <i>ille, illa, illud</i> ; or, when subject, it may be implied by the ending of the verb.	Silvius, <i>Silvius</i> , i. Succeed, <i>sequor, sequi, secutus</i> <i>sum</i> . Who? <i>Quis, quae, quid</i> ?

## 180. EXERCISES.

I. *Translate and analyze the following sentences, stating whether declarative, interrogative, or imperative:*

1. Ascanius regnum accēpit. 2. Quis regnum accēpit? 3. Purga urbem. 4. Cogitāte de vobis. 5. Quis Albae regnāvit? 6. Omnes Albae regnavērunt. 7. Conservāte fortūnas vestras. 8. Quis te salutāvit? Num Albae regnāvit? Nonne Albae regnavērunt?

II. *Change the declarative sentences constructed in the first and second Lessons, to the interrogative or imperative form.*

## MODELS.

<i>Declarative.</i>	<i>Interrogative.</i>
Puer ludēbat.	Num puer ludēbat?
The boy was playing.	Was the boy playing?
<i>Declarative.</i>	<i>Imperative.</i>
Ridebātis.	Ridēte.
You were laughing.	Laugh ye.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Ascanius founded a city. 2. Who founded the city? 3. Let us found cities. 4. Who founded Alba Longa? 5. Did Ascanius found it? 6. He did found it. 7. Who was reigning? 8. Latinus was reigning. 9. Let him reign. 10. He will reign. 11. Who succeeded Ascanius? 12. Silvius succeeded him.

## LESSON IV.

*Simple Subject.*

[5 &amp; 6.]

181. Every simple sentence must have for its subject either

- 1) A noun; e. g., *Puer ludit*, or
- 2) A pronoun; e. g., *Ille ludit*.

182. RULE.—*Case of Subject.*

The subject of a finite verb is put in the nominative.  
(See examples above.)

[F. B. 609; A. & S. § 209; Z. § 379.]\*

183. In the arrangement of the Latin sentence, the subject is put,

---

\* These references relate respectively to the First Latin Book, to the Latin Grammar of Andrews & Stoddard, and to that of Zumpt, American edition.

NOTE.—The author indulges the hope that all who may use this book will constantly bear in mind that the writing of Latin cannot, in any way, supersede the necessity of thorough grammatical drills. Both exercises are indispensable to high scholarship, and should go, hand in hand, throughout the entire course of classical instruction. For this reason the *Rules of Syntax*, as we have occasion to use them in our Exercises, are inserted in this work, with references to the corresponding rules in the First Latin Book, in Andrews & Stoddard's Latin Grammar, and in that of Zumpt.

- 1) When not emphatic, at or near the beginning; e. g.,

*Superbus cognōmen meruit.* | *Superbus merited his name.*

- 2) When emphatic, at or near the end; e. g.,

*Commōvit bellum rex.* | *The king excited a war.*

#### 184. VOCABULARY.

Boy, *puer*, *ēri*.

Girl, *puella*, *ae*.

Play, *ludo*, *ēre*, *lusi*, *lusum*.

Praise, *laudo*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*.

Pupil, *discipulus*, *i*, *m*.

Read, *lego*, *ēre*, *legi*, *lectum*.

Shield, *clypeus* or *clipeus*, *i*, *m*.

Spear, *hasta*, *ae*, *f*.

Strike, *percutio*, *ēre*, *cussi*, *cussum*.

Walk, *ambulo*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*.

#### 185. EXERCISES.

##### I. Translate and analyze.

1. Roma condīta est. 2. Urbs condīta est. 3. Quis veniet? 4. Venient. 5. Troja eversa est. 6. Roma eversa est. 7. Urbes eversae sunt. 8. Aenēas aufūgit. 9. Trojāni aufugērunt. 10. Aufugīmus. 11. Silvius regnāvit. 12. Quis regnābat? 13. Rex regnābat. 14. Hic regnāvit. 15. Ille regnābat.

II. 1. Explain position of elements in the above sentences. (See 183.)

2. Construct six Latin sentences: two declarative, two interrogative, and two imperative; two with substantives as subjects, two with pronouns, and two with subjects omitted.

##### III. Translate into Latin.

1. The pupil was praised. 2. The boys will be praised. 3. Have not the girls been praised? 4. They have been praised. 5. The shields were struck. 6.

The spears will be struck. 7. Will you read? 8. We have been reading. 9. Who will come? 10. Will not the king come? 11. He will come. 12. Let us walk. 13. Let them play. 14. They have been playing. 15. Were not the boys playing? 16. They were playing.

LESSON V.

*Complex Subject.—Modifier ; Simple.*

[7 & 8.]

186. The elements of a sentence may be either *simple* or *complex* :

1) Simple, when not modified by other words ;  
e. g.,

Rex regnāvit. | *The king reigned.*

2) Complex, when thus modified ; e. g.,

*Bonus rex bene* regnāvit. | *The good king reigned well.*

REM.—In the first example (*Rex regnāvit*), both subject and predicate are simple, while, in the second, they are both complex.

187. Modifiers are of two kinds ; viz.,

1) Such as limit other words by *completing* their meaning. These may be called *objective* modifiers ; e. g.,

Mater *filiam* amat. | *The mother loves her daughter.*

Amor *auri*. | *The love of gold.*

REM.—In the first example, *filiam* not only qualifies *amat*, but also completes its meaning by showing the *object* loved. In the second example, too, *auri* both qualifies and completes the meaning of *amor*, by showing the object of that love: *the love of (what?) gold.*

2) Such as restrict the meaning of other words



by specifying some *quality* or *attribute*. These may be called *attributive* modifiers; e. g.,

*Bonus rex bene regnāvit.* | *The good king reigned well.*

REM. 1.—*Bonus* expresses the attribute of *rex* (good king), and *bene* of *regnāvit* (reigned well).

REM. 2.—It will be observed that the adverb *bene* sustains the same relation to the verb *regnāvit* as the adjective *bonus* does to the noun *rex*; both are attributive, but, for distinction's sake, the latter may be called the *adjective attribute*; and the former, the *adverbial attribute*.

188. The subject of a sentence may be limited,

1) By an *objective* modifier; e. g.,

*Amor gloriæ nos impūlit.* | *The love of glory actuated us.*

REM.—This modifier has been very properly called the *objective genitive*; though some grammarians regard it as merely attributive. It will be readily seen that *gloriæ*, in the above example, expresses no *attribute* of *amor* (love); it says nothing of the *character* or *qualities* of that *love*; but simply specifies the *object* on which it is exercised.

2) By an *attributive* modifier; e. g.,

*Bonus rex regnat.*

| *A good king reigns.*

*Regis filius regnābit.*

| *The king's son will reign.*

REM.—It will be observed from the above examples that the attribute of the subject is expressed sometimes by an adjective, and sometimes by a noun used with the force of an adjective.

189. RULE.—*Agreement of Adjectives.*

Adjectives and adjective pronouns (whether in the subject or the predicate) agree in *gender*, *number*, and *case* with the nouns which they qualify; e. g.,

Bonus rex.

| *The good king.*

Bona regīna.

| *The good queen.*

[F. B. 614; A. & S. § 205.]

190. RULE.—*Limiting Nouns.*

A noun limiting the meaning of another noun denoting a different\* person or thing, is put in the *genitive*, unless it denotes *character* or *quality*, in which case it is accompanied by an adjective, and is put either in the *genitive* or *ablative*; e. g.,

Regis filius.

| *The king's son.*

Puer eximiae pulchritudinis, or Puer eximia pulchritudine.

| *A boy of remarkable beauty.*

[F. B. 624; A. & S. § 211 and R. 6; Z. § 426.]

REM.—Instead of the *genitive* of the limiting noun, we sometimes find the *dative*, or the *accusative* or *ablative* with a *preposition*; e. g., Troja in Asia eversa est, *Troy in Asia was destroyed.*—Transmissus ex Gallia in Britanniam, *The passage from Gaul into Britain.*

191. In the arrangement of the parts of the complex subject,

- 1) The adjective precedes or follows its substantive, according as it is or is not emphatic; e. g.,

Bonus rex regnat.

Rex bonus regnat.

} *A good king is reigning.*

- 2) The *attributive* genitive generally precedes its substantive when the latter is not emphatic; e. g.,

Aenāe filius regnāvit.

| *The son of Aeneas reigned.*

- 3) The *objective* genitive generally follows its substantive; e. g.,

Amor gloriae nos impūlit.

| *The love of glory actuated us.*

192. In analyzing a sentence which contains modifi-

---

\* See 441.

ers, the pupil is expected to show both the influence of the several modifiers upon the thought, and their grammatical relation to the elements which they limit.

www.libtool.com.cn

MODELS.

1. Regis filius regnābit. | *The king's son will reign.*

This is a *simple* sentence.

*Filius* is the subject, and *regnābit* the predicate.

The subject *filius* is modified by *regis*, showing *whose* son, viz. *the king's*. *Regis* is in the *genitive*, according to Rule, 190.

*Regis filius* is the complex subject.

2. Rex bonus regnat. | *A good king is reigning.*

This is a *simple* sentence.

*Rex* is the subject, and *regnat* is the predicate.

The subject *rex* is modified by the adjective *bonus*, showing the *character* of the king (a *good* king). *Bonus* agrees with the subject *rex*, according to Rule, 189.

*Rex bonus* is the complex subject.

193. VOCABULARY.

Alban, *Albānus, a, um.*

Bite, *mordeo, ěre, momordi, mor-  
sum.*

Brother, *frater, tris.*

Dog, *canis, is, c.*

Five, *quinque, indec.*

Good, *bonus, a, um.*

Kill, *occido, ěre, cidi, cĕsum.*

Queen, *regina, ae.*

Romulus, *Romulus, i.*

Shepherd, *pastor, ōris, m.*

What? *qui, quae, quod?* (See  
F. B. 284.)

194. EXERCISES.

I. *Translate and analyze, parsing the complex subjects.*

1. Multi Trojāni aufugērunt. 2. Anchīsae filius aufūgit. 3. Numa regnāvit. 4. Bonus Numa regnābat.

5. Remus occīsus est. 6. Hic vir occīsus est. 7. Troja in Asia eversa est. 8. Rex Albanōrum mortuus est.

II. 1. Explain position of elements in the above sentences. (See 183 and 191.)

2. Construct three or more Latin sentences with complex subjects.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. What king was reigning? 2. A good king was reigning. 3. Had not the king of the Albans been reigning? 4. Were the good shepherds killed? 5. Five shepherds had been killed. 6. The brother of Romulus was killed. 7. The shepherd's son will be praised. 8. The shepherd's dog will bite. 9. The good queen will be praised. 10. The daughter of the queen has been praised.

---

## LESSON VI.

*Complex Subject.—Modifier ; Complex.*

[9 & 10.]

195. Any modifier in the complex subject, whether objective or attributive, may itself become complex.

196. Any substantive may be modified in the various ways already specified for the subject. (See last Lesson.)

197. VOCABULARY.

American, *Americānus, a, um.*

Citizen, *civis, is, c.*

Himself, he himself, *ipse, a, um.*

Increase (trans.), *augeo, ēre, auxi, auctum.*

Neighboring, *finitimus, a, um.*

Number, *numerus, i, m.*

People, *populus, i, m.*

Roman, *Romānus, a, um.*

State, *civitas, ātis, f.*

United, *foederātus, a, um.*

## 198. EXERCISES.

I. *Translate and analyze, parsing the several parts of the complex subjects.* [libtool.com.cn](http://libtool.com.cn)

1. Filius boni regis veniēbat. 2. Pastor illius regiōnis occīsus est. 3. Novae urbis cives occīsi sunt. 4. Festum Neptūni magni institūtum est. 5. Popūli illius virgīnes raptae erant. 6. Numērus civium Romanōrum auctus est.

II. 1. *In the first three of the above sentences, substitute other complex attributives in place of those now used.*

## MODEL.

Filius pulchrae regiāe veniēbat.

2. *Construct two or more Latin sentences with simple subjects; then make these subjects complex, by the addition of simple attributives; and finally put these attributives in the complex form.*

## MODEL.

1. Dux occīsus est.	<i>The leader was killed.</i>
2. Dux exercītus occīsus est.	<i>The leader of the army was killed.</i>
3. Dux exercītus Romāni occīsus est.	<i>The leader of the Roman army was killed.</i>

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Has the number of states been increased? 2. The number of the United States has been increased. 3. Will not the number of American citizens be increased? 4. The number of Roman citizens had been increased. 5. The shepherd was killed. 6. Will not the good shepherds be killed? 7. The sons of the good shepherds had been killed. 8. The neighboring

people came. 9. Did the sons of the neighboring shepherds come? 10. The shepherds themselves came.

[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

## LESSON VII.

### *Simple Predicate.*

[11—13.]

199. The predicate of a sentence consists of two parts, an *attribute* of the subject and a *copula*, by which that attribute is predicated or asserted of the subject.

200. The attribute and copula, which form the predicate, sometimes appear separately, as when the former is expressed by a noun or adjective, and the latter by the verb *esse*, and sometimes united in one word, in which case they must be expressed by a verb.\*

201. The predicate of a simple sentence may, therefore, be,

1) A verb; e. g.,

Puer ludit.		<i>The boy is playing.</i>
-------------	--	----------------------------

2) The verb *esse* (or sometimes a passive verb) with an attributive† noun or adjective; e. g.,

Cicero fuit consul.		<i>Cicero was consul.</i>
---------------------	--	---------------------------

Terra est rotunda.		<i>The earth is round.</i>
--------------------	--	----------------------------

REM.—In the first example, the predicate is not simply *fuit*, but *fuit consul*; for the assertion is not that Cicero *was* (i. e. existed), but *was consul*; so in the second example, the predicate is *est rotunda*, the assertion being that the earth *is round*.

---

\* Even in the verb, the *attribute* and *copula* are sometimes represented by distinct words, as in the compound tenses; e. g., *Res occisus est*. Here *occisus* is the attribute and *est* the copula.

† By an attributive noun is meant one which is used to qualify or describe another noun.

202. RULE.—*Finite Verbs.*

A finite verb must agree with its subject in number and person; e. g.,

Latīnus regnābat. | *Latinus was reigning.*

[F. B. 612; A. & S. § 209; Z. § 365.]

203. RULE.—*Predicate Nouns.*

An attributive noun in the predicate after *esse* and a few *passive* verbs, is put in the same case as the subject, when it denotes the same\* person or thing; e. g.,

Latīnus fuit rex. | *Latinus was king.*

[F. B. 613; A. & S. § 210; Z. § 365.]

☞ For agreement of attributive adjective, see 189.

## 204. VOCABULARY.

Amulius, *Amulius, i.*

Be, *sum, esse, fui, futurus.*

Brave, *fortis, e.*

Choose, elect, *lego, ēre, legi, lectum.*

Father, *pater, tris.*

Hundred, *centum, indec.*

Make, *creo, āre, āvi, ātum.*

Senator, *senātor, ōria.*

Who (interrog.), *quis, quae, quid?* (See F. B. 284.)

## 205. EXERCISES.

I. *Translate and analyze, parsing and explaining predicates.*

1. Silvius Procas fuit rex.
2. Faustūlus fuit pastor.
3. Quis est avus?
4. Quae fuit mater?
5. Urbs fuit nova.
6. Urbes sunt novae.
7. Annūli sunt aurei.
8. Numa rex creātus est.
9. Senatōres appellāti sunt Patres.
10. Romāni bellicōsi fuērunt.

II. *Construct two Latin sentences with verbs as predi-*

\* See 435.

cases ; two with *esse* and nouns ; and two with *esse* and adjectives.

III. Translate into Latin. [Latinol.com.cn](http://Latinol.com.cn)

1. Who was king? 2. Latinus was king. 3. Let him be king. 4. Were not the Romans brave? 5. The Romans were brave. 6. Let us be good. 7. We will be good. 8. Who was made king? 9. Amulius was made king. 10. Was not the city called Rome? 11. The city was called Rome. 12. A hundred senators had been chosen. 13. These senators were called fathers. 14. Who will be made senators? 15. You will be elected senators.

---

LESSON VIII.

*Complex Predicate.—Direct Object ; Simple.*

[14 & 15.]

206. The predicate, like the subject, may be limited,

I. By Objective Modifiers.

II. By Attributive Modifiers.

207. The *objective* modifiers of the verb-predicate may be divided into three classes ; viz.,

1) Direct Objects.

2) Indirect Objects.

3) Remote Objects.

REM.—These objects appear both singly and combined.

208. In the arrangement of the Latin sentence, the object, of whatever kind, generally precedes its verb ; e. g.,

Rex bellum gerit.

Legibus paret.

| The king is waging war.

| He obeys the laws.



REM.—Any word is rendered emphatic by being placed in an unusual position, especially if that position is near the beginning or end of the sentence or clause.

209. The *direct* object of the predicate may represent,

- 1) The person or thing on which the action of the verb is directly exerted; e. g.,

Caius puellam laudat.	Caius praises (what?) the girl.
-----------------------	---------------------------------

- 2) The direct effect of the action, i. e. the object produced by it; e. g.,

Caius epistolam scribit.	Caius is writing (what?) a letter.
--------------------------	------------------------------------

210. RULE.—*Direct Object.*

Any transitive verb may take an *accusative* as the direct object of its action. (See examples above.)

[F. B. 641; A. & S. § 229; Z. § 382.]

211. Any thought, which may be expressed by a transitive verb with a direct object, may also be expressed by the passive voice of the same verb, having for its subject the noun used as the direct object of the active; e. g.,

(Act.) Balbum accūsant.	They accuse Balbus.
-------------------------	---------------------

(Pass.) Balbus accusātur.	Balbus is accused.
---------------------------	--------------------

REM.—The agent of the action with passive verbs, when expressed, is generally put in the *ablative* with *a* or *ab*, but as it then becomes an *attributive modifier*, showing *by whom* the action is performed, we shall have occasion to examine it in another place.

212. VOCABULARY.

Ancus, <i>Ancus</i> , i.	Enlarge, <i>amplio</i> , <i>āre</i> , <i>āvī</i> , <i>ātum</i> .
Declare, <i>indico</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>dixi</i> , <i>dicitum</i> .	Marcius, <i>Marcius</i> , i. War, <i>bellum</i> , i, n.

213. EXERCISES.

I. *Translate and analyze, explaining position.*

1. Numa Pompilius leges dedit. 2. Hic vir sacra instituit. 3. Ancus Marcius suscepit imperium. 4. Numae nepos suscepit imperium. 5. Hic vir urbem ampliavit. 6. Carcerem primus aedificavit. 7. Romulus foedus icit. 8. Quis Albam diruit? 9. Tullus Hostilius Albam diruit. 10. Rex bellum indixit.

II. *Construct nine or more sentences with objective modifiers in the accusative—three declarative, three interrogative, and three imperative.*

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. They have declared war. 2. Will he not declare war? 3. Who has declared war? 4. Will you declare war? 5. Who founded Rome? 6. Romulus founded Rome. 7. Who enlarged the city? 8. Ancus Marcius enlarged the city. 9. The city was enlarged. 10. Rome was enlarged. 11. Did not Ancus Marcius enlarge the city? 12. Was not Rome enlarged? 13. Who was the first to teach (lit. *who the first taught*) the Italians? 14. Saturn was the first to teach the Italians.

---

LESSON IX.

*Complex Predicate.—Direct Object; Complex.*

[16 & 17.]

214. The object, and, in fact, any noun, whether in the subject or predicate, may be modified in the various ways already specified for the subject. (See Lesson V.)

## 215. VOCABULARY.

Build, <i>aedifico, aere, aevi, aetum.</i>	Neptune, <i>Neptūnus, i.</i>
Capitol, <i>Capitolium, i, n.</i>	No, <i>nullus, a, um.</i> (See F. B. 113, R.)
Commence, <i>inchoo, aere, aevi, aetum.</i>	Ostia, <i>Ostia, ae, f.</i>
Festival, <i>festum, i, n.</i>	Prison, <i>carcer, eris, m.</i>
Friendship, intimacy, <i>familiaritas, atis, f.</i>	Secure, <i>consequor, aequi, secutus sum.</i>
Game, <i>ludus, i, m.</i>	Sewer, <i>cloaca, ae, f.</i>
Institute, <i>instituo, ere, ui, utum.</i>	This, <i>hic, haec, hoc.</i>
Large, <i>magnus, a, um.</i>	Wage, <i>gero, ere, gessi, gestum.</i>
Many, <i>multus, a, um.</i>	

## 216. EXERCISES.

I. *Translate and analyze.*

1. Regnum Lucius Tarquinius Priscus accēpit. 2. Saturnus primus Itālos docuit. 3. Aenēae filius regnum accēpit. 4. Silvius Procas filios reliquit. 5. Silvius Procas duos filios reliquit. 6. Rex Albanōrum duos filios reliquit. 7. Anci familiaritātem consecūtus est. 8. Regis familiaritātem consecūtus est. 9. Romūlus centum senatōres legit.

II. 1. *Arrange the elements in the first of the above sentences in the usual order, and state the effect of placing regnum first.* (See 208, R.)

2. *Construct five or more Latin sentences containing modifiers, either in the subject or predicate, or in both.*

3. *Answer the following questions in Latin in the form of declarative sentences :*

1. Who founded Rome? 2. Who founded Alba Longa? 3. Who was the first to build a prison? 4. Who founded Ostia? 5. What king waged no war?

6. What king waged many wars? 7. Who built the sewers? 8. Who commenced the Capitol?

www.libtoomodel.cn

Romulus Romam condidit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Who instituted the festival of Neptune? 2. Did not Romulus institute these games? 3. Romulus instituted the festival of Neptune. 4. He founded Rome. 5. Shall you found a large city? 6. We have founded a large city. 7. Who secured the friendship of Ancus? 8. Have you secured the friendship of the king? 9. Let us secure the friendship of the good king.

LESSON X.

*Complex Predicate.—Indirect Object; Simple or Complex.*  
[18—20.]

217. The verb of the predicate may be modified by a noun denoting the person or thing *to* or *for which* any thing is, or is done. This modifier is called an *indirect object*.

218. RULE.—*Indirect Object.*

The indirect object is put in the dative, and is used,

1) After *esse* in expressions denoting possession;

e. g.,

Puëro est liber.

| *The boy has a book. (Lit.*

| There is a book to the  
| boy.) -

2) After the compounds of *esse*, except *posse*;

e. g.,

Mihi profuit. | *It profited me.*

3) After the compounds of *bene*, *satis*, and *male* ;

e. g. Officio suo satisfecit. | *He has discharged his duty.*  
(*Lit.* He has done enough  
for, &c.)

4) After the compounds of the prepositions *ad*,  
*ante*, *con*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *prae*, *sub*, and *su-*  
*per*, together with a few others ; e. g.,

Veni ut mihi succurras. | *I have come that you may*  
*assist (succor) me.*

5) After verbs signifying *to command* or *obey*,  
*please* or *displease*, *favor* or *injure*, *serve* or *re-*  
*sist*, together with *to indulge*, *spare*, *pardon*,  
*envy*, *believe*, *persuade*, &c. ; e. g.,

Legibus paret. | *He obeys the laws (is obedi-*  
*ent to).*

[F. B. 643 ; A. & S. § 223 and R. 2, and §§ 224, 225, 226 ; Z. §§ 406,  
412, 415, 420.]

REM.—The indirect object is sometimes expressed by the accusative  
with a preposition, as *ad* or *in* ; e. g., *Culpam in multitudinem*  
*contulerunt*, *They charged the blame upon the multitude.*

## 219. VOCABULARY.

All, <i>omnis</i> , <i>c</i>	Obey, <i>obedio</i> , <i>ire</i> , <i>ivi</i> , <i>itum</i> .
Believe, <i>credo</i> , <i>ere</i> , <i>didī</i> , <i>dītum</i> .	Order, institute, <i>ordīno</i> , <i>āre</i> , <i>āvī</i> , <i>ātum</i> .
Census, <i>censūs</i> , <i>us</i> , <i>m</i> .	Priscus, <i>Priscus</i> , <i>i</i> .
Country, native country, <i>pa-</i> <i>tria</i> , <i>ae</i> , <i>f</i> .	Servius, <i>Servius</i> , <i>i</i> .
Educate, <i>edūco</i> , <i>āre</i> , <i>āvī</i> , <i>ātum</i> .	Succeed, <i>succēdo</i> , <i>ere</i> , <i>cessi</i> , <i>ces-</i> <i>sum</i> .
Kill, <i>interficio</i> , <i>ere</i> , <i>fēcī</i> , <i>fec-</i> <i>tum</i> .	Tarquinius, <i>Tarquinius</i> , <i>i</i> .
Law, <i>lex</i> , <i>legis</i> , <i>f</i> .	Tullius, <i>Tullius</i> , <i>i</i> .

220. EXERCISES.

I. *Translate and analyze.*

1. Numa successit Tullus Hostilius. 2. Numa Pompilius civitatī profuit. 3. Tanāquil conjūgi persuāsit. 4. Tarquinio Servius successerat. 5. Nemo tibi credet. 6. Priscus Tarquinius plura bella gessit. 7. Agros urbis territorio adjunxit. 8. Hic rex interfectus est. 9. Boni patriae legibus parēbunt.

II. *Construct six Latin sentences : three with direct, and three with indirect objects.*

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The citizens will obey the laws. 2. Will you not obey the laws? 3. Let us obey the laws of our country. 4. Who will obey him? 5. Who will believe him? 6. They will believe you. 7. Whom did Servius Tullius succeed? 8. Servius succeeded Tarquinius Priscus. 9. Tarquinius Priscus was killed. 10. Who killed him? 11. The sons of Ancus killed him. 12. Who educated Servius Tullius? 13. Who ordered a census of the Roman people? 14. Servius was the first to order a census of all the Roman citizens.

---

LESSON XI.

*Complex Predicate.—Remote Object ; Genitive.*

[21 & 22.]

221. The verb of the predicate may be modified by a *genitive* appearing in the English translation as the object of an action, though in the Latin the distinction between the *direct object* and this *genitive* is clearly

marked. To indicate this distinction, we will call the latter a *remote object*; e. g.,

Miseremīni sociōrum. | *Pity the allies.*

REM.—The accusative as object denotes that on which the action is directly exerted, while the genitive denotes that *in regard to which* the action or feeling is exercised, and sometimes seems really to express its cause. This genitive might perhaps, therefore, be not improperly treated, in some instances at least, as an *adverbial attributive*; but, as we uniformly render it by the *object*, it seems to present a more simple classification of the facts of the language to regard it as a *remote object*.

## 222. RULE.—*Genitive of Remote Object.*

The genitive is used,

1) After verbs of pitying; e. g.,

Miseretur sociōrum. | *He pities the allies.*

2) After verbs of remembering and forgetting;  
e. g.,

Memīni vivōrum. | *I remember the living.*

3) After *refert* and *intērest*; e. g.,

Interest omnium. | *It interests all, or It is the interest of all.*

[F. B. 642; A. & S. §§ 215, 216, 219; Z. §§ 439, 442, 449.]

REM. 1.—Verbs of remembering and forgetting sometimes take the accusative; e. g., Memīni Cinnam, *I remember Cinna.*

REM. 2.—According to Key's Latin Grammar, verbs of memory take the accusative of the object actually remembered, or the genitive of that *about which* the memory is concerned.

## 223. VOCABULARY.

Add, *addo, dēre, dīdi, dītum.*

Ardea, *Ardea, ae, f.*

Besiege, *oppugno, āre, āvi, ātum.*

Collatinus, *Collatinus, i.*

Friend, *amicus, i, m.*

His, her, its, *suis, a, um*, referring to the subject.

Jupiter, *Jupiter, Jovis.* (See A. & S. § 85.)

Lucretia, <i>Lucretia, ac.</i>	Pity, <i>misereor, ěri, misertus</i> or <i>misertus sum.</i>
Other, <i>alius, a, ud.</i> (See F. B. 113, R.)	Remember, <i>reminiscor, ěi.</i>
Our, <i>noster, ĩra, trum.</i>	Remas, <i>Remus, i.</i>
Persuade, <i>persuadeo, ěre, suāsi, suāsum.</i>	Temple, <i>templum, i, n.</i>
Poor, <i>pauper, ěris, adj.</i>	Wife, <i>conjux, ũgis.</i>

224. EXERCISES.

I. *Translate and analyze.*

1. Vivōrum memĭni. 2. Reminiscātur popŭli Romāni. 3. Reminiscantur vetĕris incommōdi popŭli Romāni. 4. Reminiscĕre vetĕris famae popŭli Romāni. 5. Tarquinius Superbus cognōmen meruit. 6. Templum Jovis aedificāvit. 7. Ardeam oppugnābat. 8. Oppugnābat urbem Latii. 9. Brutus popŭlo persuāsit. 10. Alii nonnulli popŭlo persuāserunt. 11. Miseremĭni sociōrum.

II. 1. *Construct two or more Latin sentences, limiting the verb predicate by a genitive.*

2. *Construct Latin sentences in answer to the following questions :*

1. What city did Romulus found? 2. What became of Remus? 3. How many senators did Romulus choose? 4. What did he call them? 5. What king added to these a hundred other senators? 6. Who built the temple of Jupiter?

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Pity the poor. 2. We pity the poor. 3. Does he not pity us? 4. I pity them. 5. They remember the king. 6. Let them remember their friends. 7. Let us remember our friends. 8. We will persuade



the king. 9. Did the king wage many wars? 10. Tarquin besieged Ardea. 11. The wife of Collatinus slew herself. 12. Lucretia slew herself. 13. Who was Lucretia? 14. She was the wife of Collatinus.

## LESSON XII.

*Complex Predicate.—Remote Object; Ablative.*

[23 & 24.]

225. After a few verbs, the ablative is used as a remote object, though it could probably be easily explained, at least in most instances, as an *adverbial attributive*; e. g.,

Lacte vescuntur.

| *They live upon milk, or are  
nourished by means of  
milk.*

REM.—The *ablative lacte* in this example may be explained as an *adverbial attributive of means*.

226. RULE.—*Ablative of Remote Object.*

The ablative is used,

- 1) After the deponent verbs *utor, fruor, fungor potior, vescor*, and their compounds; e. g.,

Lacte vescuntur.

| *They live upon milk.*

- 2) After verbs signifying *to abound* or *be destitute of*; e. g.,

Nemo aliōrum ope carēre  
potest.

| *No one can be (do) without  
the assistance of others.*

[F. B. 644; A. & S. §§ 245, 250, Rem. 1, (2); Z. §§ 460, 465.]

227. VOCABULARY.

<p>Aid, <i>s.</i>, <i>auxilium</i>, <i>i</i>, <i>n</i>.          Aid, bear aid, <i>auxilium fero</i>,  <i>ferre, tuli, latum</i>.          Appoint, <i>creo, āre, āvi, ātum</i>.          Book, <i>liber, bri</i>, <i>m</i>.          Brutus, <i>Brutus</i>, <i>i</i>.          Confer, <i>tribuo, ěre, bui, bŭ-</i>  <i>tum</i>.          Consul, <i>consul, ūlis</i>, <i>m</i>.          Discharge, <i>fungor, gi, functus</i>  <i>sum</i>.          Duty, <i>officium</i>, <i>i</i>, <i>n</i>.          Enjoy, <i>fruor, i, ūtus</i> or <i>ctus</i>  <i>sum</i>.</p>	<p>For a year, lasting a year, <i>an-</i>  <i>nus, a, um</i>.          Junius, <i>Junius</i>, <i>i</i>.          Life, <i>vita, ae, f</i>.          Make, <i>facio, ěre, feci, factum</i> ;          be made, <i>fo, fiĕri, factus sum</i>.          Matron, <i>matrōna, ae</i>.          Mourn, <i>lugeo, ěre, luxi, luctum</i>.          Power, <i>imperium, i, n</i>.          Publicola, <i>Publicōla, ae, m</i>.          Two, <i>duo, ae, o</i>. (See F. B. 817.)          Use, <i>utor, i, usus sum</i>.          Valerius, <i>Valerius, i</i>.          Your, <i>vester, tra, trum</i>.</p>
---	---

228. EXERCISES.

I. *Translate and analyze, parsing objects.*

1. Lacte vescuntur.    2. Barbāri pellibus utuntur.
3. Utātur suis bonis.    4. Fruantur suis bonis.    5.
- Luce fruimur.    6. Officiis fungebātur.    7. Fuit consul
- Brutus.    8. Fuit consul acerrimus libertātis vindex.
9. Valerius Publicōla consul factus est.    10. Commōvit
- bellum Tarquinius.    11. Consul occisus est.    12. Tar-
- quinius filius occisus est.    13. Primus annus quinque
- consules habuit.

II. 1. *Change the moods of the verbs in the first five of the above sentences; the indicative to the subjunctive or imperative, and the subjunctive to the indicative or imperative; and then translate.*

MODEL.

Lacte vescantur.    | *Let them live upon milk.*

2. *Construct two Latin sentences, limiting the predicate by an ablative.*

3. Construct Latin sentences in answer to the following questions :

1. How many consuls were appointed?
2. For how long a time was power conferred upon them?
3. What Roman king waged war against the Romans?
4. Who aided Tarquin?

MODEL.

Consules duo creati sunt.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. He has discharged all his duties.
2. Let us discharge our duties.
3. Let them enjoy life.
4. Do you enjoy life?
5. He is using his book.
6. Let all use these books.
7. Will he use this book?
8. He will use your books.
9. Were not two consuls appointed?
10. Junius Brutus was consul.
11. Who was made consul?
12. Valerius Publicola was made consul.
13. Did not the Roman matrons mourn for the consul?
14. They did mourn for him.

---

LESSON XIII.

*Complex Predicate.—Direct Object with Attributive Accusative.*

[25—27.]

229. RULE.—*Direct Object with Attributive Accusative.*

Verbs of *making, choosing, electing, calling, showing,* and the like, are followed by two accusatives denoting the same person or thing; e. g.,

Saturnus arcem Saturniam	Saturn called the citadel Sa-
appellavit.	turnia.

[A. & S. § 230; Z. § 394.]

REM.—One of these accusatives is the direct object: the other is not a modifier, but an essential part of the predicate, and may be called the *attributive accusative*: thus, *Saturniam* is an essential part of the predicate, for the assertion is not that Saturn called the citadel, but that he called it *Saturnia*. Sentences of this class should be analyzed according to the following

MODEL.

Saturnus arcem Saturniam appellāvit.

*Saturn called the citadel Saturnia.*

This is a simple sentence.

*Saturnus* is the subject, and *Saturniam appellāvit* is the predicate.

*Saturniam appellāvit*, the predicate, is modified by the *direct object*, *arcem*.

*Arcem Saturniam appellāvit* is the complex predicate.

REM.—The *attributive accusative* is sometimes a noun, and sometimes an adjective.

230. When verbs of this class assume the passive form, the direct object becomes the subject, and the *attributive accusative* becomes the nominative, and still continues a part of the predicate; e. g.,

(Act.) Numam regem creāvērunt.	They appointed Numa king.
--------------------------------	---------------------------

(Pass.) Numa rex creātus est.	Numa was appointed king.
-------------------------------	--------------------------

231. VOCABULARY.

Bridge, *pons, pontis, m.*

Cocles, *Cocles, itis.*

Defend, *defendo, ěre, di, sum.*

Horatius, *Horatius, i.*

Insolent, *insolens, tis.*

Not, *non*; with imper. or subj.

*ne*; in questions, generally

*nonne.*

Render, *reddo, ěre, didi, ditum.*

Scaevola, *Scaevola, ae.*

Secretary, *scriba, ae, m.*

Show (as to show one's self),

*praesto, ěre, stiti.*

Soldier, *miles, itis, o.*

Yourself, *tu*; *tu ipse.*

## 232. EXERCISES.

I. *Translate and analyze.*

1. Saturnus arcem condidit. 2. Eam Saturniam appellavit. 3. Aenēas urbem Lavinium appellavit. 4. Ascanius urbem condidit. 5. Eam Albam Longam nuncupavit. 6. Romūlus centum senatōres legit. 7. Eos patres appellavit. 8. Diurnitas potestātis reges insolentes reddidit. 9. Reges insolentiōres redditi sunt.

II. 1. *Change the first six of the above sentences to the passive form, omitting the agent of the action.*

## MODELS.

1. Arx condita est.
2. Ea Saturnia appellata est.

2. *Change the sentences, thus reconstructed, to the interrogative form.*

## MODEL.

Nonne arx condita est?

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. We will call this soldier Horatius Cocles. 2. This soldier was called Horatius Cocles. 3. Did he not call the city Rome? 4. He called it Rome. 5. The city was called Rome. 6. Who defended the bridge? 7. Which bridge will you defend? 8. Whom did Scaevola kill? 9. Did he kill the king himself? 10. He killed the secretary of the king. 11. They elected him king. 12. He was elected king. 13. The people will elect them senators. 14. He has been elected senator. 15. Do not render the boy insolent. 16. Show yourself brave.

LESSON XIV.

*Complex Predicate.—Combined Objects ; two Accusatives.*  
[28—31.]

233. The objects already considered are not only used singly as modifiers of verbs, but are variously combined with each other. These combinations we will now notice in order.

234. A few verbs take two direct objects, the one of a person and the other of a thing.

235. RULE.—*Combined Objects ; two Accusatives.*

Verbs of *asking, demanding, teaching, and concealing*, may take two accusatives, the one of a person and the other of a thing ; e. g.,

Caesar frumentum Aeduos flagitābat.	Caesar demanded corn of the Aedui.
--	---------------------------------------

[F. B. 645 ; A. & S. § 231 ; Z. §§ 391, 393.]

236. When verbs, which in the active voice take two accusatives, become passive, the direct object of the person generally becomes the subject, and the accusative of the thing is retained.

237. RULE.—*Object after Passive Verbs.*

Verbs in the passive voice are followed by the same cases as in the active, except the direct object, which becomes the subject of the passive ; e. g.,

(Act.) Caesārem sententiam rogant.	They ask Caesar his opinion.
(Pass.) Caesar sententiam rogātur.	Caesar is asked his opinion.

REM.—This rule, it will be observed, applies to all verbs which take combined objects in any of their several forms.

[F. B. 658; A. & S. § 284; Z. § 382.]

[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

### 238. VOCABULARY.

Army, *exercitus, us, m.*

Ask, *rogo, are, avi, atum.*

Coriolanus, *Coriolanus, i.*

Leader, *dux, ducis, c.*

Letter, *littera, ae, f.*; letters,  
learning, *litterae, arum.*

Marcus, *Marcus, i.*

Opinion, *sententia, ae, f.*

Quintus, *Quintus, i.*

Virginia, *Virginia, ae.*

Virginian, *Virginianus, i.*

Volscians, *Volsci, orum.*

### 239. EXERCISES.

#### I. Translate and analyze.

1. Hic Italos agriculturam docuit. 2. Te sententiam rogabunt. 3. Balbum sententiam rogabant. 4. Te litteras docuit. 5. Quintus Marcus Coriolanus dictus est. 6. Coriolanus dux exercitus factus est. 7. Decemviri creati sunt. 8. Quis te litteras docuit? 9. Quem litteras docuisti? 10. Familia Fabiorum sola hoc bellum suscepit. 11. Fabius Maximus Hannibalem debilitavit.

II. 1. Change the first four of the above sentences to the passive form.

2. Change the next three of the above sentences to the active form, using some of the pronouns as subjects.

3. Construct three Latin sentences with two direct objects.

#### III. Translate into Latin.

1. Who taught the Italians? 2. Who taught the Italians agriculture? 3. Saturn taught them agriculture. 4. Will you teach them this? 5. I will teach you this. 6. We asked him his opinion. 7. He asked us our opinion. 8. We were asked our opinion. 9.

Who taught him letters? 10. The king's son taught him letters. 11. Who was called Coriolanus? 12. Was not Quintus Marcius called Coriolanus? 13. Whom did the Volscians elect leader of the army? 14. A Roman was made leader of the army. 15. Who slew Virginia? 16. Virginius killed his daughter.

### LESSON XV.

*Complex Predicate.—Combined Objects; Accusative and Dative.*

[82 & 83.]

240. RULE.—*Combined Objects; Accusative and Dative.*

Any transitive verb may take the accusative of the *direct*, and the dative of the *indirect* object; e. g.,

Balbus puëro viam mon- strat.		<i>Balbus shows the way to the boy.</i>
----------------------------------	--	---

[F. B. 648; A. & S. § 229 and R. 1; Z. § 405 (a).]

241. In the arrangement of objects, the *direct* seems to prefer the place after the *indirect*, but this order is often reversed; e. g.,

Fratri optiõnem dedit.		<i>He gave the choice to his brother.</i>
------------------------	--	---

REM. 1.—For passive construction, see 237.

REM. 2.—For accusative and dative after verbs of *depriving*, see Lesson XVIII.

242. VOCABULARY.

Camillus, <i>Camillus</i> , i.		Deliver, give up, <i>trado, ère, dī-</i>
Conquer, <i>vincō, ère, vici, vic-</i>		<i>-di, ditum.</i>
<i>tum.</i>		Enemy, <i>hostis, is, c.</i>



Falerii, <i>Falerii, ōrum.</i>	Ring, <i>annūlus, i, m.</i>
Gaul, a Gaul, <i>Gallus, i.</i>	Take possession of, <i>occūpo, āre,</i>
Golden, <i>aureus, a, um.</i>	<i>āvi, ātum.</i>
Mother, <i>mater, tris.</i>	That, <i>ille, a, ud.</i>
My, <i>meus, a, um.</i>	Three, <i>tres, tria.</i>

## 243. EXERCISES.

I. *Translate and analyze, parsing objects.*

1. Camillus scelestum homīnem puēris tradīdit. 2. Virgas iis dedit. 3. Falisci urbem Romānis tradidērunt. 4. Tarquinius bellum intūlit. 5. Amulius fratri optiōnem dedit. 6. Numitōri regnum restituērunt. 7. Camillus Volscōrum civitātem vicit. 8. Tres triumphos egit. 9. Furius Camillus urbem obsidēbat. 10. Camillus expulsus est.

II. 1. *Change the first five of the above sentences to the passive form, omitting the agent.*

2. *Construct two or more Latin sentences with both direct and indirect objects.*

3. *Change the sentences thus constructed to the passive form.*

III. *Translate into Latin,*

1. Will you give me a book? 2. We will give you three books. 3. Who gave you that book? 4. My brother gave it to me. 5. What did he give to his mother? 6. He gave her a gold ring. 7. What city was Camillus besieging? 8. Who was besieging Falerii? 9. Whom did Camillus deliver to the boys? 10. Who conquered the enemy? 11. Camillus conquered them. 12. Who had taken possession of the city? 13. The Gauls had taken possession of Rome.

LESSON XVI.

www.libtool.com.cn

*Complex Predicate.—Combined Objects ; Accusative and two Datives.*

[34—36.]

244. After a few verbs the *direct* object is found combined with *two indirect* objects.

REM.—One of these indirect objects generally represents the *person to whom*, and the other the *thing or object for which* the action is performed.

245. RULE.—*Combined Objects ; Accusative and two Datives.*

Transitive verbs of *giving, sending, imputing* (dare, mittĕre, vertĕre, &c.), sometimes take a *direct* object in the accusative, together with *two indirect* objects in the dative ; e. g.,

Regnum suum Romānis dono dedit.		<i>He gave his kingdom to the Romans as a present (for a present).</i>
------------------------------------	--	--

[F. B. 649 ; A. & S. § 227 and R. 1 ; Z. § 422.]

246. With the passive construction, the *direct* object, of course, becomes the subject, and the two indirect objects remain after the passive verb. (See Rule, 237.)

247. VOCABULARY.

Accept, <i>accipio, ĕre, cĕpi, cep- tum.</i>		Challenge, s., <i>provocatio, ōnis, f.</i>
Balbus, <i>Balbus, i.</i>		Challenge, v., <i>provōco, āre, āvi, ātum.</i>
Brave, <i>fortis, e.</i>		Crime, <i>crimen, ĩnis, n.</i>
Certain, certain one, <i>quidam, quaedam, quoddam,</i> and subs.		Cursor, <i>Cursor, ōris.</i>
<i>quiddam.</i>		Descendants, posterity, <i>postĕri, ōrum, m.</i>

Dictator, <i>dictātor</i> , <i>ōris</i> , m.	Papirius, <i>Papirius</i> , i.
Impute, <i>do</i> , <i>dare</i> , <i>dedi</i> , <i>datum</i> ;	Present, s., <i>donum</i> , i, n.
<i>tribuo</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>ui</i> , <i>ūtum</i> .	Titus, <i>Titus</i> , i.
Manlius, <i>Manlius</i> , i.	Torquati, <i>Torquāti</i> , <i>ōrum</i> .

## 248. EXERCISES.

I. *Translate and analyze, parsing objects.*

1. Romāni haec Camillo crimīni dedērunt. 2. Hoc Camillo crimīni datum est. 3. Decemvīri civitāti leges scripsērunt. 4. Regnum suum Romānis dono dedit. 5. Librum mihi dono dedit. 6. Gallus quidam fortisīmum Romanōrum provocāvit. 7. Gallus quidam eximia corporis magnitudīne fortissīmum Romanōrum provocāvit. 8. Postēri ejus Torquāti appellāti sunt. 9. Gallus quidam provocāvit unum ex Romānis.

II. 1. *Change the third, fourth, fifth, and sixth of the above examples to the passive form.*

2. *Change the declarative sentences, thus formed, to interrogative or imperative sentences.*

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. What will you give Balbus? 2. We will give him these books as a present. 3. They will impute this to us as a crime. 4. Did not the Romans impute this to Camillus as a crime? 5. A certain Gaul challenged the bravest of the Romans. 6. Who accepted this challenge? 7. Who were called Torquati? 8. The Romans called the descendants of T. Manlius, Torquati. 9. The Romans appointed Papirius Cursor dictator.

www.libtool.com.cn  
LESSON XVII.

*Complex Predicate.—Combined Objects ; Accusative and Genitive.*

[87—89.]

249. RULE.—*Combined Objects ; Accusative and Genitive.*

Verbs of *accusing, convicting, acquitting, warning,* and the like, take the accusative of the person, and the genitive of the crime, charge, &c. ; e. g.,

Caium proditionis accūsant. | *They accuse Caius of treachery.*

[F. B. 646 ; A. & S. §§ 217, 229 ; Z. § 446.]

REM.—The genitive is perhaps best explained by making it depend upon the ablative *crimine* understood. See F. B. 214, note.

250. RULE.—*Combined Objects ; Accusative and Genitive.*

The impersonal verbs of feeling, *misēret, poenitet, pudet, taedet,* and *piget,* take the accusative of the person and the genitive of the object which produces the feeling ; e. g.,

Taedet me vitae. | *I am weary of life. (Lit. It wearies me of life.)*

[F. B. 647 ; A. & S. §§ 215, 229 ; Z. § 441.]

251. In the arrangement of objects, the *direct* generally precedes the *remote* ; e. g.,

Caium furti accūsant. | *They accuse Caius of theft.*

## 252. VOCABULARY.

Accuse, <i>accūso, āre, āvi, ātum.</i>	conjugation. (See F. B. 425 ;
Advice, <i>consilium, i, n.</i>	A. & S. § 162, 15.)
Cavalry, <i>equites, um ; sing., eques, itis, m.</i>	Pontius, <i>Pontius, i.</i>
Condemn, <i>damno, āre, āvi, ā- tum.</i>	Put to death, kill, <i>occido, ěre, cidi, cisum.</i>
Fabius, <i>Fabius, i.</i>	Reject, <i>imprōbo, āre, āvi, ātum.</i>
Master, <i>magister, tri.</i>	To death, <i>capitis ; to condemn to death, capitis damnāre.</i>
Must, expressed by periphrastic	Treachery, <i>proditio, ōnis, f.</i>

## 253. EXERCISES.

I. Translate and analyze, explaining position and parsing objects.

1. Caium proditionis accūsant. 2. Dictator Rullianum capitis damnāvit. 3. Vos furti accusavērunt. 4. Magister equitum capitis damnātus est. 5. Caius proditionis accusātus est. 6. Proditionis accusāti estis. 7. Tui me misēret. 8. Taedet me belli. 9. Pyrrhum auxilium poposcērunt. 10. Hi Epīri regem auxilium poposcērunt. 11. Tarentinis bellum indictum est. 12. Nox proelio finem dedit.

II. 1. In the first three of the above sentences, make the subject the direct object, and the direct object the subject ; then put the sentences in the interrogative form, and translate.

## MODEL.

1. Caius illos proditionis accūsat.
2. Num Caius illos proditionis accūsat?  
*Does Caius accuse them of treachery ?*

REM.—In number 1 of the Model, it will be observed, the *object Caium* is changed to the *subject Caius*, and the *subject illi* implied in the ending of the verb is changed to the *object illos*,

and, as the subject is now in the singular, the predicate *accūsant* becomes *accūsāt*. In number 2, the same sentence is put in the interrogative form.

2. Construct two Latin sentences, limiting the predicate by an accusative and a genitive.

3. Change the sentences, thus constructed, to the passive form, omitting the agent.

MODEL.

(Act.) Caium proditiōnis accūsant.	They accuse Caius of treachery.
(Pass.) Caius proditiōnis accusātur.	Caius is accused of treachery.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Who condemned Fabius to death?
2. Was he condemned to death?
3. He was condemned to death.
4. The dictator condemned the master of the cavalry to death.
5. Will he not accuse us of treachery?
6. We shall be accused of treachery.
7. I have been accused of treachery.
8. You have all been accused of treachery.
9. Were the Romans put to death?
10. Must they all be put to death?
11. Did Pontius reject his father's advice?

LESSON XVIII.

*Complex Predicate.—Combined Objects ; Accusative and Ablative.*

[40—42.]

254. RULE.—*Combined Objects ; Accusative and Ablative.*

Verbs signifying to separate from, deprive of, &c., take

the accusative of the direct object, and the ablative of that from which it is separated; e. g.,

Me luce privant. *They deprive me of light.*

[F. B. 650; A. & S. § 229 and R. 1, and § 251; Z. § 460.]

REM.—Sometimes, especially in poetry, verbs of *depriving*, &c. take the accusative and dative; e. g., *Id mihi eripuisti atque abstulisti, You have taken this from me and carried it away.*

### 255. VOCABULARY.

Ambassador, *legātus, i, m.*

Appear, *videor, eri, visus sum.*

Cineas, *Cineas, ae.*

Decemvirs, *decemvirī, ōrum.*

Deprive, *privo, are, avi, atum.*

Fabius, *Fabius, i.*

Fabricius, *Fabricius, i.*

Fourth, *quartus, a, um.*

Glory, *gloria, ae, f.*

Home, *domus, i* or *us, f.* (See A. & S. § 89.)

How, of what kind, *qualis, e.*

Kingdom, *regnum, i, n.*

No one, nobody, *nemo (nis, not in good use).*

Part, *pars, tis, f.*

Promise, v., *promitto, ěre, misi missum.*

Pyrrhus, *Pyrrhus, i.*

Rullianus, *Rullianus, i.*

Samnites, *Samnītes, ium.*

Send, *mitto, ěre, misi, missum.*

Write, prepare, *scribo, ěre, scripsi, scriptum.*

### 256. EXERCISES.

I. *Translate and analyze, parsing objects.*

1. Me luce privātis. 2. Num me luce privātis? 3. Puĕrum libro fraudavĕrunt. 4. Gloria mea privātus sum. 5. Puĕri libris fraudabantur. 6. Puĕri boni libris fraudāti erant. 7. Fabricium admirātus est. 8. Unum ex legātis admirātus est. 9. Pyrrhus vulnerātus erat. 10. Hostes caesi sunt. 11. Viginti millia hostium caesa sunt.

II. 1. *Change the first three of the above sentences to the passive form.*

2. Change the next three to the active form, supplying such subjects as you please.

3. Construct Latin sentences in answer to the following questions:

1. Who prepared (*wrote*) the laws for Rome? 2. Who was made dictator? 3. Whom did this dictator condemn to death? 4. Who conquered the Samnites?

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Who deprived you of your books? 2. I will give you this book. 3. Will you deprive yourself of it? 4. Will you deprive the Romans of their glory? 5. No one will deprive them of their glory. 6. Who will deprive us of our city? 7. They have been deprived of their homes. 8. What did Pyrrhus promise to Fabricius? 9. He promised him a fourth part of his kingdom. 10. Whom did Pyrrhus send as ambassador? 11. Cineas was sent as ambassador. 12. How does the city appear to you? 13. We have seen the country of kings.

---

## LESSON XIX.

*Complex Predicate.—Combined Objects; two Datives.*

[43 & 44.]

257. RULE.—*Combined Objects; two Datives.*

Intransitive verbs signifying *to be*, *to come*, *to go*, and the like, often take two datives, one denoting the object *to which*, and the other the object *for which*; e. g.,  
Caesāri auxilio venit.

| *He has come to the assistance of Caesar.*

[F. B. 651; A. & S. § 227; Z. § 422.]



REM.—Verbs of this class cannot, of course, assume the passive form.

## 258. VOCABULARY.

Carthaginian,	<i>Carthaginiensis, e.</i>	Hamilcar, <i>Hamīlcar, āris.</i>
Elephant,	<i>elephantus, i, m.</i>	Service, <i>usus, us, m.</i>
Great,	<i>magnus, a, um.</i>	Xanthippus, <i>Xanthippus, i.</i>

## 259. EXERCISES.

I. *Translate and analyze, parsing objects.*

1. Una res erat usui. 2. Una res Romānis erat magno usui. 3. Hoc fuit mihi magno usui. 4. Haec fuērunt fratri magno usui. 5. Balbo auxilio venit. 6. Vobis auxilio venīmus. 7. Romanōrum exercitus Hierōnem superavērunt. 8. Romanōrum exercitus regem Syracusārum superavērunt. 9. Duīllius septem millia hostium cepit. 10. Carthaginienses pacem petiērunt.

II. 1. *Construct three or more Latin declarative sentences.*

2. *Change the sentences, thus constructed, to the interrogative form.*

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Pyrrhus conquered the Romans. 2. Pyrrhus used elephants. 3. The elephants were of great service to Pyrrhus. 4. Were not the elephants of great service to him? 5. Are not books of great service to us? 6. Who conquered Hamilcar? 7. Who conquered the leader of the Carthaginians? 8. The Romans conquered him. 9. Who conquered the Romans? 10. Who conquered the Roman army? 11. Xanthippus conquered the Roman army.

LESSON XX.

www.libtool.com.cn

*Complex Predicate.—Combined Objects ; Dative and Ablative.*

[45—47.]

260. RULE.—*Combined Objects ; Dative and Ablative.*

*Opus est* and *usus est*, having the force of impersonal verbs signifying need, take the dative of the person, and the ablative of the object needed ; e. g.,

Duce nobis opus est.

We need a leader. (Lit.  
There is to us the need  
of a leader.)

REM.—With *opus*, the thing needed is frequently made the subject, and then *opus est* is used personally ; e. g., *Dux nobis opus est*.

[F. B. 652 ; A. & S. § 243 ; Z. § 464 and N. 2.]

261. VOCABULARY.

Aid, s., *auxilium*, i, n.

Ask for, seek, *peto*, ēre, īvi, ītum.

Captive, *captivus*, a, um.

Exchange, s., *permutatio*, ōnis, f.

Favor, v., *faveo*, ēre, favi, fautum.

Fortune, *fortūna*, ae, f.

Grant, *tribuo*, ēre, bui, bŭtum.

Need, v., *opus est*, *usus est*.

Obtain, *obtineo*, ēre, tinui, tentum.

Peace, *pax*, *pacis*, f.

Regulus, *Regŭlus*, i.

262. EXERCISES.

I. *Translate and analyze, parsing the objects.*

1. Legibus nobis opus est.
2. Urbe vobis opus est.
3. Libris nobis omnibus opus est.
4. Liber mihi opus est.
5. Usus exercitu fuit Romanis.
6. Fortuna Carthaginensibus favit.
7. Regulus Romanis suavit.
8. Septuaginta tres Carthaginensium naves captae sunt.

9. Tredĕcim millia hostium occĭsa sunt. 10. Carthaginiensĭbus pax tribŭta est. 11. Poeni omnem Hispaniam Romĕnis permisĕrunt.

II. Construct five Latin sentences with combined objects in any of the forms above specified.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. We need you. 2. Do you need us? 3. Who needs this book? 4. My brother needs it. 5. We all need aid. 6. Does not your father need aid? 7. The Romans needed Regulus. 8. The Carthaginians needed him. 9. Let fortune favor us. 10. Did the Carthaginians obtain an exchange of captives? 11. Who asked for peace? 12. The Carthaginians asked for peace. 13. Did the Romans grant them peace? 14. The Romans did grant peace to them. 15. Peace was granted to them.

---

## LESSON XXI.

*Complex Predicate.—Adverbial Attribute; Adverbs.*

[48—51.]

263. The verb of the predicate, as already stated (Lesson VIII.), may be limited or modified by attributives. These are,

I. Adverbs.

II. Adverbial Expressions.

264. Adverbs, as attributive modifiers of the predicate, may denote

1) The *place* of the action or event; e. g.,

<i>Ibi</i> scribam regis interfĕcit.	<i>There he killed the secretary of the king.</i>
--------------------------------------	---

2) Its *time*; e. g.,

<i>Tum se tribūnus obtūlit.</i>	<i>Then the tribune presented</i>
	<i>himself.</i>

3) Its *manner, means, &c.*; e. g.,

<i>Plura bella feliciter gessit.</i>	<i>He waged many wars suc-</i>
	<i>cessfully.</i>

4) Its *cause*; e. g.,

<i>Quamobrem regem interfē-</i>	<i>Wherefore he killed the king.</i>
<i>cit.</i>	

265. There is also a class of adverbs which do not express the attribute of the predicate, but show the *manner* or *mode* of the assertion. These are accordingly called *modal* adverbs, and strictly modify the *copula* (see 199). They denote either *certainty* or *uncertainty*, and are either *affirmative* or *negative*; e. g.,

<i>Non veniet.</i>	<i>He will not come.</i>
<i>Fortasse veniet.</i>	<i>Perhaps he will come.</i>
<i>Certe veniet.</i>	<i>He will certainly come.</i>

REM. 1.—Adverbs of *manner, means, &c.*, are the most numerous, and present far the greatest variety, including *quality, degree, quantity, &c.*

REM. 2.—*Cause* is generally denoted by adverbial expressions; accordingly but few adverbs of this class occur.

REM. 3.—*Nonne* is compounded of *ne* and the adverb *non*, and may in future be thus treated in analyzing.

266. RULE.—*Adverbs.*

Adverbs modify *verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs*;  
e. g.,

<i>Haud difficilis.</i>	<i>Not difficult.</i>
<i>Miles fortiter pugnāt.</i>	<i>The soldier fights bravely.</i>

[F. B. 629; A. & S. § 277; Z. § 262.]

267. The *attributive* modifiers of the predicate, whether in the form of adverbs or adverbial expressions, generally stand immediately before the verb, between that and the object, if an object is used ; e. g.,

Bellum feliciter gessit. | *He waged war successfully.*

REM. 1.—Interrogative adverbs are placed at the beginning of the sentence or clause ; e. g., *Quamdiu furor tuus nos eludet ? How long shall your recklessness elude us ?*

REM. 2.—Emphasis often causes the *adverbial attributive* (187, R. 2) to stand at or near the beginning or end. (See examples, 264.)

## 268. VOCABULARY.

Afterwards, *postea*.

Assistance, *auxilium*, *i*, *n*.

Auxiliaries, *auxilia*, pl. of *auxilium*.

Be made, *fit*, *fieri*, *factus sum*, pass. of *facio*.

Captive, *captivus*, *i*, *m*.

Ever, at any time, *unquam*.

Fight, *pugno*, *are*, *avi*, *atum*.

How long ? *quamdiu ?*

Island, *insula*, *ae*, *f*.

Macedonia, *Macedonia*, *ae*, *f*.

Not, *non* ; with imperat. or subj. *ne*.

Never, *nunquam*.

Occupy, *occupo*, *are*, *avi*, *atum*.

Promise, *polliceor*, *eri*, *pollicitus sum*.

Ransom, *redimo*, *ere*, *redemi*, *redemptum*.

Senate, *senatus*, *us*, *m*.

Sicily, *Sicilia*, *ae*, *f*.

Slave, *servus*, *i*, *m*.

Then, *tunc*.

When ? *quando ?*

Where ? *ubi ?*

Why ? *cur ?*

## 269. EXERCISES.

I. *Translate and analyze, parsing and explaining adverbs.*

1. Hoc nunquam factum est. 2. Hoc semper factum erat. 3. Hi cives non sunt necessarii. 4. Hos omnes ille postea interfecit. 5. Interea frater Hannibalis vincitur. 6. Res prospere gesta est. 7. Multae Italiae

civitātes Romānis paruērant. 8. Interea Hasdrūbal perdit triginta quinque millia homīnum. 9. Philippus Hannibāli auxilia pollicētur. 10. Rex Macedoniae Hannibāli auxilia pollicētur.

II. 1. *Specify all the adverbs in your reading lesson, showing the force of each.*

2. *Put the first five of the above sentences in the interrogative form, omitting the adverbs and substituting in their stead interrogative adverbs of time or place.*

## MODELS.

1. Quando hoc factum est?

2. Ubi hoc factum est?

3. *Ask three questions in Latin, using interrogative adverbs, and then give appropriate answers to them.*

## MODELS.

1. Quando patrem tuum vidēbis?	When will you see your father?
2. Patrem meum cras vidēbo.	I shall see my father to-morrow.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Were slaves ever made soldiers? 2. They have never been made soldiers. 3. We will not fight. 4. The Roman senate did not ransom the captives. 5. Why did they not ransom them? 6. Were not the captives put to death? 7. They were afterwards put to death. 8. Who promised aid to Hannibal? 9. The king of Macedonia promised him auxiliaries. 10. I shall not promise him assistance. 11. Why will you not promise him assistance? 12. Who occupied Sicily at that time (*then*)? 13. The Carthaginians occupied it.

## LESSON XXII.

www.libtool.com.cn

*Complex Predicate.—Adverbial Expressions of Manner Means, &c.*

[52—56.]

270. The attribute of the verb-predicate may be expressed by the oblique cases of nouns or adjectives, with or without prepositions. These oblique cases, with or without prepositions, may be called adverbial expressions, and may be referred to the following classes, viz. :

- 1) Adverbial expressions of *manner, means, &c.*
- 2) Adverbial expressions of *time.*
- 3) Adverbial expressions of *place.*
- 4) Miscellaneous adverbial expressions.

271. RULE.—*Manner, Means, &c.*

The *manner* or *cause* of an action, and the *means* or *instrument* employed, are expressed by the ablative; e. g.,

Domīnum gladio occīdit.	<i>He killed his master with a sword.</i>
-------------------------	---

REM.—*Manner* is often expressed by the ablative with *cum*, especially if accompanied by an adjective; as, *Cum ingenti pompa, With great pomp.*

[F. B. 666; A. & S. § 247; Z. §§ 452, 455.]

272. RULE.—*Price, Degree of Estimation, &c.*

Price, degree of estimation, &c., when expressed by nouns, are usually put in the ablative, and, when expressed by adjectives, usually in the genitive; e. g.,

<p>Avārus patriam auro vendet.</p> <p>Avārus pecuniam magni aestimat.</p>	<p>  The avaricious man will sell his country for gold.</p> <p>  The avaricious man values money highly.</p>
---	--

[F. B. 667; A. & S. §§ 214, 252; Z. §§ 444, 456.]

REM. 1.—The genitive of a few nouns, and the ablative of a few adjectives, occur in expressions of price and value.

REM. 2.—To adverbial expressions of means must be referred the ablative of the agent after passive verbs.

273. RULE.—*Agent of Passive Verbs.*

The agent of the action after passive verbs is put,

1) In the ablative with *a* or *ab*; e. g.,

<p>Puer a Caio docetur.</p>	<p>  The boy is taught by Caius.</p>
-----------------------------	--------------------------------------

2) Except after the second periphrastic conjugation which requires the agent in the dative; e. g.,

<p>Mihi scribendum est.</p>	<p>  I must write.</p>
-----------------------------	------------------------

[F. B. 659; A. & S. §§ 248, 225, III; Z. § 451.]

REM. 1.—The dative of the agent after the second periphrastic conjugation may be explained as an *indirect object*; thus, *Mihi scribendum est*, I must write, means *there is writing for me to do*.

REM. 2.—The *accusative* with *per* is sometimes used as agent; e. g., *Per Anci filios occisus est*, He was put to death by the sons of Ancus.

274. VOCABULARY.

Arms, *arma, orum*, n. pl.  
 By (with voluntary agent), *a, ab, abs*; in other cases, indicated by *abl.*  
 Carthage, *Carthāgo, ĩnis*, f.  
 Cornelius, *Cornelius, i*, m.  
 Force, *vis, vis*, f. (pl. *vires*).  
 Hannibal, *Hannĭbal, ĩlis*, m.  
 How, *quĭ, quomodo*.

In vain, *frustra*.  
 Italy, *Italia, ae, f.*  
 Let, indicated by subj. of the following verb. (See F. B. 230, 231.)  
 Liberate, *libero, are, avi, atum*.  
 New (as in "New Carthage"), *Novus, a, um*.  
 Once, *semel*.



P., P. for *Publius*.

Scipio, *Scipio*, *ōnis*, m.

Take, *capio*, *ēre*, *cepi*, *captum*.

Thus, *sic*.

Try, *tento*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*.

[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

### 275. EXERCISES.

I. *Translate and analyze, parsing and explaining adverbial expressions.*

1. Duo Scipiōnes ab Hasdrubāle interfecti erant. 2. Quondam Publius Cornelius Scipio patrem singulāri virtūte servāvit. 3. Caius amīci sui labōrem parvi aestimat. 4. Plurīmāe civitātes ab Hannibāle tenebantur. 5. Hasdrūbal strenue pugnāvit. 6. Ibi Scipio pugnat. 7. Scipio ingenti gloria triumphāvit. 8. Scipio Africānus appellātus est. 9. Sic finem accēpit secundum Punīcum bellum.

II. 1. *Limit the predicates in the first five of the above examples by attributives of time or place; interrogative or not, at the pleasure of the pupil.*

2. *Explain all the adverbs in your reading lesson; also all the adverbial expressions of manner, means, &c.*

3. *Construct two or more Latin sentences, limiting the predicate of each, by some attribute of time or place, and then add that of manner, means, &c.*

### MODELS.

1. *Tum domum emit.*

*He then bought the house.*

2. *Tum domum auro emit.*

*He then bought the house  
with gold.*

### III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Who took New Carthage? 2. P. Cornelius Scipio took it. 3. How did he take it? 4. He took it by force of arms. 5. Was not he made consul? 6.

When was he made consul? 7. By whom was he made consul? 8. He was made consul by the Roman people. 9. The Roman people made Scipio consul then. 10. Thus P. Scipio liberated Italy. 11. Peace will be tried in vain. 12. Let us now try peace. 13. We will try peace once.

## LESSON XXIII.

*Complex Predicate.—Adverbial Expressions of Time.*

[57—59.]

276. RULE.—*Time.*

Time *when* is expressed by the ablative without a preposition; e. g.,

Hieme ursus dormit. | *The bear sleeps in winter.*

[F. B. 669, A. & S. § 253; Z. § 475.]

REM.—The accusative with a preposition is frequently used to denote time, when it is spoken of with reference to the time of another event; e. g., Post Aenae mortem Ascanius regnum accēpit  
*After the death of Aeneas, Ascanius received the royal power.*

277. RULE.—*Length of Time.*

Length of time is generally expressed by the accusative; e. g.,

Caius annum unum vixit. | *Caius lived one year.*

[F. B. 670; A. & S. § 236; Z. § 395.]

REM.—The ablative is sometimes used to denote length of time; e. g., Regnavit annis sexaginta, *He reigned sixty years.*

278. VOCABULARY.

Against, <i>indicated by the dative.</i>	Day, <i>dies, di, m. &amp; f. in sing. ; m. in pl.</i>
Antiochus, <i>Antiochus, i, m.</i>	Die, <i>morior, mori or moriri, mortuus sum.</i>
Battle, <i>proelium, i, n. ; pugna, ac, f.</i>	Fifteen, <i>quindēcim.</i>

Fortieth, <i>quadragésimus, a, um.</i>	Remain, <i>maneo, ère, mansi, mansum; remaneo, ère, &amp;c.</i>
Forty, <i>quadraginta, indecl.</i>	Rout, <i>fundo, ère, fudi, fusum.</i>
Great, <i>magnus, a, um; ingens, tis.</i>	See, <i>video, ère, vidi, visum.</i>
Greece, <i>Graecia, ae, f.</i>	Seven, <i>septem.</i>
Here, <i>hic.</i>	Seventh, <i>septimus, a, um.</i>
How, <i>quam; how many, quot or quam multi; how old, quot annos with natus; as, Quot annos natus est?</i>	State, <i>civitas, atis, f.</i>
Numa, <i>Numa, ae, m.</i>	Ten, <i>decem.</i>
Old, <i>natus, a, um; two years old, duo annos natus.</i>	Third, <i>tertius, a, um.</i>
Reign, <i>regnum, i, n.; imperium, i, n.</i>	Thirtieth, <i>tricesimus, a, um.</i>
	Three, <i>tres, tria.</i>
	To-morrow, <i>cras; crastino die.</i>
	Two hundred, <i>ducenti, ae, a.</i>
	Year, <i>annus, i, m.</i>
	Yesterday, <i>heri; hesterno die.</i>

## 279. EXERCISES.

I. *Translate and analyze, explaining adverbial attributives.*

1. Post hoc proelium pax facta est. 2. Secundo anno itèrum Tarquinius bellum Romānis intūlit. 3. Sexto decimo anno post reges exactos popūlus seditiōnem fecit. 4. Tum rex Antiōchus pacem petit. 5. P. Licinius victus est. 6. Publius Licinius gravi proelio victus est. 7. Eōdem fere tempōre dux Romanōrum gravi proelio a rege victus est. 8. Ancus Marcius vicesimo quarto anno imperii morbo obiit.

II. 1. *Substitute adverbs for the adverbial expressions in the first three of the above sentences.*

## MODEL.

Postea pax facta est.

2. *Construct Latin sentences containing the following adverbial modifiers:*

Unum annum, biennium, hesterno die.

3. *What adverbs are equivalent to the following expressions?*

Hoc tempore, illo tempore, longum tempus, hesterno die, crastino die.

4. *Construct Latin sentences in answer to the following questions:*

1. When did Saturn found a citadel? 2. When did Numa die? 3. How long did Romulus reign? 4. How many years did the seven kings reign?

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. When will you read this book? 2. I will read it to-morrow. 3. When did you see your father? 4. I saw him yesterday. 5. How long will you remain here? 6. We shall remain here ten days. 7. How old are you? 8. I am fifteen years old. 9. Do not wage war against the states of Greece. 10. We have never waged war against Greece. 11. Who was routed in a great battle? 12. Who was routed by Cornelius Scipio Asiaticus? 13. Was not Antiochus routed in a great battle by Cornelius Scipio Asiaticus? 14. He was routed by the consul.

---

## LESSON XXIV.

*Complex Predicate.—Adverbial Expressions of Place.*

[60—62.]

280. RULE.—*Place IN WHICH; Towns.*

The name of a town where any thing is, or is done, if of the first or second declension and singular number, is put in the genitive, otherwise in the ablative; e. g.,

Caius Cortōnae vixit.		<i>Caius lived at Cortona.</i>
Caius Tibūre vixit.		<i>Caius lived at Tibur.</i>

[F. B. 672; A. & S. § 221; Z. § 398.]

REM.—The town *near which* is expressed by the accusative with *ad* or *apud*; e. g., *Ad Pydnam, Near Pydna.*

281. RULE.—*Place IN WHICH*; *not Towns.*

The name of a place where any thing is, or is done, when not a town, is generally put in the ablative with a preposition; e. g.,

Ursus in antro dormit.		<i>The bear sleeps in a cave.</i>
------------------------	--	-----------------------------------

[F. B. 673; A. & S. § 254, R. 3; Z. § 489.]

282. RULE.—*Place TO or FROM WHICH.*

After verbs of motion;

- 1) The place *to which* the motion is directed, if a town or small island, is expressed by the accusative without a preposition, otherwise by the accusative with one; e. g.,

Romam venīre.		<i>To come to Rome.</i>
In Italiam venīre.		<i>To come into Italy.</i>

- 2) The place *from which* the motion proceeds, if a town or small island, is expressed by the ablative without a preposition, otherwise by the ablative with one; e. g.,

Roma venīre.		<i>To come from Rome.</i>
Ab Italia venīre.		<i>To come from Italy.</i>

[F. B. 674; A. & S. §§ 237, 255; Z. §§ 398, 404, 489.]

283. RULE.—*Domus, Rus, &c.*

*Domus* and *rus*, together with the genitives *belli, luminis*, and *militiae*, are used like names of towns; e. g.,

Caius rure rediit.

*Caius returned from the country.*

Balbus et domi et militiae  
mecum fuit.

*Balbus was with me both at home and on service.*

[F. B. 675 ; A. & S. § 221, R. 3, § 237, R. 4, and § 255, R. 1 ; Z. § 400.]

284. VOCABULARY.

Africa, *Afrīca*, *ae*, *f*.

At, *before names of towns*, indicated by *gen.* or *abl.* (See 280.)

At home, *domi*, *gen.* of *domus*.

Athens, *Athēnae*, *ārum*, *pl. f.*

Boston, *Bostonia*, *ae*, *f.*

Hither, *huc*.

Home, *domus*, *us* or *i*, *f.*

In, *in* (with *abl.*).

Into, *in* (with *acc.*).

Providence, *Providentia*, *ae*, *f.*

Reside, *habito*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*.

Rome, *Roma*, *ae*, *f.*

Serve in war, *milīto*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*.

There, *ibi*.

Thither, *illuc*.

To, *ad* (with *acc.*); *before names of towns*, indicated by *accus.*

Whither? *quo*, *quonam?*

285. EXERCISES.

I. *Translate and analyze, explaining adverbial attributives.*

1. Paullus Romam rediit.
2. Paullus cum ingenti pompa Romam rediit.
3. Paullus cum ingenti pompa Romam rediit in nave Persei.
4. Consūles in Afrīcam trājecērunt.
5. Multa ibi praeclāre gesta sunt per illustrem Scipiōnis Africāni nepōtem.
6. Ingens ibi praeda facta est.
7. Biennium Carthagīne manēbunt.
8. Misērunt legātos Carthagīnem.
9. Caius rus ex urbe rediit.
10. Intērim in Macedonia quidam Pseudophilippus arma movit.
11. Intērim in Macedonia quidam Pseudophilippus Juvencium gravi proelio vicit.

II. 1. *In the above sentences, for the adverbial expressions of place, substitute adverbs meaning here or there after verbs of rest, and adverbs meaning hither or thither after verbs of motion.*

## MODEL.

Paullus illuc rediit.

Paullus returned thither (to that place).
---

2. *In the fifth and six sentences, instead of ibi put the place denoted by it; also mark the form of the agent in the fifth (per . . . nepōtem), and give the common construction.*

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Where did Scipio serve in war? 2. He served in Africa. 3. Whither are you going? 4. I am going home. 5. Are you going to Italy? 6. I shall go to Rome. 7. We shall go to Athens. 8. Where is your father? 9. He is at home—in the city—in Providence—in Boston. 10. Whom did the Romans appoint consul? 11. They appointed Scipio consul. 12. Scipio was appointed consul. 13. They sent Cornelius Scipio into Africa. 14. The consul was sent to Carthage. 15. He resides at Rome—at Athens—at Carthage.

## LESSON XXV.

*Complex Predicate.—Oblique Cases with Prepositions as Adverbial Expressions.*

[63—65.]

286. Oblique cases with prepositions express a great variety of adverbial relations, as *time, place, manner, cause, &c.*

287. RULE.—*Prepositions with Accusative.*

The following twenty-six prepositions govern the accusative; viz., *Ad*, *adversus*, *ante*, *apud*, *circa* or *circum*, *cis* or *citra*, *contra*, *erga*, *extra*, *infra*, *inter*, *intra*, *juxta*, *ob*, *penes*, *per*, *pone*, *post*, *praeter*, *prope*, *propter*, *secundum*, *supra*, *trans*, *ultra*, *versus* (*rare*); e. g.,

<p><i>Ad fugam.</i></p> <p><i>Intra muros.</i></p>		<p><i>To flight.</i></p> <p><i>Within the walls.</i></p>
--	--	--

[F. B. 679; A. & S. § 235; Z. § 404.]

288. RULE.—*Prepositions with Ablative.*

The following eleven prepositions govern the ablative; viz., *A* (*ab* or *abs*), *absque*, *coram*, *cum*, *de*, *e* or *ex*, *palam*, *prae*, *pro*, *sine*, *tenus*; e. g.,

<p><i>Ex urbe.</i></p> <p><i>Sine dubio.</i></p>		<p><i>From the city.</i></p> <p><i>Without doubt.</i></p>
--	--	---

[F. B. 680; A. & S. § 241; Z. § 489.]

289. RULE.—*Prepositions with Accusative or Ablative.*

The five prepositions, *clam*, *in*, *sub*, *subter*, and *super*, take sometimes the accusative and sometimes the ablative; e. g.,

<p><i>In exsilium.</i></p> <p><i>In templo.</i></p>		<p><i>Into exile.</i></p> <p><i>In the temple.</i></p>
---	--	--

REM. 1.—*In* and *sub* govern the accusative in answer to *whither* (i. e. after verbs of motion), and the ablative in answer to *where* (i. e. after verbs of rest). *Subter* generally takes the accusative. *Super* takes the accusative after verbs of motion, and also when it signifies upon, and the ablative when it signifies *on* or *of* (as of a subject spoken or written about).

REM. 2.—Prepositions in composition often govern the same case as when they stand alone.

[F. B. 681 and R. 1 & 2; A. & S. § 235, 2, 3, & 4; Z. §§ 320, 404, 489.]



## 290. VOCABULARY.

Ask, seek, <i>peto, ĕre, petivi</i> or <i>petii, petitum</i> .	Metellus, <i>Metellus, i, m.</i>
Country (as opposed to city), <i>rus, ruris, n.</i>	Murderer, <i>interfector, ĕris, m.</i>
Finally, <i>postremo, denique</i> .	My, <i>meus, a, um</i> (masc. voc. sing. <i>mi</i> ).
From, <i>a, ab, de, e</i> or <i>ex</i> , &c.; before names of towns, indicated by the <i>abl</i> .	Order, command, <i>jussu</i> (used only in <i>abl. sing.</i> ).
Go, <i>eo, ire, ivi, itum</i> ; go away or from, <i>abeo, abire, abii, abitum</i> .	Through, <i>per</i> .
Jugurtha, <i>Jugurtha, ae, m.</i>	Walk, v., <i>ambulo, are, avi, atum</i> .
	Whole, <i>totus, a, um</i> (gen. <i>totius</i> , see F. B. 113, R).
	Winter, <i>hiems, hiemis, f.</i>
	Viriathus, <i>Viriathus, i, m.</i>

## 291. EXERCISES.

I. *Translate and analyze, parsing and explaining all attributive expressions.*

1. Viriathus in Lusitania bellum excitavit. 2. Viriathus in Lusitania bellum contra Romanos excitavit. 3. Post urbem conditam Viriathus bellum excitavit. 4. Anno sexcentesimo decimo post urbem conditam Viriathus in Lusitania bellum contra Romanos excitavit. 5. Tum P. Scipio Africanus in Hispaniam missus est. 6. Ante curram triumphantis Marii Jugurtha cum duobus filiis ductus est.

II. 1. *Change the first four of the above sentences to the passive form, and the last two to the active.*

2. *Construct Latin declarative sentences, using the following adverbial expressions:*

In urbe, in horto, in agris, sub hoc rege, in monte Albano, ultra ripam.

3. *Change the sentences, thus constructed, to the interrogative or imperative form.*

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Let us walk through the city. 2. They have gone from the city into the country. 3. My father will remain in the city the whole winter. 4. Who killed Viriathus? 5. The soldiers killed him. 6. The murderers of Viriathus asked a reward from the Roman consul. 7. By whom was Jugurtha conquered? 8. He was finally conquered in many battles by Q. Caecilius Metellus. 9. He was put to death by the order of Marius.

LESSON XXVI.

*Complex Substantive-Predicate.—Modifier ; Objective or Attributive.*

[66—68.]

292. The substantive-predicate may be limited in the various ways already specified for the subject and for nouns generally (see Lessons V. and IX.); e. g.,

Aenēas fuit Anchīsae fili- us.	Aeneas was the son of An- chises.
Numa fuit bonus rex.	Numa was a good king.

293. The copula (*esse* or some passive verb) which belongs to the predicate, may also be modified by a modal adverb (see Lesson XXI.); e. g.,

Tarquinius non fuit bonus rex.	Tarquin was not a good king.
-----------------------------------	---------------------------------

REM.—Here the modal adverb *non* limits *fuit*.

## 294. VOCABULARY.

Acca, <i>Acca</i> , ae, f.	Kind, <i>benignus</i> , a, um.
Asia, <i>Asia</i> , ae, f.	Laurentia, <i>Laurentia</i> , ae, f.
Faustulus, <i>Faustulus</i> , i, m.	Man, <i>homo</i> , <i>hominis</i> ; <i>vir</i> , <i>vir</i> , m.
Hasdrubal, <i>Hasdrubal</i> , <i>alis</i> , m.	Mithridates, <i>Mithridates</i> , is, m.
Invade, <i>invado</i> , <i>ere</i> , <i>invāsi</i> , <i>invāsum</i> .	Pontus, <i>Pontus</i> , i, m.

## 295. EXERCISES.

I. *Translate and analyze, parsing predicates.*

1. Silvius Procas fuit rex. 2. Silvius Procas fuit rex Albanōrum. 3. Hannībal fuit dux. 4. Hannībal fuit Carthaginiensium dux. 5. Latīnus fuit bonus rex. 6. Picentes popūlo Romāno obediērant. 7. Picentes multos annos popūlo Romāno obediērant. 8. Sulla adhuc cum legionibus suis in Italia morabātur. 9. Sulla cum exercītu Romam venit. 10. Tum in Asiam profectus est. 11. Sulla in Asia Mithridātem vicit. 12. Universus reliquus senātus in Graeciam venit.

II. 1. *Construct two or more Latin sentences with substantive-predicates.*

MODEL.

Carthāgo fuit urbs.

2. *Add an attribute to each of these predicates.*

MODEL.

Carthāgo fuit magna urbs.

3. *Construct Latin sentences in answer to the following questions:*

1. Whose son was Aeneas? 2. Whose son was Ascanius? 3. Who was the father of Hannibal? 4. Who was the wife of Faustulus?

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Who was king of Pontus? 2. Was not Mithridates king of Pontus? 3. He was king of Pontus. 4. Hannibal was the brother of Hasdrubal. 5. Is this boy your brother? 6. He is not my brother. 7. Aeneas was the father of Ascanius. 8. Your father is a good man. 9. Balbus is a kind father. 10. Mithridates asked peace of (*from*) the Romans. 11. Who invaded Asia? 12. Mithridates invaded it.

## LESSON XXVII.

*Complex Adjective-Predicate.—Modifier ; Objective or Attributive.*

[69 & 70.]

296. The adjective-predicate may be limited,

I. By Objective Modifiers.

II. By Attributive Modifiers.

297. The objective or completing modifier of the adjective-predicate may be expressed,

1) By the Genitive.

2) By the Dative.

298. RULE.—*Genitive after Adjectives.*

Many adjectives signifying *desire, knowledge, skill, participation, recollection, fulness*, and the like, together with their *contraries*, take the genitive; e. g.,

Cupīdus laudis est. | *He is desirous of praise.*

299. RULE.—*Dative after Adjectives.*

Many adjectives are followed by the dative of the

object to which the quality is directed, or for which it exists; e. g.,

Pax mihi gratissīma erat. | *Peace was very acceptable to me.*

[F. B. 631, 632; A. & S. §§ 213, 222; Z. §§ 409, 436.]

300. The attributive or limiting modifier of the adjective-predicate may be expressed,

- 1) By the Adverb.
- 2) By the Ablative Case.

☞ For the use of adverbs, see Rule, 266.

301. RULE.—*Ablative after Adjectives.*

The ablative is used,

- 1) After the adjectives *dignus*, *indignus*, *contentus*, *praeditus*, *fretus*, and *liber*; e. g.,

Virtus parvo contenta est. | *Virtue is content with little.*

- 2) After any adjective, to denote *cause*, *manner*, or *means*; e. g.,

Aeger avaritiā fuit. | *He was diseased by avarice.*

[F. B. 633, 634; A. & S. §§ 244, 247; Z. §§ 452, 467.]

302. Adjectives in any situation, whether as predicate or attribute, are modified according to the above Rules.

REM.—In a few instances it will be found difficult to distinguish the object from the attribute; in most cases, however, the distinction is sufficiently obvious.

303. The modifiers of the adjective generally precede it, though the *objective* modifier not unfrequently follows it; e. g.,

Haud difficilis.

| *Not difficult.*

Cupidus laudis.

| *Desirous of praise.*

REM. 1.—The *attributive* modifier sometimes follows.

REM. 2.—For the effect of emphasis on position, see 208, R.

304. VOCABULARY.

Already, *jam*.

Apulia, *Apulia, ae, f.*

Capua, *Capua, ae, f.*

Crassus, *Crassus, i, m.*

Desirous, *cupidus, a, um; avidus, a, um.*

Destroy, *diruo, ere, dirui, dirutum.*

Escape, *effugio, ere, effugi, effugitum.*

Gladiator, *gladiator, oris, m.*

Gladiatorial, *gladiatorius, a, um.*

L., *L.* for *Lucius*.

M., *M.* for *Marcus*.

Much, *multus, a, um, or multum with gen.*

Praise, *s., laus, laudis, f.*

Proconsul, *proconsul, ūis, m.*

School, *ludus, i, m.*

Sufficiently, *satis*.

Unworthy, *indignus, a, um.*

Useful, *utilis, e.*

Wealthy, *dives, itis.*

Worthy, *dignus, a, um.*

305. EXERCISES.

I. *Translate and analyze.*

1. Balbus est dives. 2. Balbus est satis dives. 3. Haec loca sunt frumentaria. 4. Haec loca sunt maxime frumentaria. 5. Virtus parvo contenta est. 6. Servus laude dignus est. 7. Puëri laudis cupidi sunt. 8. Pax nobis gratissima est. 9. Nicomēdes testamento populum Romānum fecit herēdem. 10. Adversus Mithridātem ambo consules missi sunt. 11. Anno urbis sexcentesimo septuagesimo octavo novum in Italia bellum commotum est.

II. 1. *Change the first five of the above sentences to the interrogative form.*

2. *Construct two or more Latin sentences with adjective-predicates.*

3. *Add attributives to these predicates.*

4. Construct Latin sentences in answer to the following questions :

1. How many wars did the Romans wage against Carthage? 2. Was Carthage destroyed? 3. If so, by whom? 4. Who waged war against Jugurtha? 5. By whom was he conquered?

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Are you already sufficiently wealthy? 2. We are not sufficiently wealthy. 3. Is he worthy of praise? 4. He is unworthy of much praise. 5. Many are desirous of praise. 6. These books will be useful to you. 7. Where was this gladiatorial school? 8. The school was at Capua. 9. How many gladiators escaped from it? 10. Who conquered them? 11. Where did he conquer them? 12. The proconsul conquered them in Apulia. 13. Who was this proconsul? 14. M. L. Crassus was proconsul.

## LESSON XXVIII.

*Complex Adjective-Predicate.—Modifier ; Complex.*

[71 & 72.]

306. The modifiers of the predicate, whether objective or attributive, may be themselves modified, and may thus become complex ; e. g.,

Servus multa laude dignus est.	<i>The slave is worthy of much praise.</i>
-----------------------------------	--

REM. 1.—Here *laude*, which limits *dignus*, is itself limited by *multa*. *Multa laude* is, therefore, the *complex* modifier.

REM. 2.—We have seen (300) that the attribute may be either an *adverb* or a *noun*. When an *adverb*, it may be limited by ano-

ther adverb; when a *noun*, by an *adjective* or by an *attributive noun*.

307. VOCABULARY.

Armenia, *Armenia*, *ae*, *f*.  
 Beautiful, *pulcher*, *chra*, *chrum*.  
 Cneus, *Cneus*, *i*, *m*.  
 Content, *contentus*, *a*, *um*.  
 End, *finis*, *is*, *m*. & *f*.  
 Honor, *honor*, *ōris*, *m*.  
 Lucullus, *Lucullus*, *i*, *m*.  
 Minor (as "Armenia Minor"),  
*Minor*, *ōris*.

www.libtool.com.cn

Parent, *parens*, *entis*, *m*. & *f*.  
 Pompey, *Pompeius*, *i*, *m*.  
 Put to, *impōno*, *ēre*, *imposui*,  
*impositum*; to put an end  
 to, *finem imponere*.  
 That, *ille*, *a*, *ud*.  
 Their, *suus*, *a*, *um* (referring to  
 subject of prop.). [*or orum*.  
 Tigranocerta, *Tigranocerta*, *ae*,

308. EXERCISES.

I. *Translate and analyze.*

1. Puer his libris indignus est. 2. Balbus domo sua contentus est. 3. Libri nobis omnibus utiles sunt. 4. Caius magno ingenio praeditus est. 5. Intērim L. Lucullus bellum Mithridaticum perscūtus est. 6. Lucullus ipsum regem apud illam civitatem fugavit. 7. Per illa tempōra piratae omnia maria infestabant. 8. Hunc vitae finem habuit Mithridātes. 9. Contra Romānos bellum habuit annis quadraginta.

II. 1. *Change all the complex attributives in the above sentences to simple ones.*

MODEL.

Puer libris indignus est.

2. *In the first four sentences, substitute other complex attributives for those now used.*

MODEL.

Puer patre suo indignus  
 est.

The boy is unworthy of his  
 father.



3. Construct two or more Latin sentences, limiting the subjects by simple, and the predicates by complex modifiers.

www.libtool.com.cn

MODEL

Boni puēri parentibus suis benigni sunt.	Good boys are kind to their parents.
---	---

III. Translate into Latin.

1. They are not kind to their parents. 2. Are not these boys unworthy of their parents? 3. They are unworthy of them. 4. Let them be content with those beautiful books. 5. Let us be worthy of these honors. 6. What city of Armenia was taken by Lucullus? 7. Tigranocerta was taken by him. 8. Did Lucullus put an end to the war? 9. He did not put an end to the Mithridatic war. 10. By whom was Mithridates conquered? 11. He was conquered by Cneus Pompey. 12. Where was this battle? 13. This battle was fought in Armenia Minor.

---

## LESSON XXIX.

*Elements of Sentences ; Recapitulation.*

[73—75.]

309. We have seen that the elements of the simple sentence are,

- I. *Principal Elements ; viz.,*
  - 1) Subject.
  - 2) Predicate.
- II. *Subordinate Elements ; viz.,*
  - 1) Objective Modifiers.
  - 2) Attributive Modifiers.

310. We have also seen that these elements may stand either without limiting words, in which case they are called *simple*, or with them, in which case they are called *complex*.

311. All subordinate elements stand as the modifiers of *substantives* (including pronouns), *adjectives*, *verbs*, and *adverbs*.

### I. MODIFIERS OF SUBSTANTIVES.

312. The *objective* modifiers of substantives must be expressed either by substantives or by adjectives used substantively; e. g.,

Amor gloriæ. | *The love of glory.*

313. The *attributive* modifiers of substantives may be expressed (1) by adjectives and (2) by substantives; e. g.,

Lingua Latīna. | *The Latin language.*  
 Ferrum Graecōrum. | *The sword of the Greeks.*

### II. MODIFIERS OF ADJECTIVES.

314. The *objective* modifiers of adjectives must be expressed by substantives or by adjectives used substantively; e. g.,

Cupīdus laudis. | *Desirous of praise.*

315. The *attributive* modifiers of adjectives may be expressed (1) by adverbs and (2) by substantives; e. g.,

Haud difficīlis. | *Not difficult.*  
 Aeger avaritiā. | *Diseased by avarice.*

### III. MODIFIERS OF VERBS.

316. The *objective* modifiers of verbs must be expressed by substantives or by adjectives used substantively,

and are of three kinds; viz., (1) *direct* objects, (2) *indirect* objects, and (3) *remote* objects; e. g.,

Caius puellam laudat.		<i>Caius praises the girl.</i>
Legibus paret.		<i>He obeys the laws.</i>
Memīni vivōrum.		<i>I remember the living.</i>

317. The *attributive* modifiers of verbs may be expressed (1) by adverbs and (2) by adverbial expressions consisting of oblique cases either with or without prepositions; e. g.,

Miles fortiter pugnat.		<i>The soldier fights bravely.</i>
Hieme ursus dormit.		<i>The bear sleeps in winter.</i>

#### IV. MODIFIERS OF ADVERBS.

318. The *objective* modifiers of adverbs, like those of other words, must be expressed by substantives or by adjectives used substantively; e. g.,

Congruenter naturae.		<i>Agreeably to nature.</i>
----------------------	--	-----------------------------

319. The *attributive* modifiers of adverbs are generally expressed by other adverbs; e. g.,

Satis bene scripsit.		<i>He has written sufficiently well.</i>
----------------------	--	--

320. Prepositions and conjunctions are properly connectives, and neither modify nor are modified, though they are used (the former *always* and the latter *often*) as elements in objective or attributive expressions.

321. Interjections are expressions of emotion, or mere marks of address, and have no grammatical influence upon the rest of the sentence.

322. The name of the person to whom a sentence is addressed is often introduced into it, but forms no part of the sentence itself.

323. RULE.—*Vocative.*

The name of the person or thing addressed is put in the vocative; e. g.,

Quid est, Catilīna? | *Why is this, Catiline?*

[F. B. 617; A. & S. § 240; Z. § 492.]

## ORDER OF ELEMENTS IN THE LATIN SENTENCE.

324. The Latin admits of great variety in the arrangement of the different parts of the sentence, thus affording peculiar facilities both for securing proper emphasis and for imparting to its periods that harmonious flow which characterizes the Latin classics. There are, however, certain general principles, by which we may be guided in determining the best position for the various elements in any sentence, whether with or without emphasis.

## I. POSITION OF PRINCIPAL ELEMENTS.

325. The subject generally occupies the first place in the sentence, and the predicate the last; e. g.,

Tarquinius Superbus cog- | *Tarquin the Proud merited*  
nōmen moribus meruit. | *his surname by his char-*  
| *acter.*

326. The subject may be rendered *emphatic* by being placed at or near the end, and the predicate by being placed at or near the beginning; e. g.,

Commōvit bellum rex Tar- | *King Tarquin excited a*  
quinius. | *war.*

**REM.**—If the predicate consists of a copula and a noun, adjective or participle, the copula sometimes precedes and sometimes follows the attribute.

## II. POSITION OF SUBORDINATE ELEMENTS.

327. All subordinate elements appear as the modifiers of *substantives, adjectives, verbs, or adverbs*, and, in regard to position, may be treated in four divisions.

1. *Position of the Modifiers of Substantives.*

328. The adjective precedes or follows its substantive according as it *is* or *is not* emphatic; e. g.,

<i>Primus annus quinque consulēs habuit.</i>	<i>The first year had five consuls.</i>
--	---

329. The *attributive genitive* usually precedes its substantive when the latter is not emphatic, and the *objective genitive* follows; e. g.,

<i>Aenēae filius regnum accēpit.</i>	<i>The son of Aeneas received the kingdom.</i>
--------------------------------------	--

<i>Amor gloriae nos impūlit.</i>	<i>The love of glory actuated us.</i>
----------------------------------	---------------------------------------

330. When a substantive is limited by both an adjective and an attributive genitive, the order is *adjective—genitive—substantive*; e. g.,

<i>Auream regis corōnam vidit.</i>	<i>He saw the king's golden crown.</i>
------------------------------------	--

2. *Position of the Modifiers of Adjectives.*

331. The modifiers of the adjective generally precede it, though the objective modifier not unfrequently follows it; e. g.,

<i>Satis dives.</i>	<i>Sufficiently wealthy.</i>
---------------------	------------------------------

<i>Avidus laudis.</i>	<i>Desirous of praise.</i>
-----------------------	----------------------------

3. *Position of the Modifiers of Verbs.*

## I. Objects.

332. The object generally precedes the verb; e. g.,

Caius filiam laudat.	Caius is praising his daughter.
----------------------	---------------------------------

333. When two or more objects are used with the verb, the *direct* object seems to prefer the place after the *indirect*, but before the *remote*; e. g.,

Fratrī optiōnem dedit.	He gave the choice to his brother.
------------------------	------------------------------------

Caium furti accūsant.	They accuse Caius of theft.
-----------------------	-----------------------------

## II. Adverbial Attributives.

334. The adverbial attributive generally stands between the object and verb; e. g.,

Tarquinius Superbus cognōmen moribus meruit.	Tarquin the Proud merited his surname by his character.
--	---

REM. 1.—The adverbial attribute, particularly that of *time* and *place*, not unfrequently stands at the beginning of the sentence; e. g., Hinc Aenēas aufūgit, *Aeneas fled from this place.*

REM. 2.—When the adverbial attribute is expressed by a preposition and an oblique case, the preposition (except *tenus* and *versus*) precedes the substantive, and if the latter has an attribute, the preposition often stands between the attribute and substantive; e. g., Hanc ob causam nonnulli in exitium regis conjurāvunt, *For this reason some conspired for the destruction of the king.*

### 4. Position of the Modifiers of Adverbs.

335. The *attributive* modifier generally precedes the adverb, and the *objective* sometimes precedes and sometimes follows it; e. g.,

Satis bene.	Sufficiently well.
Congruenter natūrae.	Agreeably to nature.

REM.—Words are generally rendered emphatic by being placed in an *unusual* position, especially if that position is near the beginning or end of the sentence or clause.

## 336. VOCABULARY.

Catiline, *Catīlina*, *ae*, *m*.

Capital, *caput*, *capitis*, *n*.

Character, *ingenium*, *i*, *n*.

Depraved, *pravus*, *a*, *um*.

Family, *genus*, *genēris*, *n*.

German, *Germānus*, *a*, *um*; the

Germans, *Germāni*, *ōrum*, *m*.

pl.

Himself or him (oblique case referring to subject), *sui*, *sibi*, &c.

Jerusalem, *Hierosolyma*, *ōrum*, *n*. pl., and *Hierosolyma*, *ae*, *f*.

John, *Johannes*, *is*, *m*.

Judea, *Judaea*, *ae*, *f*.

Noble, *nobilis*, *e*.

Surrender, *dedo*, *ere*, *dedidi*, *deditum*.

Tigranes, *Tigrānes*, *is*, *m*.

Very, indicated by *superl.* of *adj.*

With, *cum*; with pers. pron. and generally with relatives, it is appended to its case, as *mecum*, *tecum*, *secum*, &c.

## 337. EXERCISES.

I. *Translate and analyze.*

1. Tigrāni deinde Pompeius bellum intulit. 2. Ille diadēma suum in ejus manibus collocavit. 3. Parte regni eum multavit. 4. Armeniam Minōrem Galatiae regi donavit. 5. Hierosolymam tertio mense cepit. 6. His gestis finem antiquissimo bello imposuit. 7. Ab Antonio Catilina ipse proelio victus est.

II. 1. *Change the first five of the above sentences to the passive form, and make the rest interrogative.*

## MODEL.

Tigrāni deinde a Pompeio bellum illatum est.

2. *Construct two or more Latin sentences illustrative of complex elements.*

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Who surrendered himself to Pompey? 2. John, to whom did Tigranes surrender? 3. He surrendered to Pompey. 4. Father, will you go to Judea with

**ELEMENTS OF SENTENCES.—RECAPITULATION. 151**

me? 5. I will go with you to the capital of Judea.  
6. What city is the capital of Judea? 7. Jerusalem  
is the capital of Judea. 8. Catiline was a man of a  
noble family. 9. Was not Catiline a man of a very  
depraved character? 10. Caesar waged war against  
the Germans. 11. The Germans were conquered by  
Caesar in many battles.



www.libtool.com.cn

## CHAPTER II.

### COMPLEX SENTENCES.

#### § 1.—*Complex Sentences; Unabridged.*

#### LESSON XXX.

##### *Sentence as Subject.*

[76—78.]

338. ENTIRE sentences are often used as elements in the formation of other sentences.

339. Sentences thus formed are called *complex*. (See 164.)

340. A sentence thus used as an *element* may be introduced,

- 1) Without any changes of form or structure, as in *direct* quotation; e. g.,

(*Simple Sentence.*)

Caius est beātus. | *Caius is happy.*

(*Complex—Direct Quotation.*)

Dicunt, "*Caius est beātus.*" | *They say, "Caius is happy."*

- 2) With certain changes to adapt it to the subordinate rank which it is to occupy in its new position, as in *indirect* quotation; e. g.,

Dicunt *Caium esse beātum.* | *They say that Caius is happy.*

REM.—It will be observed that the subordinate sentence in the above example, in the Latin, takes its subject and its predicate-adjective in the accusative, and its copula in the infinitive, but in the English assumes the connective *that*, and remains in other respects unchanged. Sometimes in Latin also the rank of the subordinate sentence is indicated by merely assuming a connective, and sometimes by both assuming a connective and changing its own form; e. g., *Iter faciēbam, quum Balbum vidēbam, I was making a journey, when I saw Balbus.*—*Quae quum ita sint, egredere ex urbe, Since these things are so, go forth from the city.* Here it must be observed that, in the first example, the sentence, "*Balbum vidēbam,*" is united without change to the principal sentence by the connective *quum*, and thus is rendered subordinate to it as in the English; while in the second, the sentence, "*Quae ita sunt*" (these things are so), not only assumes the connective *quum*, but also changes its copula *sunt* to *sint*, thus becoming "*Quae quum ita sint.*"

841. A complex sentence may take an entire sentence in place of any one of its elements; i. e.,

- 1) As Subject.
- 2) As Predicate.
- 3) As Object.
- 4) As Attribute.

*Sentence as Subject.*

842. Any sentence, whether declarative, interrogative, or imperative, may be used in direct quotation as subject; e. g.,

<p>"<i>Terra est rotunda,</i>" est sententia.</p>	<p>"The earth is round," is a sentence.</p>
<p>"<i>Quid casurum est?</i>" est quaestio.</p>	<p>"What will happen?" is the question.</p>
<p>"<i>Nemo in urbe sepelitor,</i>" erat lex.</p>	<p>"Let no one be buried in the city," was the law.</p>

843. Any sentence, whether declarative, interroga-

tive, or imperative, may be introduced as the subject of another sentence without being directly quoted; it then undergoes certain changes to adapt it to the place it is to hold in the new sentence.

I. *Changes in Declarative Sentences as Subject.*

344. Declarative sentences used as subject, except in direct quotation (see 340, 1) change their own subjects to the accusative, their predicates to the infinitive, and any predicate-adjectives or nouns to the accusative; e. g.,

Terra est rotunda.	The earth is round.
Terram esse rotundam certum est.	That the earth is round, is certain.

REM.—Here the decl. sentence, *Terra est rotunda*, is used as subject; accordingly its own subject (*terra*) is changed to the accus. (*terram*), and its predicate (*est rotunda*) to the infinitive (*esse*) and the accusative (*rotundam*).

345. RULE.—*Infinitive as Subject.*

The infinitive mood, either alone or with other words connected with it, may be used as the subject of a verb.

[F. B. 608; A. & S. § 269; Z § 597.]

346. RULE.—*Subject of Infinitive.*

The subject of the infinitive is put in the accusative (as *terram* in the above example).

[F. B. 655; A. & S. § 239; Z § 599.]

347. With a few verbs we find *quod* with the *indicative* as the real subject; e. g.,

Accessit etiam quod pars equitatus se trans Rhenum recep̄rat.	An additional reason was that a part of the cavalry had crossed the Rhine.
---	--

348. Instead of an infinitive sentence as subject, we

find *ut* with the *subjunctive* with *restat, sequitur, reliquum est, primum est, proximum est*, and the like; e. g.,

Sequitur, ut haec enunciatio falsa sit. | *It follows that this statement is false.*

Restat ut omnia doceam. | *It remains that I should teach all things.*

Mos est hominum, ut nolint eundem pluribus excellere. | *It is a custom of men, that they are unwilling that the same one should excel in many things.*

REM. 1.—In each of these examples, the clause beginning with *ut* is plainly the *real* subject, and the preceding part, as *sequitur, restat, mos est, &c.*, the predicate. Thus, in the first example, we may ask, *what follows (sequitur)*: plainly *that this statement is false* (*ut haec enunciatio falsa sit*).

REM. 2.—After *non dubium est* and the like, we sometimes find *quin* with the *subjunctive*; e. g., *Non dubium est quin turpe sit, There is no doubt but that it is disgraceful*. Here the clause, *quin turpe sit*, seems at first to be the subject, but if we observe closely the force of *quin* as compounded of *qui* (the old abl. of *qui*), by which, and *ne*, not, the sentence may be explained thus, *non est dubium, there is no doubt, quin turpe sit, by which* (i. e. in accordance with which) *this is not disgraceful*. Thus explained it assumes the nature of a relative clause.

## II. Changes in Interrogative Sentences as Subject.

349. Interrogative sentences used as subject, except in direct quotation, change their predicates to the *subjunctive* mood; e. g.,

Quid casūrum est? | *What will happen?*  
 Quid casūrum sit incertum est. | *It is uncertain what will happen.*

## III. Changes in Imperative Sentences as Subject.

350. Imperative sentences used as subject, except in

direct quotation, change their predicates to the *subjunctive* mood (if not already in that mood) with *ut* or *ne*; e. g.,

In urbe mane.

Ut in urbe maneat, praescribētur.

Remain in the city.

That you remain in the city will be enjoined.

351. The general rule for the position of subject and predicate is the same in *complex* as in *simple* sentences (325, 326), with this qualification, that the subject-sentence usually follows the predicates mentioned in articles 347, 348, and a few others.

### 352. VOCABULARY.

Caius, *Caius*, *i*, *m*.

Certain, sure, *certus*, *a*, *um*.

Dictator, *dictator*, *oris*, *m*.

It is ordered, the order is given, *praescribitur*.

It is usual, *solet*.

It is well known, is an admitted fact, *constat*.

Near, *apud*.

Pharsalia, *Pharsalia*, *ae*, *f*.

Pharsalus, *Pharsalus*, *i*, *f*.

Uncertain, *incertus*, *a*, *um*.

### 353. EXERCISES.

#### I. Translate and analyze.

1. Constat solem cuncta luce sua illustrāre. 2. Certum est solem urbem sua luce illustrāre. 3. Certum est Caium leges violavisse. 4. Quid Caium fecisse incertum est. 5. Puēros oportet diligentes esse. 6. Praescriptum erat, ut Caius in urbe manēret. 7. Circa eādē tempōra M. L. Crassus contra Parthos missus est. 8. Reliquiae exercitus per quaestōrem servātae sunt. 9. Propter hanc injuriam ab Arimīno infesto exercitu Romam contendit.

II. 1. *Restore the subordinate sentences, used as subject in the above exercises, to the rank of independent sentences.*

## MODELS.

1. Sol cuncta luce sua illustrat.

6. Caius in urbe maneat.

2. *Construct two or more Latin sentences with subordinate clauses as subjects.*

3. *Construct Latin sentences in answer to the following questions :*

1. Who was Mithridates? 2. Who was Tigranes?  
 3. Who conquered Mithridates? 4. Who conquered Tigranes?  
 5. What Roman made himself dictator?  
 6. Is it certain that Caesar made himself dictator? 7. Where was Pompey conquered?

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Caius is worthy of much praise. 2. It is well known that Caius is worthy of much praise. 3. Who conquered the king? 4. It is uncertain who conquered the king. 5. Caesar conquered Pompey near Pharsalia. 6. It is well known that Caesar conquered Pompey near Pharsalia. 7. Let the boys remain in the city. 8. The order has been given that the boys shall remain in the city.

## LESSON XXXI.

*Sentence as Predicate.*

[79 &amp; 80.]

354. Any sentence, whether declarative, interrogative, or imperative, may be used in direct quotation as predicate; e. g.,

Sententia fuit, "Terra est rotunda."	The sentence was, "The earth is round."
Quaestio est, "Quid casurum est?"	The question is, "What will happen?"
Lex fuit, "Nemo in urbe sepelitor."	The law was, "Let no one be buried in the city."

355. Any sentence may be used as the predicate of another sentence without being directly quoted; it then undergoes certain changes to adapt it to the place which it is to hold in the new sentence.

#### I. Changes in Declarative Sentences as Predicate.

356. Declarative sentences used as predicate, except, of course, direct quotation, generally change the subject to the accusative, the verb-predicate to the infinitive, and any predicate noun or adjective to the accusative. This change, it will be observed, is the same as that of Subject-Sentences; e. g.,

Exitus fuit orationis, sibi nullam cum his amicitiam esse.	The conclusion of the oration was, that he had no friendship with them.
--	---

357. Sometimes the predicate-sentence takes *ut* or *ne* with the *subjunctive*; e. g.,

Consilium fuit, ut regem occideret.	The design was to kill the king.
-------------------------------------	----------------------------------

REM.—This is usually the case when the idea of *purpose* is at all prominent in the sentence.

358. Sometimes the predicate-sentence takes *quod* with the *indicative*; e. g.,

Justissima causa fuit, quod Germāni timuerunt.	The truest reason was that the Germans feared.
--	--

II. *Changes in Interrogative Sentences as Predicate.*

359. Interrogative sentences used as predicate, except in direct quotation, take their own predicates in the subjunctive mood; e. g.,

Quaestio erat, num terra rotunda esset.	The question was, whether the earth is round.
--	--

III. *Changes in Imperative Sentences as Predicate.*

360. Imperative sentences used as predicate, except in direct quotation, change their own predicates to the subjunctive mood (*if not already in that mood*) with *ut* or *ne*; e. g.;

Praescriptum fuit, ut in urbe maneret.	The order was that he should remain in the city.
---	---

## 361. VOCABULARY.

Assassinator, *percussor, ōris*, m.

Design, *consilium, i*, n.

Favor, v., *faueo, ĕre, favi, fau-  
tum*.

Question, *quaestio, ōnis*, f.

Report, *fama, ae*, f.

Return, v., *redeo, ĭre, redi, re-  
ditum*.

Violate, break, *violo, āre, āvi,  
ātum*.

Whether (in dependent ques-  
tions), *ne, num, nonne*; *num*  
is more common than in di-  
rect questions, and here does  
not necessarily expect the  
answer *no*. (See 177, R. 2.)

Your (in reference to one per-  
son), *tuus, a, um*; (in refer-  
ence to more than one) *ves-  
ter, tra, trum*.

## 362. EXERCISES.

I. *Translate and analyze.*

- |   |           |
|---|-----------|
| 1. Fama est, Caium urbem condidisse.          | 2. Fama   |
| fuit, Caesarem ad Alexandriam venisse.        | 3. Oratio |
| fuit, Caesarem regnum Cleopatrae dedisse.     | 4. Haec   |
| fuit oratio, Romanos Germanis bellum inferre. | 5. Haec   |



erat oratio, Germānos popūlo Romāno bellum intulisse. 6. Consilium fuit, ut Caesārem occidēret. 7. Quaestio fuit, num Caesar occisus esset. 8. Lex pacis fuit; ut Antiōchus sumptum omnem belli Romānis restituēret. 9. Lex pacis fuit, ut rex naves universas tradēret.

II. 1. *Change the subordinate predicate-clauses in the above exercises to distinct independent sentences.*

MODEL.

Caius urbem condidit.

2. *Construct two or more Latin sentences with subordinate clauses as predicates.*

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The report is, that your father is in the city. 2. The report was, that Caesār had returned to the city. 3. The report is, that he returned to Rome. 4. The report is, that the citizens are violating the laws. 5. The design was to kill (*that he should kill*) his father. 6. The question is, whether he will kill his father. 7. The question is, whether the senate favored the assassins of Caesar.

---

LESSON XXXII.

*Sentence as Modifier of Subject or other Noun.*

[81 & 82.]

363. A sentence may be used as modifier of the subject of another sentence, or of some other noun in that sentence; e. g.,

Ad cetēras utilitatēs haec quoque opportunitas adiungitur, ut habeat exercitum.

*To the other qualifications this advantage also is added, that he has an army.*

Poëtae, qui res Romānas scribunt, solent praeter- ire nostras calamitatēs.		<i>The poets, who write Ro-          man history, are accus-          tomed to pass over our          misfortunes.</i>
Audīvit famam, Caium re- gem occidisse.		<i>He heard a report, that Cai-          us had killed the king.</i>

REM. 1.—The subordinate clause, in each of the first two of the above examples, modifies the subject, that in the first showing *what* poets, viz., *those who write Roman history*, and that in the second *what* advantage, viz., *that he has an army*. The subordinate clause in the third example modifies the object, and shows *what* report, viz., *that Caius had killed the king*.

REM. 2.—The last example may be regarded as a form abridged from the relative clause, the relative and copula being omitted. Filled out, it might stand thus: *Audīvit famam (quae fuit), Caium regem occidisse*. Abridged Complex Sentences will be noticed in another place. (See Lesson XLIII.)

364. The same general principles apply to the changes of sentences in these cases as in subject and predicate clauses, with the exception of relative sentences, which are very numerous.

365. Most declarative sentences, introduced to express the attribute of a substantive, are changed to relative clauses, and introduced by relative pronouns which always denote the same persons or things as the nouns which they limit; e. g.,

Aenēas fuit Anchīsae fili- us.		<i>Aeneas was the son of An-          chises.</i>
Aenēas urbem condīdit.		<i>Aeneas founded the city.</i>
Aenēas, qui urbem condī- dit, fuit Anchīsae filius.		<i>Aeneas, who founded the          city, was the son of An-          chises.</i>

Aenēas, qui fuit Anchīsae filius, urbem condidit.		Aeneas, who was the son of Anchises, founded the city.
--	--	--

REM.—It will be observed that the first and second of the above examples are simple sentences; that in the third, the second is made subordinate to the first by representing the subject *Aeneas* by the relative *qui*; and that in the fourth, the first is made subordinate to the second in the same way.

### 366. RULE.—*Relative Pronoun.*

The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in *gender* and *number*. (See examples above.)

[F. B. 625; A. & S. § 206.]

367. The predicate of a relative clause is sometimes in the *indicative* mood, and sometimes in the *subjunctive*. It may be observed, however, that the subjunctive is used,

1) To express *purpose*, *result*, or *reason*; e. g.,

Legātos misērunt qui dicē- rent.		<i>They sent ambassadors to say (lit. who might say).</i>
Neque enim tu is es qui nescias.		<i>Nor indeed are you such an one as not to know (who may not know).</i>

2) To define or explain an indefinite antecedent, either affirmative or negative; e. g.,

Sunt qui putent.		<i>There are (some) who think.</i>
Nemo est qui haud intelli- gat.		<i>There is no one who does not understand.</i>

REM. 1.—After negative expressions, we sometimes find *quin* with the *subjunctive* instead of the relative clause; e. g., *Nemo est quin intelligat, &c., There is no one who does not understand, &c.*

REM. 2.—It should be observed that the relative clause not only serves as attributive to the subject, but sometimes also expresses

the relation of *purpose, result, reason, &c.* to the predicate, as in the above examples.

368. The common position for the relative clause in Latin is directly after the antecedent, though one or two words are not unfrequently allowed to intervene. (See examples, 365, 367.)

REM.—The same principle also applies to the position of any subordinate sentence used as modifier of a substantive or pronoun.

369. Instead of antecedent and relative, we sometimes find correlatives, as they are called, such as *tot—quot*; *talis—qualis*; *tantus—quantus*, &c.; e. g.,

*Quanta vi civitatēs libertātem expētunt, tantā regna reges defendunt.*

*With whatever violence states seek liberty, with so great kings defend their kingdoms.*

370. A relative adverb is sometimes used in place of the relative pronoun; e. g.,

*Germāni Rhenum transiērunt non longe a mari, quo (= in quod) Rhenus influit.*

*The Germans crossed the Rhine not far from the sea into which the Rhine flows.*

### 371. VOCABULARY.

Condition, terms, *conditio, ōnis, f.*

Hold as one's own, obtain, *ob-tineo, ēre, obtinui, obtentum.*

In, *in* (with abl.).

Mountain, mount, *mons, tis, m.*

On, *in* (with abl.).

Part, portion, *pars, tis, f.*

Pyrrhus, *Pyrrhus, i, m.*

Second, *secundus, a, um.*

Send, *mitto, ěre, misi, missum.*

Take, occupy, *occūpo, āre, āvi, ātum.*

That (followed by a rel. clause explaining it), *is, ea, id.*

Undertake, *suscipio, ěre, suscēpi, susceptum.*

With, *sometimes indicated by abl.*

## 372. EXERCISES.

I. *Translate and analyze.*

1. Caesar Octaviānus contra eos pugnāvit. 2. Caesar Octaviānus postea Augustus est appellātus. 3. Caesar Octaviānus, qui postea Augustus est appellātus, contra eos pugnāvit. 4. Caesar Octaviānus, qui contra eos pugnāvit, postea Augustus est appellātus. 5. Ingens fuit Romae timor, ne itērum Galli urbem occupārent. 6. Ei successit Marius, qui bello termīnum posuit. 7. Ei successit Marius, qui ipsum Jugurtham cepit. 8. Sulla, qui in Italia morabātur, adversarios interfēcit. 9. Decemvīri creāti sunt, qui civitāti leges scribērent.

II. 1. *In the sixth, seventh, and eighth of the above sentences, change the relative clauses to independent sentences.*

## MODEL.

Marius bello termīnum posuit.

2. *In the same sentences, change the places of the two parts, converting the relative clauses into principal sentences with the other parts subordinate to them.*

## MODEL.

Marius, qui ei successit, bello termīnum posuit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Ascanius was the son of Aeneas. 2. Ascanius founded a city on mount Albanus. 3. Ascanius, who was the son of Aeneas, founded a city on mount Albanus. 4. Ascanius, who founded a city on mount Albanus, was the son of Aeneas. 5. In the second battle, Brutus, who had undertaken the war, was killed. 6. Pyrrhus sent an ambassador to ask (*seek*) peace. 7. The ambassador asked peace with the condition that

Pyrrhus should (364) hold a portion of Italy. 8. The condition was that Pyrrhus should hold that part of Italy which he had taken by his arms.

---

### LESSON XXXIII.

*Accusative with Infinitive, or Sentence with Quòd as Object.*

[83—85.]

373. A sentence, whether declarative, interrogative, or imperative, may be used, in direct quotation, as the object of the predicate of a new sentence. It is then introduced without change; e. g.,

Dixit, "Caius est beātus."		He said, "Caius is happy."
Dixit, "Quis est beātus?"		He said, "Who is happy?"
Dixit, "Sit beātus."		He said, "May he be happy."

374. Declarative sentences, when used as object of predicate, after verbs of *declaring*, *perceiving*, and the like (*verba declarandi et sentiendi*), except in direct quotation, change their *subjects* to the *accusative*, and their *predicates* to the *infinitive*; e. g.,

Dicit Caium esse beātum. | He says that Caius is happy.

375. After a few verbs, particularly those of *adding*, *omitting*, *passing over*, and the like, declarative sentences used as *object* are often introduced by *quòd*; e. g.,

Praetereo, quod Sassia eam sibi domum delēgit.		I pass over (the fact), that Sassia chose this house for herself.
---	--	---

376. In the arrangement of the different parts of complex sentences,

- 1) The general principle is, that the subordinate clauses dependent upon the predicate should be inserted between the different portions of the leading sentence; e. g.,

Romūlus, *ut civium numē-  
rum augēret*, *asylum pa-  
tefēcit.*

*Romulus*, that he might  
increase the number of  
citizens, *opened an asy-  
lum.*

- 2) It must be observed, however, that the subordinate clauses sometimes precede and sometimes follow the leading sentence, instead of being inserted within it; e. g.,

*Haec dum nostri colligunt*,  
*rex ipse effūgit.*

While our men collect  
these, *the king himself  
escapes.*

### 377. VOCABULARY.

Caligula, *Caligūla*, *ae*, m.  
Eye, *ocūlus*, *i*, m.  
Happy, *beātus*, *a*, *um*.  
Livia, *Livia*, *ae*, f.  
Mother, *mater*, *matris*, f.  
Nero, *Nero*, *ōnis*, m.  
Palace, *palatium*, *i*, n.

Say, *dico*, *ēre*, *dixi*, *dictum*.  
Think, *puto*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*.  
Third, *tertius*, *a*, *um*.  
Turn, turn to, *converto*, *ēre*,  
*converti*, *conversum*.  
Upon, towards, *in* (with *ac-  
cus.*).

### 378. EXERCISES.

#### II. *Translate and analyze, explaining objects.*

1. Tanāquil dixit regem grave vulnus accepisse. 2. Romūlum a senatorībus interfectum esse existimavērunt. 3. Q. M. Scaevōla ait, trecentos alios juvēnes in eum conjurāsse. 4. Cupio me esse clementem. 5. Tenet fama, venēnum Claudio ab conjūge datum. 6.

Video in me omnium vestrum oculos esse conversos.  
 7. Principia ejus imperii moderata sunt Germanici  
 Caesaris metu. [www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

II. 1. *In each of the above sentences, develop the object (if there is one) into an independent sentence.*

MODEL.

Rex grave vulnus accēpit.

2. *Change the indirect to direct quotation.*

MODEL.

Tanquillus dixit, "*Rex grave vulnus accēpit.*"

3. *Construct Latin sentences, using the following objects in indirect quotation :*

1. Nero fuit gener Augusti. 2. Nepotes suos fame necavit. 3. Claudius Britanniam subegit. 4. Claudius annos imperavit quatuordēcim.

III. *Translate into Latin, using both direct and indirect quotation.*

1. Who was the mother of T. Nero? 2. They say that Livia was the mother of Nero. 3. How long did Caligula reign? 4. They say that he reigned three years. 5. Where was Caligula killed? 6. The report is that he was killed in his palace in the third year of his reign. 7. They said that all eyes were turned upon them (*se, vid. 336*). 8. Were not all eyes turned upon you? 9. We saw that all eyes were turned upon us. 10. Do you think that Nero was happy? 11. We do not think that he was happy.



## LESSON XXXIV.

www.libtool.com.cn

*Dependent Question as Object.*

[86—91.]

379. An interrogative sentence may be used as the object of the predicate ; and then, except in direct quotation, it takes its verb in the subjunctive ; e. g.,

Quid dixit ?

| *What did he say ?*

Nescio quid dixērit.

| *I do not know what he said.*

REM.—The tense of the subjunctive to be used in any case may be determined by the following

380. RULE.—*Subjunctive Tenses in Dependent Sentences.*

- 1) When dependent upon a *present* tense (*pres.*, *perf. def.*, or *fut.*), the subjunctive is put in the *present* tense to denote an incomplete action, and in the *perfect* to denote a completed action.
- 2) When dependent upon a *past* tense (*imperf.*, *perf. indef.*, or *pluperf.*), it is put in the *imperfect* to denote incomplete action, and in the *pluperfect* to denote completed action ; e. g.,

Nescio quid dicat.

| *I know not what he says.*

Nescio quid dixērit.

| *I know not what he said.*

Nescīvi quid dicēret.

| *I knew not what he said.*

Nescīvi quid dixisset.

| *I knew not what he had said.*

REM.—The present tense is sometimes used in narration for the perfect indef., and may then be followed by the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive.

## 381. VOCABULARY.

Cremona, *Cremōna*, ae, f.  
 Die, *morior*, *mori* or *moriri*,  
*mortuus sum* ; *demorior*, &c.  
 Famous, *clarus*, a, um.  
 Galba, *Galba*, ae, m.  
 Know, *scio*, *ire*, *scivi*, *scitum* ;  
 not to know, *nescio*, *ire*, *nescivi*, *nescitum*.  
 Misenum, *Misēnum*, i, n.  
 Near, *ad*, *apud*.  
 Otho, *Otho*, *ōnis*, m.  
 Palestine, *Palaestina*, ae, f.

Vespasian, *Vespasiānus*, i, m.  
 Vitellius, *Vitellius*, i, m.  
 Voluptuousness, pleasures, *deliciae*, *ārum*, f. pl.  
 Wear out, overcome, *conficio*,  
*ēre*, *confēci*, *confectum*.  
 Whether (in dependent questions), *num*, *ne*, *nonne* ; *num* is more common than in direct questions, and does not here necessarily expect the answer *no*. (See 177, R. 2.)

## 382. EXERCISES.

I. *Translate and analyze.*

1. Unde sol ignem habet? 2. Nescio unde sol ignem habeat. 3. Quid dicit? 4. Nescimus quid dicat. 5. Quis scivit quid dixisset? 6. Quid futurum sit, nescimus. 7. Quid vere nobis prosit, non semper intelligimus. 8. Interrogavit num terra rotunda esset. 9. Nero magnam urbis partem per ludum incendit. 10. Culpam in Christiānos transtulit. 11. Otho a Vitellio, qui a Germanicis legionibus imperium acceperat, ad Cremōnam levi proelio victus est.

II. 1. *Change the declarative sentences in the above exercises to the interrogative form.*

## MODEL.

Num nescio unde sol ignem habeat?

2. *Construct complex Latin sentences, using the ninth and tenth of the above exercises as objects.*

3. *Construct Latin sentences in answer to the following questions :*

1. Who was the mother of Nero? 2. What became of her? 3. What became of Nero? 4. Who was conquered by Vitellius? 5. Where was he conquered? 6. Who succeeded Vitellius?

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Where is your father? 2. I do not know where he is. 3. They say he is in the city. 4. Will he go to Rome? 5. We do not know whether he will go to Rome. 6. My brother says that he has gone to Rome. 7. Who succeeded Nero? 8. Do you know who succeeded him? 9. We know that Galba succeeded him. 10. Which was the most famous city of Palestine? 11. Who does not know which was the most famous city of Palestine? 12. All say that Jerusalem was the most noble city of Palestine.

---

LESSON XXXV.

*Sentence with ut or ne as Object.—Indirect Object.*

[92—94.]

383. An imperative sentence used as object, except in direct quotation, is generally introduced by *ut* or *ne*, and takes its verb in the subjunctive; e. g.,

Clypeos hastis percutite.

*Strike your shields with your spears.*

Militibus imperavit, ut clypeos hastis percuterent.

*He commanded the soldiers to strike their shields with their spears.*

**REM.**—As an exception to the above principle, it must be observed that *jubeo* usually takes the accusative with the infinitive as the

object-clause; e. g., *Eos suum adventum expectare iussit, He ordered them to await his arrival.*

384. After verbs signifying to *ask, advise, seek,* and the like, the object-sentence usually takes the subjunctive with *ut* or *ne*; e. g.,

*Fac ut sciam.*

*Cause me to know.*

*Illā petiit, ut sibi annūlos aureos darent.*

*She asked that they would give her gold rings.*

**RM.**—In these examples the clauses beginning with *ut* are the objects of the transitive verbs *fac* and *petiit*.

*Final Sentences ; Indirect Object.*

385. Final sentences, or such as express *purpose*, are introduced by *ut, ne, quo, quomīnus,* and *quin*, and take the verb in the subjunctive. These correspond to the indirect object in the simple sentence.

386. Clauses expressing an affirmative purpose are introduced by *ut*, unless a comparative occurs in the sentence, in which case *quo* is used; e. g.,

*Venit ut portas claudat.*

*He has come to shut the gates.*

*Mēdico aliquid dandum est, quo sit studiosior.*

*Something ought to be given to the physician that he may be more attentive.*

387. Clauses expressing a negative purpose are generally introduced by *ne*; e. g.,

*Romūlus, ne vana urbis magnitūdo esset, asyllum apērit.*

*Romulus, that the large city might not be empty, opened an asyllum.*

388. *Quomīnus (quo and minus)* is used after verbs of *hindering*; e. g.,

Quid obstat, *quom̄inus Caius sit beātus?*

What prevents Caius from being happy? (Lit. by which [in order that] he may be less happy.)

389. *Quin* (*qūi* and *ne*), *how not, why not, by which not, &c.* is used after some verbs of *doubting* and *hindering* in negative sentences or questions implying a negative, and after *facere non possum, fieri non potest, &c.*; e. g.,

Non dubitant, *quin dii illud exaudiant.*

They do not doubt (but) that the gods hear this.

acere non possum, *quin ad te mittam literas.*

I cannot but send letters to you.

REM. 1.—The clause in the first example appears to be the *direct* object of *dubitant*; it is such, however, only in appearance, and may be explained thus: *They entertain no doubt* (by which, in accordance with which, &c.), to the effect that, *the gods do not hear.*

REM. 2.—Relative clauses are sometimes used to express *purpose* (see Lesson XXXII.), e. g., *Legatos miserunt qui dicent, They sent ambassadors to say.*

### 390. VOCABULARY.

Burning, *incendium, i, n.*

Cause (*with infin. or that*), *efficio*, followed by *ut* or *ne* with *subj.*; *efficio, ere, effeci, effectum.*

Citadel, *arx, arcis, f.*

Do, make, *facio, ere, feci, factum.*

Friend, *amicus, i, m.*

In order (*with infin. or that*), *ut* (*with subj.*).

Inquire, *interrogo, are, avi, atum.*

Lose, waste, *perdo, ere, perdidit, perditum.*

Represent, *repraesento, are, avi, atum.*

Set on fire, set fire to, *incendo, ere, incendi, incensum.*

Tell, say, *dico, ere, dixi, dictum.*

Titus, *Titus, i, m.*

Troy, *Troja, ae, f.*

## 391. EXERCISES.

I. *Translate and analyze.*

1. Tarpeiam rogābant, ut viam in arcem monstrāret.  
 2. Virgīni permisērunt, ut munus sibi poscēret. 3. Illa petiit, ut sibi armillas aureas darent. 4. Hannībal Romānis obtūlit, ut captīvos redimērent. 5. Octaviānus extorsit, ut sibi consulātus darētur. 6. Nero magnam urbis partem per ludum incendit, ut Trojae repraesentāret incendium. 7. Romūlus, ut civium numērum augēret, asyllum patefēcit. 8. Regūlus Romānis suasit, ne pacem cum Carthaginiensībus facerent. 9. Omnes occidendi sunt, ut Romanōrum vires frangantur. 10. Quid obstat, quomīnus beāti simus. 11. Sapiens nunquam dubitābit, quin immortalis sit animus. 12. Domitiānus se deum primus appellāri jussit. 13. Titus fuit vir omnium virtūtum genēre mirabilis. 14. Negāvit quemquam oportēre tristem a princīpe discedere.

II. 1. *In the first five of the above exercises, change the object-clauses to independent sentences, presenting them successively in the declarative, interrogative, and imperative forms.*

## MODEL.

Tarpeia viam in arcem monstrāvit.

Nonne Tarpeia viam in arcem monstrāvit?

Tarpeia viam in arcem monstret.

2. *Substitute dicunt for the predicate in the first five of the above sentences, adapting the object-clause to this change.*

## MODEL.

Dicunt Tarpeiam viam in arcem monstrāvisse.

3. *Construct three Latin sentences with object-clauses—*

C  
G  
M  
My.

2.

I.

1.

Virg  
runt.  
tri op  
7. C  
phos  
Cami

II.

*passi*

2.

*rect a*

3.

*form.*

III

1.

three  
broth  
moth  
was  
leri  
10.  
que  
city

Ubi tyrannus est, ibi nulla est respublica.	Where a tyrant is, there is no republic.
--	---

REM. 1.—The learner will observe that the assertion is, that *there is no republic* (where!) *where there is a tyrant*. The clause beginning with *ubi* is therefore in effect an *adverb of place*.

REM. 2.—For position of subordinate clause, see 376.

394. Instead of a correlative adverb in the principal sentence, we often find an adverbial expression of place; e. g.,

Latobrigos in fines suos, unde erant profecti, re- verti jussit.	He ordered the Latobrigi to return to their territories, whence they had come.
--	--

REM.—The subordinate clause in this sentence subserves a twofold purpose. With respect to *fines*, it sustains the relation of relative clause (see 370), and thus has the force of an *adjective attributive*; but with respect to the action expressed by the principal sentence, it denotes the *adverbial attribute* of place. In like manner, as already mentioned (367, R. 2), the relative clause not only serves as *attributive* to some noun, but sometimes also expresses the relation of *purpose, result, reason, &c.* to the predicate.

### 395. VOCABULARY.

Amphictyon, <i>Amphictyon, ōnis</i> , m.	Live, dwell, <i>habito, āre, āvi, d-</i> <i>tum</i> .
Athens, <i>Athēnæ, ārum</i> , f. pl.	Name, <i>nomen, nomīnis</i> , n.
Atthis, <i>Atthis, idis</i> , f.	Now, <i>nunc</i> .
Cæcrops, <i>Cæcrops, ēpis</i> , m.	Stay, abide, remain, <i>maneo, ēre,</i> <i>mansi, mansum</i> .
Country, region, <i>regio, ōnis</i> , f.	Thessalus, <i>Thessālus, ī</i> , m.
Cranaus, <i>Crandus, ī</i> , m.	Thessaly, <i>Thessalia, æ</i> , f.
Fifty, <i>quingaginta</i> , indecl.	Where, <i>ubi</i> , generally with the correlative <i>ibi</i> in the princi- pal clause.
Force of arms, <i>arma, ōrum</i> , n. pl.	
Grandfather, <i>avus, ī</i> , m.	



## 396. EXERCISES.

I. *Translate and analyze.*

1. Ubi nulla est respublica? 2. Ubi tyrannus est, ibi nulla est respublica. 3. Te redigam eodem, unde ortus es. 4. Ubi tyrannus est, ibi dicendum est plane nullam esse rempublicam. 5. Incolēbant eos locos, ubi hodie est haec urbs. 6. Hic, ubi opus est, non verentur. 7. Ubi nihil opus est, ibi verentur. 8. Romūlus cum hoste pugnam conseruit in eo loco, ubi nunc forum Romānum est. 9. Amphictyon regnāvit, qui primus Minervae urbem sacrāvit. 10. Hujus temporibus aquarum illuvies majōrem partem populōrum Graeciae absumpsit.

II. *Construct Latin sentences, using the following clauses as adverbial attributives of place :*

1. Ubi opus est. 2. Ubi nihil opus est. 3. Ubi haec urbs est. 4. Ubi es. 5. Unde venistis.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Where is your brother? 2. He is staying where his grandfather has lived fifty years. 3. Shall you go to the city where he is? 4. I shall remain where I now am. 5. Where (there) are good laws, the citizens are happy. 6. Where did Amphictyon reign? 7. He reigned where Athens now is. 8. Who gave the name to Athens? 9. Atthis gave it a name. 10. Who was Atthis? 11. She was the daughter of Craenus who succeeded Cecrops. 12. What country (region) did Thessalus take by force of arms? 13. The country which he took was called from his name Thessaly.

## LESSON XXXVII

*Adverbial Attributive-Sentences.—Time.*

[98—100.]

397. Sentences used to denote the adverbial attribute of time are generally introduced by adverbs of time, as *quum*, when; *dum*, until, &c.; e. g.,

<p>Haec <i>dum</i> nostri colligunt, rex ipse e manibus effū- git.</p>	<p><i>While our soldiers are col- lecting these things, the king himself escapes from their hands.</i></p>
--	--

REM.—It will be observed that the assertion in this sentence is contained in the part (*rex ipse, &c.*) *the king himself escapes from their hands*, and that the rest of it merely states the *time* of this action; viz., *while our soldiers are collecting these things*.

398. Sometimes the adverb which introduces the temporal clause has a correlative in the principal clause; e. g.,

<p>Fructus omnis praestan- tiae <i>tum</i> maxime capi- tur, <i>quum</i> in proximum quemque confertur.</p>	<p><i>The fruit of all excellence is especially enjoyed, (then) when it is bestowed upon each nearest relative.</i></p>
<p><i>Tum, quum</i> ex urbe Cati- linam ejiciēbam, reli- quam conjuratorum ma- num simul exituram pu- tābam.</p>	<p><i>Then, when I banished Catiline from the city, I thought that the remain- ing band of conspirators would at once depart.</i></p>

399. Sometimes in place of the correlative adverb in the principal clause, we find an adverbial expression of time; e. g.,

<p>Ligarius eo tempore paruit, quum parere senatui ne- cesse erat.</p>	<p>Ligarius obeyed the senate at that time when it was necessary.</p>
--	---

[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

400. Temporal clauses may represent the action of the principal verb as taking place,

1) At the time of some other action ; e. g.,

<p>Dum senātus bellum con- tra Caesārem parābat, hic dictatōrem se fecit.</p>	<p>While the senate was prepar- ing war against Caesar, he made himself dictator.</p>
---	---

2) Before some other action ; e. g.,

<p>Priusquam lucet, adsunt.</p>	<p>They are present before it is light.</p>
---------------------------------	---

3) After some other action ; e. g.,

<p>Scipio, tertio anno post- quam Romāni in Afrī- cam trajecērāt, consul est creātus.</p>	<p>Scipio, in the third year af- ter the Romans had pass- ed into Africa, was made consul.</p>
---	--

REM.—For position of subordinate clause, see 376.

### *Use of Moods in Temporal Clauses.*

401. Subordinate clauses used to express time generally have their predicates in the indicative mood ; especially when they denote time merely. A few cases, however, require attention.

402. Subordinate sentences introduced by *quum* take,

1) The indicative when they mark merely the time of an action or event *without* any accessory notion of cause ; e. g.,

Is qui non propulsat injuriam a suis, *quum potest*, injuste facit. | *He who does not ward off an injury from his friends, when he can, does wrong.*

- 2) The subjunctive imperfect or pluperfect in historical narration, as the one event is here regarded in some sense as the *cause* or *occasion* of the other ; e. g.,

Zenōnem, *quum Athēnis essent*, audiēbant. | *They heard Zeno when they were in Athens.*

REM.—The clause, *Quum Athēnis essent*, indicates not only the *time*, but also the *occasion* of the action expressed by the principal clause, as their being in Athens was really the occasion of their hearing Zeno.

403. Subordinate sentences introduced by *antēquam* and *priusquam* take,

- 1) The indicative mood when they denote mere *priority of time* ; e. g.,

Priusquam lucet, adsunt. | *They are present before it is light.*

- 2) The subjunctive when they indicate a dependence of one event upon another ; e. g.,

Tempestas minātur antēquam surgat. | *The tempest threatens before it rises.*

404. The two parts of which *antēquam* and *priusquam* are compounded, are often separated, so that *ante* or *prius* appears in the principal clause, and *quam* in the subordinate part ; e. g.,

Ante triennium, quam Carthāgo delerētur, Cato mortem obiit. | *Cato died three years before Carthage was destroyed.*

REM. 1.—The learner must observe that *triensium* does not depend upon *ante* (which is the adverb, and not the preposition), but is in the accusative to denote *duration of time*, in accordance with Rule, 277. [www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

REM. 2.—*Postquam* is generally followed by the indicative, and, like *antequam* and *priusquam*, often has its parts separated.

REM. 3.—*Duration of time* before or after any event may be expressed either by the accusative or ablative.

405. Subordinate sentences introduced by *dum*, *donec*, and *quoad*, take,

- 1) The indicative, (a) when these connectives signify *while*, or *as long as*, and (b) when they signify *till* or *until*, if the action or event spoken of is to be contemplated as a matter of *fact*; e. g.,

*Dum* senātus bellum contra Caesārem parābat, hic dictatōrem se fecit.

Epaminondas ferrum in corpōre retinuit, *quoad* renuntiātum est vicisse Boeotios.

*While the senate was preparing war against Caesar, he made himself dictator.*

*Epaminondas retained the sword in his body, until it was announced that the Boeotians had conquered.*

- 2) The subjunctive, when they signify *until*, if the action or event spoken of is to be contemplated not as a *fact*, but as a merely conceived result for whose accomplishment an opportunity is presented; e. g.,

Diffērant, *dum* defervescat ira.

*Let them delay until their anger may cool.*

REM.—Here the *object* of the delay is to allow anger time to cool.

406. VOCABULARY.

After ( <i>conj.</i> ), <i>postquam</i> .	nians, <i>Lacedaemonii</i> , <i>orum</i> , m. pl.
Before ( <i>conj.</i> ), <i>antēquam</i> , <i>priusquam</i> .	Lycurgus, <i>Lycurgus</i> , <i>i</i> , m.
Festival, <i>festum</i> , <i>i</i> , n.	Neptune, <i>Neptūnus</i> , <i>i</i> , m.
Game, contest, <i>certāmen</i> , <i>inis</i> , n.; Olympic games, <i>Olympia</i> , <i>orum</i> , n. pl.	Numitor, <i>Numitor</i> , <i>oris</i> , m.
Government, kingdom, <i>regnum</i> , <i>i</i> , n.	Observe, <i>servo</i> , <i>āre</i> , <i>āvi</i> , <i>ātum</i> ; <i>obsero</i> , <i>āre</i> , <i>āvi</i> , <i>ātum</i> .
His (not referring to the subject), <i>ejus</i> , <i>illius</i> .	Olympic games, <i>Olympia</i> , <i>orum</i> , n. pl.
Institute, <i>instituto</i> , <i>ere</i> , <i>institui</i> , <i>institūtum</i> .	Remus, <i>Remus</i> , <i>i</i> , m.
Lacedaemonian, <i>Lacedaemonius</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> ; the Lacedaemo-	Restore, <i>restituo</i> , <i>ere</i> , <i>restitui</i> , <i>restitūtum</i> .
	Seventy, <i>septuaginta</i> , indecl.
	Sparta, <i>Sparta</i> , <i>ae</i> , f.
	While, <i>dum</i> .

407. EXERCISES.

I. *Transliterate and analyze.*

1. Quum Romāni saepe hostes vicissent, apud Cre-  
mēra castra posuērunt. 2. Quum Dracōnis leges cru-  
deliōres essent, legitur Solon, qui civitātem novis legi-  
bus condēret. 3. Quum Priscus Tarquinius occisus  
esset, Tanāquil de superiōre parte domus popūlum allo-  
cūtus est. 4. Is eos ludos instituit ante annos quam  
Roma conderētur septuaginta. 5. Hoc sacrum insti-  
tuit Atreus, quum patri funēbres ludos facēret. 6.  
Quamdiu Sparta Lycurgi disciplīnae diligens fuit, ex-  
celsissīme floruit. 7. Dum Sulla in Asia Mithridātem  
vincit, Marius bellum in Italia reparāvit. 8. Quamdiu  
motus remānet in nobis, tamdiu vita remānet.

II. 1. *Convert the subordinate clauses in the above ex-  
amples into independent sentences.*

## MODEL.

Romāni saepe hostes vicērunt.

2. Construct four Latin sentences with temporal clauses—two requiring the indicative, and two the subjunctive.

## III. Translate into Latin.

1. When was Rome founded? 2. He says that he does not know when it was founded. 3. It was founded seventy years after the Olympic games were instituted. 4. When was Remus killed? 5. He was killed while Rome was building (*pass.*). 6. He was killed before the festival of Neptune was instituted. 7. He was killed after the government had been restored to Numitor. 8. While Lycurgus remained at Sparta, the Lacedaemonians observed his laws. 9. The Lacedaemonians observed the laws of Lycurgus many years after he was dead (*had died*).

## LESSON XXXVIII.

*Adverbial Attributive-Sentences.—Cause.*

[101—103.]

408. Sentences used to assign a cause or reason for the action or event denoted by the principal verb, are called *causal clauses*. They are usually introduced either by a pure causal conjunction, as *quod*, *quia*, or by *quum*, *quoniam*, or *quando*, which have reference both to *cause* and *time*; e. g.,

<p>Quoniam supplicatio decreta est, celebrāte illos dies.</p>		<p><i>Since a thanksgiving has been decreed, celebrate those days.</i></p>
---	--	--

*Use of Moods in Causal Clauses.*

409. Causal clauses take the subjunctive mood, when introduced by *quum*, and the indicative, when introduced by other conjunctions, unless the cause or reason is assigned as the opinion of some other person than the narrator; e. g.

<p>Quae <i>quum</i> ita sint, Catilīna, perge.</p>	<p>Tardissīme Lentūlus venit, <i>quod</i> proxīma nocte <i>vigilavērat</i>.</p>	<p>Praetōres, <i>quod</i> eōrum opēra fidēli usus essem, laudantur.</p>	<p><i>Since these things are so, Catiline, go on.</i></p> <p><i>Lentulus came last, because he had watched the last night.</i></p> <p><i>The praetors are praised, because I had employed their faithful assistance.</i></p>
--	---	---	--

**REM.**—It will be observed that the subjunctive is used in the first example after *quum*, the indicative in the second after *quod* to denote that the reason is assigned by the narrator as his own, and the subjunctive in the third example after *quod* to denote that the reason is given on the authority, not of the narrator, but of those who bestowed the praise. The meaning is, *the praetors were praised (by the senate), because I had employed their faithful assistance*; i. e., this reason was assigned by the senate.

410. VOCABULARY.

<p>Armed, <i>armātus, a, um</i>.</p>	<p>Any one, <i>aliquis, aliqua, aliquid</i>; any, <i>ullus, a, um</i> (see F. B. 113, R.).</p>	<p>Asia, <i>Asia, ae, f</i>.</p>	<p>Bridge, <i>pons, pontis, m</i>.</p>
<p>Because, <i>quod, quia</i>.</p>	<p>Break down, <i>rumpo, ěre, rupi, ruptum</i>; <i>interrumpo, ěre, interrūpi, interruptum</i>.</p>	<p>Danube, <i>Danubius, i, m</i>.; <i>Ister, tri, m</i>.</p>	<p>Darius, <i>Darius, i, m</i>.</p>
		<p>Datis, <i>Datis, is, m</i>.</p>	<p>Engage battle, <i>confugo, ěre, confixi, conflictum</i>.</p>
			<p>Engagement, battle, <i>pugna, ae, f</i>.</p>



Forces, <i>copiae, arum, f. pl.</i>	Place, <i>locus, i, m. (pl. loci or loca).</i>
Have, <i>habeo, ere, habui, habitum.</i>	Relying upon, <i>fretus, a, um;</i>
Hundred, <i>centum, indecl.;</i> seven hundred, <i>septingenti, ae, a.</i>	rely, <i>fretus sum.</i>
No one, <i>nemo (inis, not in good use).</i>	Scythians, <i>Scythae, arum, m. pl.</i>
Number, <i>numerus, i, m.</i>	Seven hundred, <i>septingenti, ae, a.</i>
Opportunity, power, <i>potestas, atis, f.</i>	Ship, <i>navis, is, f.</i>
Over, <i>sometimes denoted by the genitive; as, pons Istri, the bridge over the Danube.</i>	Terrify greatly, <i>perterreo, ere, perterrui, perterritum.</i>
Persian, <i>Perses, ae, m.</i>	Thousand, <i>mille, indecl.;</i> <i>millia, millium, n. pl.</i>
	Unfavorable, <i>non aequus, a, um.</i>

## 411. EXERCISES.

I. *Translate and analyze.*

1. Cecropem biforem (229) tradidēre, quia primus marem feminae matrimonio junxit. 2. Vos, quoniam nox est, veneramini Jovem. 3. Darius hostis fuit Atheniensibus, quod eorum auxilio Iones Sardes expugnassent. 4. Quoniam de genere belli dixi, nunc de magnitudine pauca dicam. 5. Quum hostes ei pugnae potestatem non facerent, trepidus refugit. 6. Quum ex Europa in Asiam rediisset, classem quingentarum navium comparavit. 7. Pythia respondit, ut moenibus ligneis se munirent.

II. 1. *Convert the causal clauses in the above exercises into independent interrogative sentences.*

## MODEL.

Nonne Cecrops primus marem feminae matrimonio junxit?

2. *Construct Latin complex sentences with the following causal clauses:*

1. Quoniam jam dies est. 2. Quod hostes pugnāvērunt. 3. Quia Deiotārus auxilium contra Mithridātem tulērat. 4. Quod capītis damnātus est. 5. Quae quum ita sint.

### III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Did the Scythians give Darius an opportunity of coming to an engagement (lit. *the opportunity of a battle*)? 2. Why did they not do so (*it*)? 3. They did not give him an opportunity of coming to an engagement, because he had seven hundred thousand armed men. 4. Did any one break down the bridge over the Danube? 5. No one broke it down, because Darius had fled into Asia. 6. Why did Datis engage battle in an unfavorable place? 7. He engaged battle, because he relied upon the number of his forces. 8. The Persians sought their ships, because they were terrified.

---

## LESSON XXXIX.

*Adverbial Attributive-Sentences.—Cause ; Condition and Concession.*

[104—107.]

412. Every conditional sentence consists of two parts—the *condition* and the *consequence* ; e. g.,

Si quid habeat, dabit.	<i>If he has any thing, he will give it.</i>
------------------------	--

REM.—Here *si quid habeat* is the condition, and *dabit* the consequence.

413. Conditional sentences are of four kinds :

- 1) Those which assume the condition as a *fact*,  
i. e., as *already true* ; e. g.,

Si quid habet, dat. | *If he has any thing, he gives  
it, or is giving it.*

REM.—Here it is assumed that the condition is already realized.

- 2) Those which represent the condition as a  
*present uncertainty*, i. e., as one which may or  
may not be realized at the present moment ;  
e. g.,

Si quid habeat, dabit. | *If he has any thing, he will  
give it.*

REM.—Here the condition (*if he has any thing*) relates to the present time, and is represented as one which may or may not be true. It is not in itself dependent upon any contingencies, inasmuch as the fact, relating as it does to the present, is already determined, though we may not know what it is.

- 3) Those which represent the condition as a *mere possibility*, i. e., as one which has not yet been realized, but may or may not be so at some future time ; e. g.,

Si quid habeat, det. | *If he should have any thing,  
Si quid habēret, daret. | he would give it.*

REM.—Here the condition is in itself dependent upon contingencies, as it relates to future time. It is to be determined by events which are yet to transpire.

- 4) Those which represent the condition as an  
*impossibility*, i. e., as one which has not been realized and never can be ; e. g.,

Si quid habēret, daret. | *If he had any thing, he  
would give it.*

Si quid habuisset, dedisset. | *If he had had any thing, he  
would have given it.*

REM.—In both these examples, the condition relates to a definite time, and is represented as not then realized.

*Use of Moods in Conditional Sentences.*

414. In regard to the use of moods in conditional sentences, it may be observed,

- 1) That the *condition* is expressed in the first of the above forms by the *indicative*, in the second by the *subjunctive present* or *perfect*, in the third by the *subjunctive present, perfect* (or *imperfect*), and in the fourth by the *subjunctive imperfect* or *pluperfect*.
- 2) That the *consequence* is expressed in the first two of these forms by the *indicative* (or sometimes by the *imperative*), in the third by the *subjunctive present, perfect* (or *imperfect*), and in the fourth by the *subjunctive imperfect* or *pluperfect*.

REM. 1.—The conditional clause is sometimes omitted; e. g., *Daret, He would give* (if he had any thing, perhaps).

REM. 2.—The conditional clause of the 3d form is sometimes used in connection with the indicative; e. g., *Spartani pacem iis sunt polliciti, si naves tradèrent, The Spartans promised them peace, if they would give up their ships.*

415. Conditional sentences are sometimes introduced by *dum, modo, or dummodo*, provided, if only, &c. They then take the subjunctive; e. g.,

<p>Multi omnia recta negligunt, dummodo potentiam consequantur.</p>	<p><i>Many disregard all right, provided they can acquire power.</i></p>
---	--

416. The condition is, of course, often expressed negatively; it is then introduced sometimes by *si* with *non*, sometimes by *nisi*, and sometimes by *ni*; e. g.,

<p>Aequitas tollitur omnis, si habere suum cuique non licet.</p>	<p>www.libtool.com.cn</p>	<p><i>All equity is removed, if each one may not have his own.</i></p>
<p>Parvi sunt foris arma, nisi est consilium domi.</p>		<p><i>Arms are worth but little abroad, unless there is wisdom at home.</i></p>
<p>An, ni ita se res haberet, Anaxagoras patrimonia sua reliquisset?</p>		<p><i>Would Anaxagoras then have left his patrimony, if this were not so?</i></p>

*Concessive Sentences.*

417. Intimately connected with conditional clauses, are those which express *concession*, which is merely a *conceded* condition or cause; e. g.,

*Condition.*

<p>Medici, si intelligunt, nunquam aegris dicunt, eos esse morituros.</p>	<p> </p>	<p><i>Physicians never tell the sick that they are going to die, if they know it.</i></p>
---	----------	---

*Concession.*

<p>Medici, quamquam intelligunt saepe, tamen nunquam aegris dicunt eos esse morituros.</p>	<p> </p>	<p><i>Though physicians often know that the sick are going to die, yet they never tell them so.</i></p>
--	----------	---

REM.—The conjunctions generally used to introduce a concession are *etsi*, *etiamsi*, *tametsi*, *quamquam*, *quamvis*, and *licet*.

*Use of Moods in Concessive Clauses.*

418. On the use of moods in concessive clauses, it may be remarked,

- 1) That *quamquam* is usually followed by the *indicative*; e. g.,

Vestra tecta, *quamquam* jam pericūlum est depulsum, tamen custodiis defendite. | *Although the danger is now removed, still guard your houses.*

- 2) That *etsi*, *etiāmsi*, and *tametsi*, are generally followed by the *indicative*, unless the concession is presented as a mere supposition, in which case it, of course, requires the *subjunctive*; e. g.,

Caesar, *etsi* prope *exacta* jam aestas erat, tamen eo exercitum adduxit. | *Although the summer was nearly spent, still Caesar led his army thither.*

Sunt, qui quod sentiunt, *etiāmsi* optimum sit, tamen non audent dicere. | *Some do not dare to say what they think, even if it be very excellent.*

REM.—The concession in the second example is a mere supposition.

- 3) That *quamvis* and *licet* are followed by the *subjunctive*; e. g.,

Illā *quamvis* ridicūla essent, mihi tamen risum non movērunt. | *Although those things were ludicrous, yet they did not excite my laughter.*

#### 419. VOCABULARY.

Although, though, <i>quamquam</i> .	Please, be pleasing to, <i>placeo, ēre, placui, placitum</i> ; dis-
Enemy, <i>hostis, is, c.</i>	please, be displeasing to, <i>displiceo, ēre, displicui, displicitum</i> .
Fleet, naval forces, <i>classarii, ōrum</i> , m. pl.	Salamis, <i>Salāmis, is, f.</i> ; <i>Salamīna, ae, f.</i>
Grecian, <i>Graecus, a, um</i> ; the Greeks, <i>Graeci, ōrum</i> , m. pl.	Take possession of, get possession of, <i>occūpo, āre, āvi, -ātum</i> .
If, <i>si</i> .	
Leonidas, <i>Leonīdas, ae, m.</i>	
Persian, <i>Persicus, a, um</i> .	
Plan, purpose, <i>consilium, i, n.</i>	

Themistocles, <i>Themistōcles</i> , is, m.	Wisdom, <i>consilium</i> , i, n.
There, <i>ibi</i> .	Withstand, sustain, <i>sustineo</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>sustinui</i> , <i>sustentum</i> .
Thermopylae, <i>Thermopylae</i> , <i>arum</i> , f. pl.	Xerxes, <i>Xerxes</i> , is, m.

## 420. EXERCISES.

I. *Translate and analyze.*

1. Caesar peccāvit, si id fecit. 2. Peccābimus, si id faciāmus. 3. Peccārent, si id facērent. 4. Puēri peccavissent, si id fecissent. 5. Spartāni pacem Atheniensibus sunt pollicīti (414, R. 2), si longi muri brachia dejicērent. 6. Xerxes etsi male rem gessērat, tamen habēbat magnas copias. 7. Spartāni pacem Atheniensibus sunt pollicīti, si naves tradērent. 8. Spartāni pacem Atheniensibus sunt pollicīti, si respublica triginta rectōres accipēret. 9. Datis etsi non aequum locum vidēbat suis, tamen confluxit.

II. 1. *Construct four Latin sentences illustrative of the four forms of conditional sentences.*

2. *Construct two or more Latin sentences with concessive clauses.*

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Who was Leonidas? 2. He was king of the Lacedaemonians. 3. He was sent to take possession of Thermopylae. 4. Will the Greeks withstand the force of the enemy, if they get possession of Thermopylae? 5. Leonidas did not withstand the force of the enemy, although he had taken possession of Thermopylae. 6. Would Themistocles have engaged the fleet of the Persians, if his plan had not been pleasing to the states of

Greece? 7. He did engage the Persian fleet, although his plan was not pleasing to many of the Grecian states. 8. Who was conquered at Salamis? 9. Xerxes was conquered there by the wisdom of Themistocles.

## LESSON XL.

*Adverbial Attributive-Sentences.—Manner; Consequence and Comparison.*

[108—110.]

421. Attributive sentences of *manner* are of two kinds:

- 1) Such as indicate the manner or character of an action or event by giving its *results* or *consequences*; e. g.,

Lucullus ipsum regem ita  
vicit, ut robor militum  
Armeniōrum delēret.

*Lucullus so vanquished the  
king himself as to destroy  
(that he destroyed) the  
strength of the Armenian  
soldiery.*

- 2) Such as indicate the manner or character of the action or event, or the degree of the quality denoted by the predicate, by means of *comparison*. This may be done in two ways; viz.,

(a) By a comparison of *equality*, generally expressed by the correlatives *ut—ita*; *tam—quam*, and the like; e. g.,

Nemo tam pauper vivit,  
quam natus est.

*No one lives as poor as he  
was born.*



(b) By a comparison of *inequality*, expressed by the comparative degree of an adjective or adverb; e. g.,

Eurōpa minor est quam Asia.	Europe is smaller than Asia.
Romāni fortius quam hos- tes pugnāvērunt.	The Romans fought more bravely than the enemy.

REM. 1.—In a comparison of inequality, the connective *quam* is often omitted, and then the following noun is put in the ablative; e. g., Tullus Hostilius ferocior Romūlo fuit, *Tullus Hostilius was more ferocious than Romulus.*

REM. 2.—As comparisons of inequality with *quam* are *elliptical*; and as without *quam* they undergo an important change of structure, we must defer the farther consideration and illustration of them to the section on Abridged Complex Sentences.

#### *Use of Moods in Consecutive Clauses.*

422. Clauses denoting consequence or result are introduced by *ut*, and take the verb in the subjunctive mood; e. g.,

Quis tam demens, <i>ut</i> sua voluntāte moereat?	Who is so mad as to be sad from choice?
--	--

REM. 1.—*Ut* in a consecutive clause generally corresponds to some correlative in the principal sentence, signifying *so, such, so great, &c.*; thus, in the above example, we find *tam* in the principal clause.

REM. 2.—If a result is to be expressed negatively, *non* must be used, unless the clause contains some adjective, pronoun, or adverb which may assume the negative form; e. g., Ita sunt multi imbecilli senes, *ut nullum* vitæ munus exsequi possint, *Many old men are so feeble as to be unable to discharge any duty in life.*—Nemo adeo ferus est, *ut non* mitescere possit, *No one is so cruel as not to be able to become mild.*

REM. 3.—Relative clauses sometimes express *result*; e. g., Neque enim tu is es qui nescias, *Nor indeed are you such an one as not to know.*

423. VOCABULARY.

Against, <i>contra</i> (with accus.).	Peloponnesian, <i>Peloponnesi-</i>
Attica, <i>Attica</i> , <i>ae</i> , <i>f</i> .	<i>-cus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .
Be envious, envy, <i>invideo</i> , <i>ere</i> , <i>invidi</i> , <i>invisum</i> .	So, to such an extent, <i>tam</i> , <i>ita</i> .
Conclude, make, <i>facio</i> , <i>ere</i> , <i>fec</i> , <i>factum</i> .	So great, such, <i>tantus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .
Country, territory, <i>fines</i> , <i>fini-</i> <i>um</i> , <i>m</i> . <i>pl</i> .	Spartan, <i>Spartānus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> ; the Spartans, <i>Spartāni</i> , <i>orum</i> , <i>m</i> . <i>pl</i> .
Fifty, <i>quingua</i> <i>ginta</i> , <i>indecl</i> .	Syracusan, <i>Syracusānus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> ; the Syracusans, <i>Syracusāni</i> , <i>orum</i> , <i>m</i> . <i>pl</i> .
Fleet, <i>classis</i> , <i>is</i> , <i>f</i> .	Syracuse, <i>Syracusae</i> , <i>arum</i> , <i>f</i> . <i>pl</i> .
Forces, <i>vires</i> , <i>virium</i> , <i>f</i> . <i>pl</i> . of <i>vis</i> .	Terror, <i>terror</i> , <i>oris</i> , <i>m</i> .
Greatness, <i>magnitudo</i> , <i>inis</i> , <i>f</i> .	Undertake, <i>suscipio</i> , <i>ere</i> , <i>suscō-</i> <i>pi</i> , <i>susceptum</i> .
Lay waste, devastate, <i>populor</i> , <i>ari</i> , <i>populatus sum</i> .	

424. EXERCISES.

I. *Translate and analyze.*

1. Victōres rempublicam ita inter se divisērunt, ut Lepīdus Afrīcam accipēret. 2. Pirātae omnia maria infestābant ita, ut Romānis sola navigatio tuta non es-  
set. 3. Titus fuit vir omnium virtūtum genēre mira-  
bilis adeo, ut amor humāni genēris dicerētur. 4. Per-  
icles agros reipublicae dono dedit. 5. Spartāni hostes  
ad proelium provocābant. 6. Senātus tantas ei gratias  
congressit, quantas nemīni unquam egērat. 7. Viriā-  
thus tantos ad bellum popūlos concitāvit, ut vindex  
libertātis Hispaniae existimarētur.

II. 1. *Convert the consecutive clauses in the above ex-  
ercises into independent sentences.*

MODEL.

Lepīdus Afrīcam accēpit.

2. *Select from the Latin text of our previous reading lessons five or more sentences with consecutive clauses.*

3. *Construct Latin sentences in answer to the following questions :*

1. Why did the Spartans undertake the Peloponnesian war against the Athenians? 2. What was the result of this war? 3. For how long a time was peace concluded? 4. Where did Themistocles engage the fleet of Xerxes? 5. What was the result? 6. Who was defeated in the battle of Salamis? 7. How was he defeated?

### III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The Athenians fought so bravely, that they defeated the enemy. 2. The enemy were so terrified, that they fled. 3. The Spartans were so envious of the greatness of Athens (*so envied greatness to Athens*), that they laid waste the country of Attica. 4. So great forces came to aid (*as aid to ; see 257*) the Syracusans, that they were a terror to them. 5. Who sent these forces to Syracuse? 6. The Athenians sent a large fleet to that city.

---

## LESSON XLI.

*Complex and Compound Sentences as Elements of other Sentences.*

[111—113.]

425. A sentence of any form, whether simple, complex, or compound (164), may be used as an element in the formation of complex sentences.

REM.—We have thus far used only *simple* sentences as elements of the complex.

426. When a complex sentence is thus used, it must be observed,

- 1) That its principal clause assumes the same form as if it were a simple sentence.
- 2) That its subordinate clause, provided it is given either as the sentiment of some third person and not of the narrator himself, or as an essential part of the entire assertion, generally changes the indicative to the subjunctive, when the predicate of the principal clause is either in the subjunctive or infinitive; e. g.,

<p>Ad haec Caesar respondit, se id quod in Nerviiis fecisset, factūrum.</p>	<p><i>To this Caesar replied, that he would do what he had done in the case of the Nervii.</i></p>
---	--

REM. 1.—If the subordinate clause merely limits a particular term, without forming an essential part in the general thought of the proposition, the indicative must be used; e. g., *Caesāri renuntiātur, Helvetiis esse in animo iter in Santōnum fines facere, qui non longe a Tolosatium finibus absunt, It is announced to Caesar, that it is the intention of the Helvetians to go to the territory of the Santoniāns, which is not far from the country of the Tolosatiāns.* Here the clause *qui non, &c.*, is given merely to explain *fines*, and accordingly takes its verb in the indicative.

REM. 2.—If the subordinate clause of the complex sentence is expressed by any other mood than the indicative before the sentence is thus made dependent, it remains unchanged; e. g., 1. *Ubi jam se ad eam rem parātos esse arbitrāti sunt, oppīda sua omnia incendunt, When they thought that they were already prepared for this, they set fire to all their towns.* Here the adverbial attribute of time is expressed by a complex sentence which in its independent form requires its object-clause, *se ad eam rem parātos esse*, to take the infinitive; accordingly that mood is

retained when the entire sentence becomes subordinate. 2. Caesar, etsi intelligebat, *qua de causa ea dicerentur*, tamen Indutiomarus ad se venire jussit, *Caesar, although he knew why these things were spoken, still ordered Indutiomarus to come to him.* Here the subjunctive *dicerentur* is retained just as it would have been if this concessive clause were used as an independent sentence.

427. When a compound sentence (164) is used as an element in the formation of complex sentences, its several constituent parts, being independent of each other, assume the same form as if each one were used alone; e. g.,

Caesar certior fiēbat, omnes Belgas contra populum Romānum conjurare, et has esse causas.

*Caesar was informed, that all the Belgians were conspiring against the Roman people, and that these were the causes.*

REM.—Here the compound sentence might stand thus: "*Omnes Belgae contra populum Romānum conjuraverunt, et has fuerunt causae.*" When, however, it is made subordinate, its two parts both change their verbs to the infinitive; just as either would have done, if the other had not been used at all.

#### 428. VOCABULARY.

Adopt measures for or against, *consūlo, ěre, consului, consultum*; to adopt cruel measures, *crudeliter consūlo, ěre, &c.*

Alcibiades, *Alcibiādes, is, m.*

Be occupied, be busy, *distringor, i, districtus.*

Commander, general, *dux, duois, m.*

Cut off, *intercludo, ěre, interclūsi, interclūsum.*

Fortification, *munitio, ōnis, f.*

Four hundred, *quadringenti, ae, a.*

Historian, *historicus, i, m.*

Inhabitant, *incola, ae, m. & f.*

Inhabitant of Catina, *Catinensis, is, or Catiniensis, is, m. & f.*

People, *plebs, plebis, f.*

Recover, <i>recipio, ĕre, recĕpi, receptum.</i>	Supplies, <i>commedātus, us, m.</i>
Restore, <i>reddo, ĕre, reddĭdi, redditum.</i>	Terms, condition, <i>conditio, ōnis, f.</i>
Right, rights, <i>jus, juris, n.</i>	Unless, <i>nisi.</i>
	When, <i>quum, tum—quum.</i>

429. EXERCISES.

I. *Translate and analyze.*

1. Legāti id fiĕri vetant. 2. Lacedaemonii legātos Athēnas misĕrunt, qui id fiĕri vetārent. 3. Themistōcles muros Athenārum restituit, non sine pericūlo suo, quum Lacedaemonii legātos Athēnas misissent, qui id fiĕri vetārent. 4. Id responsum quo valĕret, quum intelligĕret nemo, Themistōcles persuasit, consilium esse Apollĭnis, ut in naves se conferrent. 5. In epigrammāte erat haec sententia: suo ductu Barbāros apud Plataeas esse delĕtos, ejusque victoriae ergo Apollĭni donum dedisse. 6. Mittitur Gylippus, qui quum de belli jam inclināto statu audivisset, opportūna bello loca occūpat.

II. *Construct two or more Latin sentences, each containing one or more complex sentences as elements.*

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The inhabitants of Catina asked aid of the Athenians. 2. Why did they ask aid? 3. Historians say that they asked aid, because the terms of peace were not observed by the Syracusans. 4. When they sent ambassadors to Athens to ask aid, the Athenians were occupied with the Peloponnesian war. 5. Do you know what the Athenian generals did in Sicily? 6. It is said that they built fortifications in order to cut off the inhabitants from supplies. 7. Who was ap-

pointed commander of the Athenian fleet, when the senate adopted cruel measures against the people? 8. Alcibiades was appointed commander, in order that he might recover the rights of the people from the four hundred, unless they should themselves restore them.

---

§ 2.—*Complex Sentences; Abridged.*

LESSON XLII.

*Principal Elements, Abridged.*

[114—117.]

430. We have seen that sentences, used as elements of others, are sometimes introduced unchanged, as direct quotations, and sometimes undergo certain alterations to adapt them to their new situations; e. g.,

*Direct Quotation.*

Dicit, "*Rex venit.*"

| *He says, "The king is coming."*

*Indirect Quotation.*

Dicit *regem venire.*

| *He says that the king is coming.*

431. In either of the above cases, the complex sentence appears in its full form; but sometimes a part of the subordinate clause is omitted, as when it can be easily supplied from the rest of the sentence; the complex sentence may then be said to be abridged.

432. Sentences are abridged in two ways:

- 1) A portion of the subordinate clause is omitted, and the rest remains unchanged; e. g.,

Cupio discere.

| *I desire to learn.*

Eurōpa minor est quam

| *Europe is smaller than Asia.*

Asia.

[www.libtoobl.com.cn](http://www.libtoobl.com.cn)

REM.—In the first example, the subject of the subordinate clause (*me*) is omitted, because it is the same person as the subject of the principal part (*ego*), and *discere* retains the same form as if the subject were expressed. So in the second example, the *predicate* of the subordinate clause is omitted, as it can be easily supplied from the principal part, while the subject and connective, *quam Asia*, remain unchanged.

2) A portion of the subordinate clause is omitted, and the rest is changed to adapt it to its new situation; e. g.,

Eurōpa minor est Asiā.

| *Europe is smaller than Asia.*

REM.—Here it will be observed that not only the predicate of the subordinate clause has disappeared (*as in case 1st*), but also the connective *quam*, and that the following noun *Asiā* loses its character as subject, and is put in the ablative.

*Subordinate Clauses as Principal Elements, Abridged.*

433. An infinitive sentence used as subject or predicate may have its own subject omitted, when it expresses a general truth, or when its subject may be easily supplied; e. g.,

Turpe est mentiri.

| *To lie is base.*

REM.—Here *mentiri* is subject, but its own subject is omitted, because, the truth being a general one, any subject we please may be supplied: thus, *that you, I, any one, should lie*, is base.

434. When the infinitive is used as the subject of a sentence, the predicate is sometimes expressed by the *copula* and a *genitive*; e. g.,

Regis est regnāre.

| *It is the part of the king to reign.*



REM. 1.—Here it is obvious that *regnare* is the subject, and *regis est* is the predicate.

REM. 2.—Combining articles 203 and 434, we have the following

435. RULE.—*Predicate Nouns.*

A noun in the predicate after the verb *esse* and a few passive verbs, is put,

- 1) In the same case as the subject when it denotes the same person or thing; e. g.,

Cicero fuit consul. | Cicero was consul.

- 2) In the genitive when it denotes a different person or thing; e. g.,

Regis est regnare. | It is the part of a king to reign.

[F. B. 613; A. & S. §§ 210, 211, R. 8; Z. §§ 365, 448.]

436. The infinitive after passive verbs with personal subjects should be treated as a predicate nominative (see 229, 230), and, as the subject of the infinitive is omitted, being the same person or thing as that of the passive, any predicate noun, adjective, or participle after the infinitive is generally attracted into the nominative to agree with the subject of the passive verb; e. g.,

Rex beatus esse dicitur. | The king is said to be happy.  
Coriolanus occisus esse dicitur. | Coriolanus is said to have been put to death.

REM.—It will be observed that *beatus* in the first example and *occisus* in the second would have been in the accusative to agree with the subjects of the infinitives if they had been expressed, but are here attracted into the nominative to agree with the subject of *dicitur*.

437. VOCABULARY.

Accept, <i>accipio, ěre, accēpi, acceptum.</i>	Lysander, <i>Lysander, dri, m.</i>
Be wise, <i>sapio, ěre, sapiui or sapii.</i>	Promise, offer, <i>polliceor, ěri, pollicĭtus sum.</i>
Besiege, <i>obsideo, ěre, obsēdi, obsessum; obsidiōne circumdo, ěre, dēdi, dātum.</i>	Republic, <i>respublica, reipublicae, f.</i> (See A. & S. 91.)
Best, <i>optĭmus, a, um</i> (superl. of <i>bonus</i> ).	Right, uprightly, <i>recte.</i>
Happily, <i>beāte.</i>	Ruler, director, <i>rector, ěris, m.</i>
Live, <i>vivo, ěre, vixi, victum.</i>	Thirty, <i>triginta</i> , indecl.
	Thither, <i>eo, illo, illuc.</i>
	Tyrant, <i>tyrannus, i, m.</i>

438. EXERCISES.

I. *Translate and analyze.*

1. Recte facĕre satis est. 2. Latĭne loqui est in magna laude ponendum. 3. Bene sentĭre non satis est. 4. Docto homĭni vivĕre est cogitāre. 5. Ne mihi noceant, vestrum est providĕre. 6. Dum haec geruntur, a Lacedaemoniis Lysander classi praeficitur. 7. Atheniensium exercĭtum ad Aegos flumen oppressit. 8. Spartanōrum dux eo impĕtu totum bellum delĕvit. 9. Triginta rectōres reipublicae constituuntur. 10. A principio tria millia satellĭtum sibi statuunt.

II. 1. *In the first four of the above sentences, insert subjects to the infinitives.*

MODEL.

Regem recte facĕre satis est.

2. *Construct three Latin sentences—one with infinitive as subject, one with infinitive as predicate, and one with infinitives both as subject and predicate.*

### III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. It is always best to do right. 2. Is it certain that you have done right? 3. It is the part of a good citizen to observe the laws. 4. It is certain that good citizens will obey the laws. 5. To live happily is to do right. 6. To be wise is to be good. 7. With how many ships did Alcibiades go into Asia? 8. He went thither with one hundred ships. 9. It is said that he went thither to lay waste the country. 10. Athens was besieged by Lysander. 11. The Spartans promised peace to the Athenians, if the republic would accept thirty rulers. 12. This condition was accepted. 13. The thirty rulers whom the Spartans appointed were thirty tyrants.

---

## LESSON XLIII.

### *Modifier of Subject or other Noun, Abridged.*

[118 & 119.]

439. The relative clause, modifying the subject or any other noun, is sometimes abridged by dropping both the relative and the copula, and retaining only the attribute.

440. When a relative clause is thus abridged, the attribute may be expressed,

- 1) By a *participle* agreeing with the antecedent of the omitted relative. This occurs when the predicate of the relative clause would have been expressed by a *verb*; e. g.,

<p>Tullia aurīgam super patris corpus in via jacens carpentum agere jussit.</p>		<p><i>Tullia ordered the charioteer to drive over her father's body, which lay (lit. lying) in the way.</i></p>
---	--	---

- 2) By an *adjective* agreeing with the antecedent of the omitted relative. This occurs when the predicate would have been expressed by an *adjective* and the copula *esse*; e. g.,

<p>Habētis ducem memōrem vestri.</p>		<p><i>You have a leader mindful (who is mindful) of you.</i></p>
--------------------------------------	--	--

- 3) By a *noun* in apposition with the antecedent of the omitted relative. This occurs when the predicate would have been expressed by a *noun* and the copula *esse*; e. g.,

<p>Aenēas, Anchāsae filius, mortuus est.</p>		<p><i>Aeneas, the son of Anchises (who was the son, &amp;c.), died.</i></p>
--	--	---

**REM.**—Combining the above with article 190, we have the following

441. **RULE.**—*Limiting Nouns.*

A noun limiting the meaning of another noun is put

- 1) In the same case as that noun, when it denotes the same person or thing; e. g.,

<p>Brutus consul.</p>		<p><i>Brutus the consul.</i></p>
-----------------------	--	----------------------------------

- 2) In the genitive, when it denotes a different person or thing, unless it expresses *character* or *quality*, in which case it is accompanied by an adjective, and is put either in the *genitive* or *ablative*; e. g.,

<p>Regis filius.</p>		<p><i>The king's son.</i></p>
----------------------	--	-------------------------------

Puer eximiae pulchritudin- | *A boy of remarkable beauty.*  
 nis, or Puer eximia pul-  
 chritudīne.

[F. B. 624; A. & S. §§ 204, 211, R. 6; Z. §§ 370, 423, 426, 471.]

442. Instead of a sentence modifying a substantive, we often find either a gerund (with or without modifiers) or a gerundive (*fut. pass. participle*) in agreement with some other substantive; e. g.,

Omnis occasio exercendi | *Let every opportunity of*  
 virtūtem (or, exercendae | *practising virtue be seiz-*  
 virtūtis) arripiātur. | *ed.*

443. RULE.—*Gerund.*

The gerund is governed like a noun in the same case. (See above example.)

[F. B. 374; A. & S. § 275, III. R. 1, 2, 3, 4; Z. §§ 659, 664, 666, 667.]

444. RULE.—*Gerundive.*

Instead of a gerund governing its case, we may use the gerundive, *participle in dus*, agreeing with a noun. (See above example.)

[F. B. 382; A. & S. § 275, II.; Z. § 656.]

445. VOCABULARY.

Announce, <i>nuntio, āre, āvi, ātum.</i>	ry strongly fortified, <i>munitissimus, a, um.</i>
Appoint, commission, <i>praepōno, ēre, praepōnui, praepōsitum.</i>	Flee for refuge, <i>confugio, ēre, confūgi, confugitum.</i>
Artaxerxes, <i>Artaxerxes, is, m.</i>	Hold, <i>teneo, ēre, tenui, tentum.</i>
Bequeathe, <i>lego, āre, āvi, ātum.</i>	Phyle, <i>Phyle, es, f.</i>
Bind, <i>vincio, īre, vinci, vinctum.</i>	Prepare, <i>paro, āre, āvi, ātum.</i>
Castle, <i>castellum, i, n.</i>	Servitude, <i>servitus, ūtis, f.</i>
Chain, fetter, <i>compea, ēdis, f.</i>	Summon, send for, <i>arcesso, ēre, ūvi, ūtum.</i>
Cyrus, <i>Cyrus, i, m.</i>	
Fortified, <i>munitus, a, um; ve-</i>	<i>Thrasymbulus, Thrasymbulus, i, m.</i>

## 446. EXERCISES.

I. *Translate and analyze.*

1. Triginta tyranni, praepositi a Lacedaemoniis, servitute tenuerunt Athēnas. 2. Quum triginta tyranni, praepositi a Lacedaemoniis, servitute tenerent Athēnas, Thrasybulus Phylen confugit. 3. Neminem jacentem veste spoliavit. 4. Obscurum antea Macedonum nomen emersit. 5. Quibus rebus effectum est, ut obscurum antea Macedonum nomen emergeret. 6. In secundo proelio cecidit Critias, triginta tyrannorum acerimus. 7. Eodem fere tempore Darius, rex Persarum, moritur. 8. Sapientia ars vivendi est.

II. 1. *Fill out the abridged clauses in the above sentences.*

## MODEL.

Triginta tyranni, qui praepositi sunt a Lacedaemoniis, servitute tenuerunt Athēnas.

2. *Construct two or more Latin sentences with modifiers of subjects abridged.*

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. By whom was the city of Athens (*the city Athens*) held in servitude? 2. It is said that it was held in servitude by the thirty tyrants appointed by the Spartans. 3. Whither did Thrasybulus flee for refuge? 4. He fled for refuge to Phyle, a very strongly fortified castle in Attica. 5. Darius, the king of the Persians, bequeathed his kingdom to his son Artaxerxes. 6. When it was announced to Artaxerxes that his brother Cyrus was preparing war against him, he summoned him into his presence (*to himself*). 7. It is said that Cyrus, having been summoned into the presence of his brother, was bound in golden chains.

## LESSON XLIV. ·

www.libtool.com.cn

*Object of Predicate, Abridged.*

[120 &amp; 121.]

447. When the subject of an infinitive-sentence used as object is the same person or thing as that of the verb on which it depends, that subject is often omitted after verbs denoting *desire, intention, custom, ability, duty,* and the like, and also after various *passive verbs*; e. g.,

Cupio discere.

| *I desire to learn.*

Assuefacti sunt muros defendere.

| *They were accustomed to defend their walls.*

REM.—It will be observed that, in the first example, the infinitive stands as *direct* object, and in the second, as *indirect* object. After verbs of *desiring, intending, &c.*, the infinitive is used as *direct* object, while after verbs denoting *custom, ability, duty,* and the like, it stands only as *indirect* object.

448. When the subject of the infinitive mood is omitted in consequence of its denoting the same person or thing as that of the verb on which it depends, any predicate noun or adjective after the infinitive is attracted into the nominative to agree with the subject of the principal verb; e. g.,

Omnes volunt esse beāti. | *All wish to be happy.*

REM.—It will be observed that *beāti*, which would be in the accusative if the subject of *esse* were expressed, is here attracted into the nominative to agree with the subject of the principal verb.

449. An infinitive-sentence used as object of a transitive verb may sometimes be abridged by making its subject the object of the principal verb, and converting

the infinitive into a participle agreeing with that object: e. g.,

Non audīvit Aléxander dracōnem loquentem.	Alexander did not hear the dragon speak (lit. speak- ing).
--	--

Illud signum ita collocan- dum consūles locavē- runt.	The consuls contracted to have this statue thus pla- ced.
---	---

450. Instead of a sentence modifying the substantive or adjective predicate, whether objective or attributive, we often find either a gerund, or a gerundive in agreement with some substantive; e. g.,

Epaminondas studiōsior audiendi fuit.	Epaminondas was too fond of hearing.
--	---

REM.—The gerund *audiendi* depends upon *studiōsior*. See Rule, 443.

451. Instead of a subordinate clause denoting *purpose—indirect object*—a gerund, or a gerundive agreeing with some substantive, is often used, and is put sometimes in the dative, and sometimes in the accusative with a preposition; e. g.,

Aqua utilis est bībendo.	Water is useful for drink- ing.
--------------------------	------------------------------------

Boum terga non ad onēra accipiēda figurāta sunt.	The backs of oxen were not formed for receiving bur- dens.
---	--

452. The supine in *um* is sometimes used after verbs of motion in place of a subordinate clause of *purpose*; e. g.,

Legāti ad Caesārem gratu- lātum convenērunt.	Ambassadors came to Cae- sar to congratulate him.
---	--



453. RULE.—*Supine in um.*

The supine in *um* follows verbs of motion to express the purpose or object of that motion. (See example above.)

[F. B. 676 ; A. & S. § 276, II ; Z. § 668.]

## 454. VOCABULARY.

Advice, *consilium*, *i*, n.

Belong to, be to, *sum*, *esse*, *fui*, *futūrus* (with dative).

Cadmea, *Cadmēa*, *ae*, f.

Choose, *delīgo*, *ēre*, *delēgi*, *delectum*.

Conon, *Conon*, *ōnis*, m.

Defeat, *vinco*, *ēre*, *vici*, *victum*.

Depart, go, *proficiscor*, *ci*, *profectus sum*.

Desist, *discēdo*, *ēre*, *discessi*, *discessum*.

Despair, desperation, *desperatio*, *ōnis*, f.

Drive, drive away, *pello*, *ēre*, *pepūli*, *pulsum*.

Engagement, battle, *proelium*, *i*, n.

Exile, banishment, *exilium*, *i*, n.

Exile, a person banished, *exul*, *ūlis*, m. & f.

Land, field, *ager*, *agri*, m.

Naval, *navālis*, *e*.

Opening, beginning, *initium*, *i*, n.

Order, v., *jubeo*, *ēre*, *jussi*, *jussum*.

Otherwise, *alīter*.

Pelopidas, *Pelopīdas*, *ae*, m.

Pericles, *Perīcles*, *is*, m. (See F. B. 174.)

Theban, *Thebānus*, *a*, *um*.

Untouched, uninjured, *intactus*, *a*, *um*.

Voluntary, *voluntarius*, *a*, *um*.

## 455. EXERCISES.

I. *Translate and analyze.*

1. Pausanias honorātum adversarium vidit. 2. Philippus regnāre cum amīcis volēbat. 3. Amāri pater maluit. 4. Hic metui maluit. 5. Alexander univēsum terrārum orbem vincēre est aggressus. 6. Ille urbem obsidēre statuit. 7. Artaxerxes, rex Persārum, legātos in Graeciam mittit, per quos jubet omnes ab ar-

mis discedere. 8. Liberandae patriae propria laus est Pelopidae, qui, exsilio multatus, Athēnas se contulerat.

II. 1. Construct two or more Latin sentences with objects abridged.

2. Construct Latin sentences in answer to the following questions :

1. What state took the lead (*acted as leader*) against the Athenians in the Peloponnesian war? 2. What advice did Pericles give the Athenians in the opening of the war? 3. Why did he give his own lands to the republic? 4. In how many naval engagements did Alcibiades defeat the Spartans? 5. Why was Conon sent to take his place? 6. What became of Alcibiades? 7. What was the result of the Peloponnesian war? 8. Who were appointed over the Athenian republic?

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Who ordered the Greeks to desist from arms? 2. They were ordered by Artaxerxes, the king of the Persians, to desist from arms. 3. Did they not wish to do otherwise? 4. To whom belongs the praise of liberating the Cadmea from the Spartans? 5. This praise belongs to Pelopidas, the Theban exile, who, having chosen a day for liberating the state, drove the Spartans from the citadel.

## LESSON XLV.

www.libtool.com.cn

*Attribute of Predicate, Abridged.*—Comparison and Participles.

[122—125.]

456. Complex sentences involving comparisons of inequality (421, 2) take two different constructions; viz.,

- 1) The connective *quam* may be used; and then the following noun is generally in the same case as the corresponding noun before *quam*; e. g.,

Eurōpa minor est *quam* | *Europe is smaller than Asia.*  
Asia.

REM.—When the same word belongs to both members of the comparison in Latin, it is generally expressed in the first and omitted in the second; in English, however, it is expressed in the first, and represented in the second by the pronoun *that* or *those*; e. g., *Maris superficies major est quam terrae, The surface of the sea is greater than (that) of the land.* Here the noun after *quam* (*terrae*) is in the same case as the corresponding noun *maris* before it.

- 2) The connective *quam* may be omitted; and then the following noun is put in the ablative; e. g.,

Nihil est *clementiā* divi- | *Nothing is more godlike than*  
nius. | clemency.

457. RULE.—*Comparison.*

The comparative degree is followed,

- 1) *Without quam*, by the ablative.

- 2) *With quam*, generally by the case of the corresponding noun before it. (See examples above.)

[F. B. 636; A. & S. § 256; Z. § 483.]

458. An attributive sentence of *time, cause, manner, condition, concession, &c.*, may be abridged,

- 1) When its subject is some person or thing mentioned in the principal clause, by dropping the *subject* and *copula*, and generally the *connective*, and retaining the attributive part of the predicate in the form of a *participle, adjective, or noun* (according to the form of predicate) in agreement with that noun in the principal clause; e. g.,

Caesar, in Britanniam proficiscens, Morinos reliquit.

Quidam hanc patriam, hinc nati, urbem hostium esse iudicaverunt.

Hic, puer duodeviginti annorum, patrem servavit.

Caesar, going (i. e. when he went) into Britain, left the Morini.

Some, born here (though born here), have judged this country to be a city of the enemies.

He, (when) a boy of eighteen years, preserved his father.

**REM.**—Whenever, in thus abridging a sentence, a participle would be required in the *perfect active* with an object, the perfect passive must be used in the *ablative absolute* (see 2 below) with that object, as the Latin has no perfect active; e. g., *Hostes, impetu facto, nostros perturbaverunt*, *The enemy, having made an attack* (lit. *an attack having been made*), put our soldiers into disorder.

- 2) When its subject is some person or thing not mentioned in the principal clause, by drop-

ping the connective and copula, and putting the subject in the ablative with the *participle*, *adjective*, or *noun* of the predicate in agreement with it. This construction is called the *ablative absolute*; e. g.,

Hostes, nihil timentibus  
nostris, celeriter nostros  
perturbaverunt.

The enemy, while our soldiers feared nothing (lit. our soldiers fearing nothing), quickly put them into disorder.

Cicerone consule, Catilina  
ad delendam patriam  
conjuravit.

In the consulship of Cicero (when Cicero was consul), Catiline conspired for the destruction of his country.

459. RULE.—*Agreement of Participles.*

Participles like adjectives (189) agree, in *gender*, *number*, and *case*, with the nouns to which they belong. (See examples above.)

[F. B. 614; A. & S. § 205.]

460. RULE.—*Ablative Absolute.*

A noun and a participle, a noun and an adjective, or two nouns, standing grammatically independent of the rest of the sentence, are put in the ablative absolute. (See above examples.)

[F. B. 678; A. & S. § 257, R. 7; Z. §§ 640, 644, 645.]

REM.—Participles are sometimes used to abridge independent clauses; e. g., Quos Tyrii contra jus gentium occisos praecipitaverunt in altum, *The Tyrians slew them contrary to the law of nations, and threw them into the sea.*

461. VOCABULARY.

Add, join to, <i>adjungo, ęre, adjunxi, adjunctum.</i>	Keep, have, <i>habeo, ęre, habui, habitum.</i>
All, the whole, <i>totus, a, um.</i> (See F. B. 113, R.)	Macedonia, <i>Macedonia, ae, f.</i>
As (before nouns), <i>often untranslated.</i>	Philip, <i>Philippus, i, m.</i>
Cavalry, <i>equites, um, m. pl. of eques; equitatus, us, m.</i>	Reside, <i>habito, ęre, ęvi, ętum.</i>
Distinguished, <i>praestans, tis.</i>	Strength, <i>robur, ęris, n.</i>
Epaminondas, <i>Epaminondas, ae, m.</i>	Subjugate, impose the yoke of servitude, <i>servitutis jugum impōno, ęre, imposui, impostum.</i>
Hostage, <i>obses, ędis, m. &amp; f.</i>	Thebes, <i>Thebae, ęrum, f. pl.</i>
House, home, <i>domus, us &amp; i, f.</i>	Thessalian, <i>Thessalus, a, um.</i>
Instructed, learned, accomplished, <i>eruditus, a, um.</i>	Victorious, <i>expressed by victor, oris, m. in apposition with the noun.</i>
Larissa, <i>Larissa, ae, f.</i>	Virtue, <i>virtus, ętis, f.</i>

462. EXERCISES.

I. *Translate and analyze.*

1. Alexander, ad Persicum bellum proficiscens, patrimonium omne suum amicis divisit. 2. Philippus, in Scythiam profectus, numero praestantes Scythas dolc vicit. 3. Alexander virtute patre major fuit. 4. Hic vitiis Philippo major fuit. 5. Motae quaedam civitates Atheniensibus se jungunt. 6. Atheniensibus per insidias victis, Philippus incolumes sine pretio dimisit. 7. Post haec, bello in Illyrios translato, multa millia hostium caedit. 8. Philippus, obses triennio Thebis habitus in Epaminondae domo, Graeciae servitutis jugum imposuit.

II. *Explain the force of the participles in the above sentences, showing to what kind of clause each is equivalent, i. e. whether temporal, causal, &c.*

## MODEL.

*Ad Persicum bellum proficiscens*, is an abridged *temporal* clause, showing when Alexander divided his patrimony, viz. *on going to the Persian war* = *when he went, &c.*

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. How long did Philip reside at Thebes? 2. He was there three years. 3. He was kept as a hostage in the house of Epaminondas. 4. Having been kept as a hostage for three years at Thebes, he returned to Macedonia. 5. Having been kept as a hostage in the house of Epaminondas, he was instructed in all the virtues of this distinguished man. 6. On returning (458) to Macedonia, he subjugated all Greece. 7. Having taken Larissa in Thessaly, he added to his victorious army the strength of the Thessalian cavalry.

## LESSON XLVI.

*Attribute of Predicate, Abridged; Gerunds and Supines.*

[126—129.]

463. The gerund, as already mentioned (450), sometimes expresses the attribute of a substantive or adjective predicate; e. g.,

Sapientia ars vivendi putanda est.	<i>Wisdom should be regarded as the art of living.</i>
------------------------------------	--

REM.—The forms of the gerund are very properly regarded as the oblique cases of the infinitive, and accordingly are the abridged forms of subordinate clauses: thus, *ars vivendi*, in the first example, literally construed would stand, *the art of the to live* = the art of living.

464. Instead of a subordinate proposition modifying the verb predicate, the gerund with a preposition, or a gerundive and a substantive with a preposition, may be used to express adverbial relations; e. g.,

<i>Inter ludendum cantābant.</i>	<i>They were singing while playing.</i>
<i>Brutus in liberanda patria est interfectus.</i>	<i>Brutus was killed in liberating his country.</i>

465. The ablative of the gerund, or of the gerundive in agreement with a substantive, without a preposition often supplies the place of a subordinate clause of *cause*, *manner*, *means*, &c.; e. g.,

<i>Mens discendo alitur.</i>	<i>The mind is strengthened by learning.</i>
<i>Loquendi elegantia augētur legendis oratoribus.</i>	<i>Elegance of speech is cultivated by reading orators.</i>

☞ For Rules for the government of gerunds and gerundives, see 443, 444.

466. The supine in *u* may supply the place of an adverbial clause after certain adjectives, whether in the subject or predicate; e. g.,

*Hoc optimum factu est.* | *This is best to be done.*

467. RULE.—*Supine in u.*

The supine in *u* is used after adjectives signifying *good* or *bad*, *easy* or *difficult*, *agreeable* or *disagreeable*, &c. (See above example.)

[F. B. 635; A. & S. § 276, III; Z. § 670.]

☞ For the use of supine in *um*, see 452.



## 468. VOCABULARY.

Alexander, <i>Alexander, dri</i> , m.	Narrow passage, <i>angustias, arum</i> , f. pl.
Arrive, <i>advenio, ire, advēni, adventum</i> .	Offer sacrifices, to sacrifice (in honor of parents, &c.), <i>parento, are, avi, atum</i> .
Deceive, <i>decipio, ěre, decēpi, deceptum</i> .	Pausanias, <i>Pausanias, ae</i> , m.
Delight, rejoice, <i>gaudeo, ěre, gavisus sum</i> .	See, witness, <i>specto, are, avi, atum</i> .
Go, hasten, <i>contendo, ěre, contendĭ, contentum</i> .	Tomb, <i>tumulus, i</i> , m.
Hero, <i>heros, ōis</i> , m.	Whose, <i>cujus, a, um; cujus; quorum</i> .
Learn, <i>disco, ěre, didĭci</i> .	Youth, young man, <i>adolescens, entis</i> , m.
Macedonian, <i>Macedonicus, a, um; Macēdo, ōnis</i> , m.	

## 469. EXERCISES.

I. *Translate and analyze.*

1. Homĭnis mens discendo alĭtur. 2. Omnes multum tempōris ludendo amittĭmus. 3. Philippus ad ludos spectandos contendit. 4. Atheniensium exercĭtus in terram praedatum exiĕrat. 5. Philippus, in Scythiam praedandi causa profectus, numĕro praestantes Scythas dolo vicit. 6. Parcendi victis filio anĭmus promptior. 7. Vincendi ratio utrĭque diversa fuit. 8. Athenienses misĕrunt Delphos consultum, quidnam facĕrent de rebus suis.

II. *Construct two or more Latin sentences with gerunds, and two or more with supines.*

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. They have learned much by reading. 2. All can learn much by reading good books. 3. Philip learned much by witnessing the virtues of Epaminondas the Theban. 4. Who killed Philip? 5. Pausanias, hav-

ing taken possession of (458, 1, R.) the narrow passage, killed him. 6. He was going to see the games, when this Macedonian youth killed him. 7. Who succeeded Philip? 8. Alexander succeeded his father Philip. 9. The father is said to have delighted in deceiving the enemy (lit. *in the enemy deceived*). 10. The son delighted in routing them. 11. At whose tomb did Alexander offer sacrifices on arriving in Asia? 12. He is said to have sacrificed at the tombs of the Trojan heroes.

www.libtool.com.cn

## CHAPTER III.

### COMPOUND SENTENCES.

#### § 1.—*Compound Sentences; Unabridged.*

#### LESSON XLVII.

##### *Classes of Compound Sentences.*

[130 & 131.]

470. A COMPOUND sentence is one which consists of two or more independent though related sentences.

REM.—The sentences, thus united, may themselves be either simple, complex, or compound.

471. Compound sentences may be divided into three classes; viz.,

- 1) *Copulative* sentences, in which two or more thoughts are presented in harmony with each other; e. g.,

<p>Longas naves aestus complēbat; et onerarias tempestas afflictābat.</p>	<p><i>The water filled the warships; and the storm tossed the ships of burden.</i></p>
---	--

- 2) *Disjunctive* sentences, in which a choice between two or more thoughts is offered; e. g.,

<p>Audendum est aliquid universis, aut omnia singulis patienda sunt.</p>	<p><i>Something must be braved by all, or all things must be endured by each.</i></p>
--	---

3) *Adversative* sentences, in which the thoughts stand opposed to each other; e. g.,

Difficile factu est, sed conabor. | *It is difficult to do, but I will try it.*

472. Copulative clauses may be connected by the conjunctions *et*, *atque*, *ac*, *que*, or *nec*, *neque*.

REM. 1.—*Et* is the most common, and is used to connect thoughts (or words) of equal importance; *que*, which is an enclitic (i. e. *is always appended to some other word*), indicates a more intimate relationship, and is generally used when the second part represents something as belonging to the first or derived from it, &c.; *atque* is used when the second part is more important than the first; *ac*, which is abbreviated from *atque*, never stands before a vowel, and has generally the force of *et*. *Neque* and *nec* have the force of *et non*.

REM. 2.—Associated with these conjunctions, we sometimes find *etiam*, *adeo*, *quoque*, &c., and sometimes these last only are used.

473. Sometimes a connective appears in both clauses; thus, we find the following correlative particles: *et—et*; *quum—tum*; *tum—tum* = both—and; *non solum—sed etiam* = not only—but also; *ut—ita*; *tam—quam* = as—so; as well—as; both—and; *neque—neque*; *nec—nec* = neither—nor; e. g.,

*Et longas naves aestus complēbat; et onerarias tempestas afflictabat.* | *Both the water filled the war-ships, and the storm tossed the ships of burden.*

474. Sometimes a causal adverb or conjunction appears with the copulative, as *ig̃itur*, *ideo*, *enim*, &c., and sometimes the copulative is omitted, leaving only the causal adverb as connective; the sentence, however, retains its co-ordinate character; e. g.,

*Nihil labōras; ideo nihil habes.* | *You do nothing, and accordingly have nothing.*

475. Disjunctive sentences usually employ some one or more of the following connectives: *aut, vel, sive, ve*, or the correlatives *aut—aut; vel—vel; sive—sive; seu—seu*. (See example, 471, 2.)

REM.—When the second member is a stronger expression than the first, or is really the carrying out of the same idea, *vel* or *sive* is often accompanied by *etiam* or *potius*; e. g., *Discessus fuit perturbatus, sive potius fuga turpissima, The departure was very disorderly, or rather the flight most disgraceful.*

476. Adversative sentences usually employ some one or more of the following connectives: *sed, autem, at, verum, vero, tamen* and its compounds *attamen* and *verumtamen*, and *atqui*. (See example, 471, 3.)

#### 477. VOCABULARY.

And, *et, atque, ac, quo* (enclitic). (See 472, R. 1.)  
 Around, *circa, circum*.  
 Become or be made unmanageable, *effëror, äri, efferätus sum*, pass. of *effëro*.  
 But, *sed, autem, &c.* (476).  
 Chariot, *ourrus, us, m*.  
 Fall (in battle), *cado, ëre, cecidi, casum*.  
 Few, *pauci, ae, a*.  
 Fought, *commissus, a, um*.

High-minded, *magnanimus, a, um; magnificus, a, um*.  
 Horse, *equus, i, m*.  
 Issus, *Issus, i, f*.  
 Pierce, *confodio, ëre, confodi, confossum*.  
 Prudent, *prudens, tis*.  
 Slightly, lightly, *leviter*.  
 Spear, *hasta, ae, f*.  
 Than, *quam*, or indicated by *ablative after comparatives*.  
 Wound, *vulnëro, äre, ävi, ätum*.

#### 478. EXERCISES.

I. *Translate and analyze.*

1. Philippos Alexander filius successit. 2. Prudentior ille consilio, hic animo magnificentior. 3. Vini uterque nimis avidus; sed ebrietatis diversa ratio. 4. Perdicca occisus est, pluresque duces periërunť. 5. De

exercitū Alexandri centum viginti equites ceciderunt, et cognatis eorum immunitates a publicis muneribus dedit. 6. Quaedam civitates Atheniensibus se jungunt; quasdam autem ad Philippum belli metus traxit. 7. Commisso proelio, Alexander non ducis magis quam militis munia exsequebatur.

II. 1. *Explain the nature of the connection existing between the different members of the above compound sentences.*

2. *Construct three or more Latin sentences, illustrating the different kinds of co-ordination.*

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Philip was prudent, and Alexander was high-minded. 2. Philip was more prudent than his son Alexander, but the son was more high-minded than the father. 3. Alexander conquered the Persian king in a battle fought at Issus; and there the noblest leaders fell around the chariot of Darius. 4. Was not Darius himself wounded? 5. He was not wounded, but his horses, having been pierced with spears, became unmanageable. 6. Did many of the Macedonians perish at Issus? 7. A few of them perished, and the king himself is said to have been slightly wounded.

---

## LESSON XLVIII.

### *Formation of Compound Sentences.*

[132 & 133.]

479. Compound sentences may be formed by co-ordinating in some one or more of the ways just mentioned,

1) Two or more simple sentences ; e. g.,

<p>Gyges a nullo videbatur, ipse autem omnia videbat.</p>	<p><i>Gyges was seen by no one, but he himself saw every thing.</i></p>
---	---

2) Two or more complex sentences ; e. g.,

<p>Hi sunt homines ex iis coloniis, quas Sulla constituit ; sed tamen hi sunt coloni, qui se in insperatis pecuniis insolentius jactarunt.</p>	<p><i>These are men from those colonies which Sylla planted ; but yet these are colonists who have become too insolent in their unexpected wealth.</i></p>
--	--

3) Two or more compound sentences ; e. g.,

<p>Graeciae Antipater praepositus ; regiae pecuniae custodia Cratero traditur ; sed exercitus cura Perdiccae assignatur et Aridaeus rex agnoscitur.</p>	<p><i>Antipater is appointed over Greece, and the guardianship of the royal treasury is intrusted to Craterus ; but the care of the army is assigned to Perdicca, and Aridaeus is recognized as king.</i></p>
---	---

4) Simple, complex, and compound, in a single sentence, of either two of the three kinds, as simple and complex, simple and compound, or complex and compound ; e. g.,

<p>Nunquam ego a diis optabo ut haec audiatis, sed illa audietis.</p>	<p><i>I shall never desire of the gods that you may hear these things, but you will hear them.</i></p>
---	--

480. VOCABULARY.

Ammon or Hammon, <i>Ammon</i> or <i>Hammon</i> , <i>ōnis</i> , m.	God, <i>deus</i> , <i>i</i> , m. (See A. & S. § 58.)
Approach, <i>adventus</i> , <i>us</i> , m.	John, <i>Johannes</i> , <i>is</i> , m.
Charles, <i>Carōlus</i> , <i>i</i> , m.	Jupiter, <i>Jupiter</i> , <i>Jovis</i> , m. (See A. & S. § 85.)
Consult, <i>consūlo</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>consului</i> , <i>consultum</i> .	Latter, <i>hic</i> , <i>haec</i> , <i>hoc</i> .
Contrary to, <i>contra</i> .	Law or right of nations, <i>jus</i> <i>gentium</i> .
Design, designate, <i>designo</i> , <i>āre</i> , <i>āvī</i> , <i>ātum</i> .	Lay siege to, besiege, <i>obsideo</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>obsēdi</i> , <i>obsessum</i> .
Determine, <i>statuo</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>statui</i> , <i>statūtum</i> .	Love, <i>amo</i> , <i>āre</i> , <i>āvī</i> , <i>ātum</i> .
Dutiful, <i>pius</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .	Oracle, <i>oracūlum</i> , <i>i</i> , n.
Egypt, <i>Ægyptus</i> , <i>i</i> , f.	Receive, <i>recipio</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>recēpi</i> , <i>re-</i> <i>ceptum</i> .
Egyptian, <i>Ægyptius</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> ; the Egyptians, <i>Ægyptii</i> , <i>ō-</i> <i>rum</i> , m. pl.	Slay, kill, <i>occīdo</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>occīdi</i> , <i>oc-</i> <i>cīsum</i> .
Empire, <i>imperium</i> , <i>i</i> , n.	Tyre, <i>Tyrus</i> , <i>i</i> , f.
Ever, always, <i>semper</i> .	Tyrian, <i>Tyrius</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> ; the Tyrians, <i>Tyrii</i> , <i>ōrum</i> , m. pl.
Fear, <i>metuo</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>metui</i> , <i>metū-</i> <i>tum</i> .	Visit, go to, <i>adeo</i> , <i>ire</i> , <i>adii</i> , <i>adī-</i> <i>tum</i> .
Former—latter, <i>illo—hic</i> .	Whether, <i>sometimes expressed</i> <i>by an</i> .
Gladly, <i>expressed by adj.</i> <i>lae-</i> <i>tus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> , <i>in agreement with</i> <i>subject</i> .	World, <i>orbis</i> , <i>is</i> , m.; <i>orbis ter-</i> <i>rae</i> or <i>terrārum</i> .
Go, <i>eo</i> , <i>ire</i> , <i>ivi</i> , <i>itum</i>	

481. EXERCISES.

I. *Translate and analyze.*

1. *Ægyptii Alexandrum laeti recepērunt, nec sustinūere adventum ejus Persae.* 2. *Ægyptii, olim Persārum opībus infensi, Alexandrum laeti recepērunt; nec sustinūere adventum ejus Persae, defectiōne perterriti.* 3. *Regnāre ille cum amīcis volēbat; hic in amīcos regna exercēbat.* 4. *Amāri pater voluit; hic*



metui maluit. 5. Parcendi victis filio animus promptior; ille nec sociis abstinēbat. 6. Motae quaedam civitatēs Atheniensibus se jungunt; quasdam autem ad Philippum belli metus traxit.

II. 1. *Construct two simple sentences in Latin, and then unite them by some co-ordinate conjunction.*

2. *Construct a complex sentence, and unite it with the compound formed above.*

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The Egyptians received Alexander gladly, but the Persians were terrified at his approach. 2. Charles is feared, and John is loved; but the former is said to be a good father, and the latter has ever been a dutiful son. 3. Why did Alexander determine to lay siege to Tyre? 4. He determined to besiege the city, because the Tyrians, contrary to the law of nations, slew the ambassadors whom he had sent to them. 5. What oracle did he visit in Egypt? 6. He visited the oracle of Jupiter Ammon to consult whether the father of the gods designed the empire of the world for him.

---

§ 2.—*Compound Sentences; Abridged.*

---

LESSON XLIX.

*Compound Elements.—Subjects, United.*

[184—187.]

482. The several members of a compound sentence frequently differ from each other only in their *subjects*, and then these subjects are generally united, and the

other elements appear but once, though in such a form as to agree with the compound subject; e. g.,

<i>Romāni bella multa gessērunt.</i>	The Romans <i>waged many wars.</i>
<i>Graeci bella multa gessērunt.</i>	The Greeks <i>waged many wars.</i>
<i>Romāni et Graeci bella multa gessērunt.</i>	The Romans and Greeks <i>waged many wars.</i>

REM.—Here it will be observed that the predicate and modifiers are the same in both the sentences united to form the compound, and accordingly they appear but once in that compound.

<i>Caesar bella multa gessit.</i>	Caesar <i>waged many wars.</i>
<i>Hannibal bella multa gessit.</i>	Hannibal <i>waged many wars.</i>
<i>Caesar et Hannibal bella multa gessērunt.</i>	Caesar and Hannibal <i>waged many wars.</i>

REM.—Here it will be observed that the predicate in the compound is changed to the plural to agree with the compound subject.

#### 483. RULE.—*Agreement.*

When the members of a compound subject are united by *copulatives* (except *nec, neque*), the predicate is generally put in the plural; but, when they are united by *disjunctives* or *adversatives*, it is generally in the singular, if the members themselves are of that number; e. g.,

<i>Caesar et Hannibal bella multa gessērunt.</i>	Caesar and Hannibal <i>waged many wars.</i>
<i>Caesar aut Hannibal bella multa gessit.</i>	Caesar or Hannibal <i>waged many wars.</i>

[F. B. 612, R.; A. & S. § 209, R. 12; Z. § 365.]

REM. 1.—If the subjects are of different persons, the verb agrees with the first in preference to the second, and with the second in preference to the third; e. g., *Si tu et Tullia valētis, ego et Cicerō valēmus, If you and Tullia are well, Cicero and I are well.*

REM. 2.—If the subjects are of different genders, any predicate adjective or participle in the plural generally takes the gender of one of the subjects, preferring the *masculine* to the feminine and the *feminine* to the neuter; unless the subjects denote things without life, and then they are usually put in the neuter; e. g., *Pater mihi et mater mortui sunt, My father and mother are dead.*—*Labor voluptasque inter se sunt juncta, Labor and pleasure are united together.*

REM. 3.—Sometimes the verb in the singular is used in agreement with one of the subjects connected by copulatives, and is understood with the rest, and sometimes the verb in the plural is used with subjects in the singular connected by disjunctives, especially when one of these subjects is in the first or second person; e. g., *Omnes animi cruciatus egestas ac mendicitas consequatur, Let want and beggary follow all the agonies of mind.*—*Si quid Socrātes aut Aristippus fecerint, &c., If Socrates or Aristippus did any thing, &c.*

REM. 4.—When different modifiers belong to the several subjects united, they must each be associated with their respective subjects; e. g., *Fuerunt anno primo consules Brutus, acerrimus libertatis vindex, et Collatinus, maritus Lucretiae, Brutus, the most valiant defender of liberty, and Collatinus, the husband of Lucretia, were the consuls the first year.*

#### 484. VOCABULARY.

Arbela, *Arbēla, ōrum*, n. pl.  
Both — and, *et — et; quum — tum, &c.* (See 478.)  
Bravely, *fortiter*.  
Nearly, *ferē*.  
Or, *aut*; in double questions, *an, ne*, sometimes *an* in the second clause, and *utrum*,

*num, or ne*, in the first. (See F. B. 482.)  
Reach, arrive at, *pervenio, ire, pervēni, perventum*.  
Rush, rush together, *concurro, ēre, concurrī, concursum*.  
Village, *vicus, i, m.*

## 485. EXERCISES.

I. *Translate and analyze.*

1. Romūlus et Remus pueritiam inter pastōres trans-  
egērunt. 2. In exercītu Alexandri fuērunt pedītum  
triginta duo millia, equītum quatuor millia quingenti,  
naves centum octoginta duae. 3. De exercītu ejus no-  
vem pedītes, centum viginti equītes cecidērunt. 4.  
Inter captīvos castrōrum mater et uxor et filiae duae  
Dariī fuērunt. 5. Nec Persae nec Macedōnes dubita-  
vĕre, quin ipse rex esset occīsus. 6. Puĕri virginesque  
templa complevĕrant.

II. *Give in full the sentences which have been united in  
the formation of the first four of the above compounds.*

## MODEL.

Romūlus pueritiam inter pastōres transĕgit. (482.)

Remus pueritiam inter pastōres transĕgit. (482.)

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Darius reached the village of Arbela. 2. The  
Persians reached the village of Arbela. 3. Darius and  
the Persians reached the village of Arbela. 4. The  
Lacedaemonians rushed to arms. 5. Did not all Greece  
rush to arms? 6. The Lacedaemonians and nearly all  
Greece rushed to arms. 7. Both Persians and Mace-  
donians fought bravely. 8. Were the Lacedaemonians,  
or the Persians conquered at Arbela? 9. The Per-  
sians were conquered there.

## LESSON L

www.libtool.com.cn

*Compound Elements.—Predicates, United.*

[188—141.]

486. The several members of a compound sentence frequently differ only in their *predicates*, and then these predicates are united, while the other elements appear but once; e. g.,

Scipio Carthaginē cepit.		<i>Scipio took Carthage.</i>
Scipio Carthaginē diruit.		<i>Scipio destroyed Carthage.</i>
Scipio Carthaginē cepit ac diruit.		<i>Scipio took and destroyed Carthage.</i>

REM.—When the modifiers of the several predicates are not the same, they must be associated with their respective predicates; e. g., *Is et in custodiam cives dedit et supplicatiōnem mihi decrevit, He both delivered citizens into custody and decreed a thanksgiving to me.*

487. The copulative connective is often omitted both in the full and in the abridged form of the compound sentence; e. g.,

Catilīna abiit.		<i>Catiline has gone.</i>
Catilīna evāsit.		<i>Catiline has escaped.</i>
Catilīna erūpit.		<i>Catiline has broken away.</i>
Catilīna abiit, evāsit, erū- pit.		<i>Catiline has gone, has esca- ped, has broken away.</i>

488. If the predicate is expressed by a copula and attribute separately, the copula being the same in the several parts, we have only to unite the attributes; e. g.,

Asia *opīma* est.

Asia *fertīlis* est.

Asia *opīma* est *et fertīlis*.

Asia is rich.

Asia is fertile.

Asia is rich and fertile.

489. If there are modal adverbs (265) or modifiers, connected with either part, they must generally be retained with that part; if the same modal adverb belongs to each member, it is generally repeated, either alone or in combination with the connective; e. g.,

Otīi fructus est *non* contentio anīmi.

Otīi fructus est relaxatio anīmi.

Otīi fructus est *non* contentio anīmi, *sed* relaxatio.

Atticus mendacium *non* dicēbat.

Atticus mendacium *non* pati potērat.

Atticus mendacium *neque* (*et non*) dicēbat, *neque* (*et non*) pati potērat.

The fruit of ease is not the vigorous exercise of mind.

The fruit of ease is the relaxation of mind.

The fruit of ease is not the vigorous exercise of mind, but the relaxation of it.

Atticus did not speak a falsehood.

Atticus was not able to endure a falsehood.

Atticus neither (both not) spoke a falsehood nor (and not) was able to endure one.

#### 490. VOCABULARY.

After, *post*.

Amphipolis, *Amphipōlis*, *is*, *f*.

Appoint, institute, *instituo*, *ēre*, *institui*, *institūtum*.

Babylon, *Babylon*, *ōnis*, *f*.

Beseech, pray, *precor*, *āri*, *precātus sum*.

Chaeronea, *Chaeronēa*, *ae*, *f*.

Death, *mors*, *mortis*, *f*.

Disregard, contemn, *contemno*, *ēre*, *contempsi*, *contemptum*.

Enter, *introeo*, *ire*, *ivi* or *ii*, *itum*.

Feast, *convivium*, *i*, *n*.

Hasten, *festino, āre, āvi, ātum.*

Lead, *duco, ěre, duxi, ductum.*

Magi, *Magi, ōrum, m. pl.*

Move, excite feeling, *moveo, ěre, movi, motum.*

One, certain one, *quidam, quaedam, quoddam.*

Prayers, *preces, um, f. pl.*

Prediction, *praedictum, i, n.*

Return, *revertor, ěre, reverti, reversum.*

Rise in importance, *emergeo, ěre, emersi, emersum.*

Show, *ostendo, ěre, ostendi, ostensum and ostentum.*

Superior to, greater than, *major, us (comp. of magnus).*

Wound, *vulnus, ěris, n.*

#### 491. EXERCISES.

##### I. Translate and analyze.

1. Tumultuantes milites Alexander ipse sedavit, eosque omnes ad conspectum suum admisit. 2. Darius desiluit et in equum, qui ad hoc ipsum sequebatur, imponitur. 3. Ceteri dissipantur metu, et, qua cuique patebat via, erumpunt. 4. Non solita sacra Philippus illa die fecit; non in convivio risit; non coronas sumpsit; et ita vicit ut victorem nemo sentiret. 5. Accepto poculo, inter bibendum, veluti telo confixus, ingemuit.

II. Construct Latin sentences in answer to the following questions:

1. What state rose in importance after the death of Epaminondas? 2. Why did Philip reside at Thebes? 3. Where did he first engage the Athenians? 4. Who fought at Chaeronea? 5. What were the particulars of the death of Philip? 6. Who succeeded him? 7. Was Alexander in any respect superior to his father? 8. What were the first acts of his reign? 9. What was the result of the battle of Issus? 10. What country did Alexander visit after taking Tyre?

##### III. Translate into Latin.

1. The soldiers showed Alexander their wounds,

and besought him to lead them home. 2. He was moved by their prayers, and hastened to Babylon. 3. One of the Magi besought him not to enter the city. 4. He disregarded the prediction of the Magi, returned to Babylon, and appointed a feast.

## LESSON LI.

*Compound Elements.—Modifiers of Subject, United.*

[142—144.]

492. The several members of a compound sentence frequently differ only in the *modifiers* of their *subjects*; and then these modifiers may be united, and the other elements of the sentence appear but once; e. g.,

Venit Epicūrus, <i>homo minime malus.</i>	<i>Epicurus</i> , the least sinful of men, <i>came</i> .
Venit Epicūrus, <i>vir optimus.</i>	<i>Epicurus</i> , the best of the great, <i>came</i> .
Venit Epicūrus, <i>homo minime malus, vel potius vir optimus.</i>	<i>Epicurus</i> , the least sinful of men, or rather the best of the great, <i>came</i> .

☞ For the use of *potius* with *vel*, see 475, Rem.

## 493. VOCABULARY.

Antigonus, <i>Antigōnus</i> , <i>i</i> , m.	Direct, order, <i>jubeo</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>jussi</i> , <i>jussum</i> .
Antipater, <i>Antipāter</i> , <i>tri</i> , m.	Gaul, <i>Gallia</i> , <i>ae</i> , f.
Aridaeus, <i>Aridaeus</i> , <i>i</i> , m.	Glory, <i>gloria</i> , <i>ae</i> , f.
Call, <i>voco</i> , <i>āre</i> , <i>āvī</i> , <i>ātum</i> .	Majesty, dignity, rank, <i>majestas</i> , <i>ātis</i> , f.
Cassander, <i>Cassander</i> , <i>dri</i> , m.	Ptolemy, <i>Ptolemaeus</i> , <i>i</i> , m.
Claim, <i>vindico</i> , <i>āre</i> , <i>āvī</i> , <i>ātum</i> .	
Demetrius, <i>Demetrius</i> , <i>i</i> , m.	



Regal, *regius, a, um.*

Sardinia, *Sardinia, ae, f.*

Self-control, *moderatio, ōnis, f.*

Victory, *victoria, ae, f.*

Wait for, await, *opperior, ira, opperitus* and *oppertus.*

[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

#### 494. EXERCISES.

##### I. *Translate and analyze.*

1. Castrōrum et exercitus cura Perdiccae assignātur.
2. Septimo mense capta est urbs et vetustate originis et crebra fortunae varietate insignis.
3. Legationes Carthaginiensium ceterarumque Africae civitatum Alexandri adventum Babyloniae opperiebantur.
4. Macedoniae Antipater praeponitur; jubeturque Aridaeus corpus Alexandri in Hammōnis templum deducere.
5. Tunc Perdicca, lustratione castrorum indicta, seditiosos supplicio occulte tradi jubet.

II. 1. *Give in full the sentences united in the above compounds.*

##### MODEL.

Castrōrum cura Perdiccae assignātur.

Exercitus cura Perdiccae assignātur.

2. *Construct two or more Latin sentences differing only in the modifiers of the subject, and then unite them in the form of an abridged compound.*

##### III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Aridaeus, who was king and the brother of Alexander, was directed to assume the name (*be called by the name*) of his father Philip.
2. The glory, both of self-control and of victory, belongs to Ptolemy.
3. Cassander, who was the son of Antipater and who had waged war against Antigonus, claimed for himself the royal majesty.
4. Philip, the son of Demetrius, and king of

Macedonia, sent ambassadors to Hannibal. 5. Ambassadors from Sicily, Gaul, and Sardinia, were awaiting the arrival of Alexander at Babylon.

www.libtool.com.cn

## LESSON LII.

*Compound Elements.—Objects of Predicate, United.*

[145—147.]

495. The several parts of a compound sentence sometimes differ only in the *objects* of their *predicates*; and then these objects may be united, and the other elements of the sentence appear but once; e. g.,

Non *imperium* petimus.

*We do not seek power.*

Non *divitias* petimus.

*We do not seek wealth.*

Non *imperium*, neque (*et non*) *divitias* petimus.

*We do not seek power or wealth.*

Orābant Ubii, *ut Caesar sibi auxiliū ferret.*

*The Ubii asked that Caesar would bring aid to them.*

Orābant Ubii, *ut Caesar exercitū Rhenum transportāret.*

*The Ubii asked that Caesar would transport his army across the Rhine.*

Orābant Ubii, *ut Caesar sibi auxiliū ferret, vel exercitū Rhenum transportāret.*

*The Ubii asked that Caesar would bring aid to them, or transport his army across the Rhine.*

REM.—Observe that when the subordinate clauses are united in the last example, the subject *Caesar* disappears in the second part, because it has been used in the first.

## 496. VOCABULARY.

Aim at, seek, *quaero, ĕre, quaesivi* and *quaesivum*.

Brennus, *Brennus, i, m.*

Infantry, foot-soldiers, *pedĭtes, um, m. pl.,* from *pedes, itis, a* foot-soldier.

Liberty, *libertas, atis, f.*

Neither—nor, *nec—nec; neque—neque.* (See 473.)

Power, domination, *dominatio, ōnis, f.*

Spartan, *Spartānus, a, um;* the Spartans, *Spartāni, ōrum, m. pl.*

## 497. EXERCISES.

I. *Translate and analyze.*

1. Alexander, non juvĕnes robustos, sed veterānos elĕgit. 2. Opulenta regum munĕra magnificentĭa sua et gratam homĭnum voluntātem et Apollĭnis responsum manifestant. 3. Dona et sacerdotĭbus et deo data sunt. 4. Alexander omnes interfĭci, ignemque tectis injĭci jubet. 5. Jamque qui Darĭum vehĕbant equi jugum quatĕre et regem curru excutĕre coepĕrant. 6. Hic dies universae Graeciae et gloriam dominatiōnis et vetustissĭmam libertātem finĭvit.

II. 1. *Give in full the sentences united in the formation of the above compounds.*

## MODEL.

Alexander non juvĕnes robustos elĕgit.

Alexander veterānos elĕgit.

2. *Construct two or more simple sentences differing only in their objects, and then unite them in the form of an abridged compound.*

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The Spartans aimed at (*sought*) power. 2. They did not aim at the liberty of Greece. 3. They aimed at power, but not the liberty of Greece. 4. Did you

not see the king? 5. We saw both the king and his son. 6. You saw neither the king nor his son. 7. The Gauls sought Greece and Macedonia. 8. Brennus sent both infantry and cavalry into Macedonia.

LESSON LIII.

*Compound Elements.—Attributives of Predicate, United.*

[148—150.]

498. The several members of a compound sentence sometimes differ from each other only in the *attributives* of their *predicates*; and then these attributives may be united, and the other elements appear but once; e. g.,

Magnos homines virtūte metimur.		We measure great men by their worth.
Magnos homines non fortuna metimur.		We do not measure great men by their success.
Magnos homines virtūte metimur, non fortuna.		We measure great men by their worth, not by their success.

499. VOCABULARY.

Booty, <i>praeda</i> , ae, f.		Other, the rest, <i>reliquus</i> , a, um.
Either—or, <i>aut—aut</i> ; <i>vel—vel</i> , &c. (See 475.)		Pannonia, <i>Pannonia</i> , ae, f.
Excite, <i>acuo</i> , ēre, <i>acui</i> , <i>acūtum</i> .		Penetrate, <i>penētro</i> , āre, <i>āvī</i> , <i>ātum</i> .
Land, <i>terra</i> , ae, f.		Rock, piece of rock, <i>saxum</i> , i, n.
Not only—but also, <i>non solum—sed etiam</i> .		Sea, <i>mare</i> , is, n. (abl. e or i); by sea and land, <i>terra marique</i> .
Often, <i>saepe</i> .		Spirits, courage, <i>animus</i> , i, m.
Overwhelm, <i>obruo</i> , ēre, <i>obruī</i> , <i>obrūtum</i> .		Statue, <i>statua</i> , ae, f.

## 500. EXERCISES.

I. *Translate and analyze.*

1. Dux Hannibal constituitur, non penuria seniōrum, sed odio Romanōrum. 2. Alexander et virtūte et vitiis patre major fuit. 3. Omnes ante eum reges continentia et clementia vicit. 4. Victus est non virtūte hostili, sed insidiis suōrum et fraude. 5. Ptolemaeus et Cassander contra Antigōnum bellum terra marique instruunt. 6. Brennus quum in conspectu habēret templum, ad acuendos suōrum animos praedae ubertatem militibus ostendēbat.

II. 1. *Give in full the sentences united in the formation of the above compounds.*

## MODEL.

Dux Hannibal constituitur non penuria seniōrum.

Dux Hannibal constituitur odio Romanōrum. ●

2. *Construct one or more Latin sentences with compound adverbial attributives.*

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Brennus excited the spirits of his soldiers by the golden statues and other booty. 2. Did not Cassander wage war both by sea and land? 3. Wars have often been waged both by sea and land. 4. Did not the Gauls go into Italy? 5. They penetrated not only into Italy, but also into Pannonia. 6. The Greeks overwhelmed the Gauls with rocks and arms. 7. Will you go to Athens? 8. I will go either to Athens or to Rome. 9. Have you been at Rome and Athens? 10. I have been at Rome, but not at Athens.

LESSON LIV.  
www.libtool.com.cn

*Elements Common to Different Members.*

[151—153.]

501. The several members of a compound sentence sometimes differ from each other in two or more of their elements, and still have one or more in common. When this is the case, the parts which are common to the several members appear in one of them, but are usually omitted in the rest; e. g.,

*Proximo die* Caesar e castris copias suas eduxit.

On the following day, Caesar led out his forces from the camp.

*Proximo die* Ariovistus partem suarum copiarum praemisit.

On the following day, Ariovistus sent forward a part of his forces.

*Proximo die* Caesar e castris copias suas eduxit, et Ariovistus partem suarum copiarum praemisit.

On the following day, Caesar led out his forces from the camp, and Ariovistus sent forward a part of his forces.

REM.—It will be observed that here the common element *proximo die* appears but once, and that all the other parts retain their positions in their respective members.

502. VOCABULARY.

After (adv.), *post*.

Ancient, *antiquus*, *a*, *um*.

At one time, at a certain time, once, *quondam*.

Beyond, *extra*.

Compel, *compello*, *ere*, *compūli*, *compulsum*.

Elder, greater (in age), *major*, *us*.

Even, *etiam*, *vel*.

Fight, engage (as battle), <i>committo, ěre, commisi, commissum.</i> Limit, <i>terminus, i, m.</i> Lose, <i>amitto, ěre, amisi, amissum.</i> Perseus, <i>Perseus, i, m.</i> Possession, <i>possessio, onis, f.</i>	Receive, <i>accipio, ěre, accēpi, acceptum.</i> Reject, <i>repudio, are, avi, atum.</i> Short, <i>brevis, e.</i> Sue for, seek, <i>peto, ěre, petivi</i> and <i>petii, petitum.</i> Wage, <i>infěro, inferre, intŭli, illatum.</i>
--	---

## 503. EXERCISES.

I. *Translate and analyze.*

1. Alexander aperte, Philippus artibus bella tractabat. 2. Verbis atque oratione hic, ille rebus moderatior. 3. Frugalitati pater, luxuriae filius magis deditus erat. 4. Occiso Demetrio sublatoque aemulo, non negligentior tantum Perseus in patrem, verum etiam contumacior; nec heredem regni, sed regem se gerabat. 5. His ita compositis, Macedoniae et Graeciae Antipater praepositus; regiae pecuniae custodia Cratěro traditur.

II. *Give in full the sentences united in the formation of the above compounds.*

## MODEL.

Alexander aperte bella tractabat.  
 Philippus artibus bella tractabat.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Did the Greeks ever wage war against Philip?  
 2. At one time, all Greece waged war against king Philip, and compelled him to sue for peace. 3. As this peace was rejected (*abl. abs.*) by the senate, a battle was fought, and Philip was conquered, and lost all the states of Greece beyond the limits of his ancient pos-

sessions. 4. Who was Perseus? 5. He was the elder of the sons of Philip, king of Macedonia. 6. A short time after, Demetrius was put to death, and Perseus received the government.

---

## LESSON LV.

### *Classification of Sentences.—Recapitulation.*

[154—156.]

504. Sentences may be divided, according to the form in which the thought is expressed, into three classes; viz.,

- 1) *Declarative Sentences*, which assume the form of an assertion.
- 2) *Interrogative Sentences*, which assume the form of a question.
- 3) *Imperative Sentences*, which assume the form of a command, exhortation, or entreaty.

505. In each of the above forms, sentences sometimes imply passion or emotion on the part of the speaker, and may then be called *exclamatory declarative* if of the declarative form, *exclamatory interrogative* if of the interrogative form, and *exclamatory imperative* if of the imperative form.

506. Again: sentences may be divided according to their structure into three classes; viz.,

- 1) *Simple Sentences*, which express but a single thought, i. e., make but one assertion, ask but one question, or give but one command.
- 2) *Complex Sentences*, which express two or more



thoughts, so related that one or more of them are made dependent upon the others.

- 3) *Compound Sentences*, which express two or more independent thoughts.

### I. SIMPLE SENTENCES.

507. The elements of the simple sentence, as we have already seen, are of two kinds :

#### I. *Principal Elements* ; viz.,

- 1) Subject.
- 2) Predicate.

#### II. *Subordinate Elements* ; viz.,

- 1) Objective Modifiers.
- 2) Attributive Modifiers.

508. These elements appear in two different forms ; viz.,

- 1) *Simple*, i. e., without modifiers.
- 2) *Complex*, i. e., with modifiers.

### II. (a) COMPLEX SENTENCES.

509. A simple sentence may become complex by having one or more sentences substituted for one or more of its constituent elements.

510. A sentence thus used as an element in the formation of a complex sentence, may be itself either *simple*, *complex*, or *compound*.

511. The subordinate character of a sentence thus used may be denoted,

- 1) By a subordinate connective without any change in the sentence itself.
- 2) By a change of form without the use of a connective.

- 3) By a connective and a corresponding change of form.

(b) ABRIDGED COMPLEX SENTENCES.

512. Complex sentences are abridged in two ways :

- 1) A portion of the subordinate clause is omitted ; and the rest remains unchanged.
- 2) A portion of the subordinate clause is omitted ; and the rest is changed to adapt it to its new situation.

REM.—The first case, involving only the ellipsis of a part, requires but little attention, while the second, involving a change of structure, should be carefully studied.

1. *Change in the Form of the Subject.*

513. The subject of the subordinate clause, when changed by abridging the sentence, is put,

- 1) In the ablative with predicate omitted, as after comparatives without *quam*.
- 2) In the ablative absolute with the participle, adjective, or noun, which remains to represent the predicate.

2. *Change in the Form of the Predicate.*

514. (I) The verb-predicate of the subordinate clause, when changed by abridging the sentence, assumes the form

- 1) Of a *Participle*. This must agree with some noun in the principal clause, if the subject is omitted, otherwise it will be in the ablative absolute with that subject.
- 2) Of a *Gerund*.
- 3) Of a *Supine*.

515. (II) Both substantive and adjective predicates

in the subordinate clause, when changed by abridging the sentence, are put,

- 1) When the subject is omitted, in agreement with some noun in the principal clause.
- 2) When the subject is expressed, in the ablative absolute with that subject.

### III. (a) COMPOUND SENTENCES.

516. Compound sentences may be formed by co-ordinating any two or more sentences.

REM.—The sentences, thus co-ordinated, may be either simple, complex, or compound.

517. This co-ordination is of three distinct kinds ; viz.,

- 1) Copulative.
- 2) Disjunctive.
- 3) Adversative.

### (b) ABRIDGED COMPOUND SENTENCES.

518. When the several members of a compound sentence have one or more parts in common, those parts, as we have seen in the last few lessons, generally appear but once in the sentence.

### 519. VOCABULARY.

Achaean, *Achaeus, a, um* ; the  
Acheans, *Achaei, ōrum*, m. pl.  
Aetolian, *Aetōlus, a, um* ; the  
Aetolians, *Aetōli, ōrum*, m. pl.  
Apollo, *Apollō, īnis*, m.  
Arise, *orior, orīri, ortus sum*  
(inflected in most of its parts  
like verbs of 3d conj.).  
As slaves, *sub corōna*, i. e. with  
crowns upon their heads.

Corinth, *Corinthus, i, f.*  
Dagger, *pugio, ōnis*, m.  
Delphi, *Delphi, ōrum*, m.  
From, on account of, *propter*.  
Happen, be effected, *fit, fieri,*  
*factus sum* ; how does it  
happen that, &c., *qui fit ut,*  
&c.  
Individual, separate, *singūli, ae,*  
*a*, distrib. pl.

Invade, <i>invādo, ěre, invāsi, invāsum.</i>	Sell, <i>vendo, ěre, vendīdi, venditum.</i>
Life, <i>vita, ae, f.</i>	Strength, power, <i>opes, um, m. pl.</i>
Make an irruption, <i>irrumpo, ěre, irrūpi, irruptum.</i>	Subdue, <i>subġo, ěre, subġi, subactum.</i>
Mummius, <i>Mummius, i, m.</i>	Temple, <i>templum, i, n.</i>
Perdiccas, <i>Perdiccas</i> or <i>Perdicca, ae, m.</i>	Think of, <i>agġo, āre, āvi, ātum.</i>
Plunder, <i>spolio, āre, āvi, ātum.</i>	Union, <i>conspiratio, ōnis, f.</i>
Put an end to, <i>finio, ġre, ġvi, ġtum.</i>	Very powerful, <i>potentissġmus, a, um</i> (superl. of <i>potens</i> ).

520. EXERCISES.

I. *Translate and analyze.*

1. Perseus victor misit legātos ad consūlem, qui pacem petġrent. 2. Consul Sulpicius non minus graves, quam victo, leges dixit. 3. Dum haec aguntur, Romāni Aemilium Paulum consūlem creant, eġque Macedonġcum bellum decernunt. 4. Spartānis a senātu responsum est, legātos se ad inspiciendas res sociōrum in Graeciam missūros. 5. Apud Achaecos omnia neglecta et solūta fuġrunt.

II. *Construct Latin sentences in answer to the following questions :*

1. Who was made king after the death of Alexander? 2. Who was appointed over Greece and Macedonia? 3. Between which of the generals did war arise? 4. What became of Perdiccas? 5. What people made an irruption into Greece a few years after? 6. Under whom did they invade Greece? 7. For what purpose did they march to Delphi? 8. What were the particulars of their defeat and flight? 9. What became of Brennus?

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. By whom were the Macedonians subdued? 2. Both the Macedonians and Aetolians were subdued by the Romans. 3. The Achaeans were very powerful, not from (*on account of*) the strength of the individual states, but from the union of all. 4. They were conquered by Mummius, the Roman consul. 5. How did it happen that he conquered them? 6. They were defeated, because they were thinking of the booty, and not of the battle. 7. The Romans destroyed the city of Corinth, and sold all its citizens as slaves.

## RULES FOR TRANSLATING.

---

521. TRANSLATION consists in transferring thought and feeling from one language to another. To do this correctly and elegantly, the pupil must both get a clear idea of the exact meaning of the passage before him, and must embody that meaning with its full force in the language into which he is rendering. Thus conducted, the exercise of translating from the ancient classics, those living embodiments of great thoughts and stirring sentiments, those finished models of taste and beauty, becomes, in the highest degree, interesting and instructive. To prepare the pupil for this work, and to form in him thus early the habit of translating into good idiomatic English, is the object of the following rules. They relate to a large class of important idioms found in the Latin, and indicate one or more ways of translating them without doing violence to our vernacular.

---

### I. *Participles.*

522. The participle is much more extensively used in Latin than in English; hence the frequent necessity, in its translation, of deviating from the Latin construction. It must not, however, be supposed that this must always be done, or that it is desirable to attempt it. On the contrary, it often happens that the participles may be more elegantly translated literally than in any other way. The following rules, therefore, whether relating to participles or other subjects, are designed to apply only to those cases in which a literal translation would fail, in point of clearness, accuracy, or elegance, to do justice to the original.

523. Participles in the perfect and future passive may express the action of their verbs *substantively*; they should then be translated by corresponding verbal nouns; e. g.,

Ad Romam conditam.

*To the founding of Rome. (Lit.  
To Rome founded.)*

Ab urbe condita.

*From the founding of the city.*

Post reges exactos.

*After the banishment of the kings.*

524. Participles are sometimes used merely to limit or explain some noun or pronoun; they are then in most instances best translated by relative clauses; e. g.,

Romulus asylum patefecit, ad  
quod multi ex civitatibus suis  
pulsis accurrerunt.

*Romulus opened an asylum to  
which many who had been banish-  
ed from their own states, came.*

In proelio ibi exorto omnes peri-  
runt.

*In a battle which was fought (lit.  
arose) there, all perished.*

525. Participles sometimes state the *time* of an action or event; they should then be translated by a *verb* or *participle* with *while*, *when*, or *after*, by a *noun* with *during* or *after*; or, if in the ablative absolute, by an active participle in agreement with the subject of the leading proposition; e. g.,

Urbem, omnibus delictis exerciti-  
bus, occupavit.

*Having destroyed all their armies,  
he took the city.*

REM.—Sometimes participles, used as above, may be best translated by *on* with a *participial noun*; e. g., Quae re audita, *On hearing this.*

526. Participles may state the *manner*, *cause*, or *reason* of an action or event; they should then be translated by *verbs* with *as*, *for*, *since*, &c., or by *substantives* (including participial nouns) with *by*, *from*, *through*, *in*, &c.; e. g.,

Aqua refluxens eos in sicco reliquit.

*The water in or by subsiding left  
them on dry land.*

Porsena auxilium ei ferente.

*As Porsena furnished him aid, or  
By the aid of Porsena.*

527. Participles may state the *condition* on which a given action or event depends; they may then be translated by *verbs* or *participles* with *if* or *when*; e. g.,

Accusatus damnabitur.

*If he is accused, he will be con-  
demned.*

528. Participles are sometimes used to state a *concession* in connection with a given action or event; they may then be translated by *verbs* or *participles* with *though* or *although*; e. g.,

Is hanc urbem acerrime defensam. | He took this city, though it was  
cepit. | valiantly defended.

529. Participles in the future, whether active or passive, often express *purpose*; they may then be translated by the *infinitive* or by a *participial substantive* with *for the purpose of*, &c.; e. g.,

Ad oraculum Delphicum proficiscitur, consulturus. | He goes to the Delphic oracle to  
consult.

530. Participles may add to a given action or event some *fact* or *circumstance* intimately connected with it; they may then be translated, if in the ablative absolute, by a *verb* agreeing with the *noun* used in the ablative absolute, otherwise by a *verb* agreeing with the *subject* of the proposition in which they stand, and connected with the verb of that proposition by *and*; e. g.,

Rex ei benigne recepto filiam dedit. | The king received him kindly, and  
Medicus nocte venit promittens, | gave him his daughter.  
se Pyrrhum occisurum. | The physician came by night, and  
promised (lit. promising) that  
he would kill Pyrrhus.

531. Participles with *non* may often be best translated by *participial substantives* depending upon the proposition *without*; e. g.,

Non ridens. | Without laughing.

532. Two nouns, or a noun and adjective in the ablative absolute, as they have the participle of the verb *esse* implied though never expressed, may be used in the various ways already mentioned for the ablative absolute of participles, and should be translated accordingly: sometimes, too, a word denoting the *doer* of an action can be best rendered by the word which denotes the *thing done*; thus, instead of *guide*, *commander*, *consul*, *king*, &c., we shall have *guidance*, *command*, *consulship*, *reign*, &c., with a proposition; e. g.,

Duce Fabio consule. | Under the guidance (or command)  
of Fabius the consul.



533. The perfect participle of deponent verbs is best translated by the present participle,

- 1) When it expresses *emotion* or *mental operation*, as the Romans speak of an emotion as past, and we as continuing; e. g.,

Hoc facinus rex *miratus* juvenem | *The king admiring this act dismissed the youth unhurt.*  
dimisit incolūmem.

- 2) When it relates to an action or event which must in strict accuracy precede that denoted by the following verb, and which would yet in English be represented as simultaneous with it; e. g.,

Populus Romae *seditionem* fecit, | *The people made a revolt at Roma,*  
*questus* quod tribūtis exauri- | *complaining that they were im-*  
rētur. | *poverished by tributes.*

## II. Principal Sentences.—Subjunctive Mood.

534. The subjunctive may be used in principal sentences,

- 1) To express a *wish*, *command*, or *entreaty*; it may then be translated by the *imperative*, by the *present potential*, or by some tense of that mood with a particle of *wishing*; e. g.,

Secernant se a bonis. | *Let them separate themselves from the good.*

- 2) To express an affirmation *doubtfully* or *conditionally*; it may then be translated by the *potential* mood; e. g.,

Darent. | *They would give.*

## III. Relative Clauses.

535. The relative clause often defines some indefinite antecedent, either affirmative or negative, and then its subjunctive should be translated by the indicative; e. g.,

Sunt qui dicant. | *There are some who say.*

**EXM.**—The subjunctive in relative clauses introduced into propositions with the subjunctive, or the accusative with the infinitive, is also generally best translated by the indicative; e. g., *Utrum regnum habere vellet, an bona, quae pater reliquisset, Whether he would prefer the kingdom or the property which his father had left.*

536. The relative clause with the subjunctive sometimes denotes *purpose* or *object*; it should then be translated by the *infinitive*, or by *that he* with the *potential may* or *might*; e. g.,

Decemviri creati sunt qui civitati leges scriberent. | *The decemvirs were appointed to prepare laws for the state.*

537. The relative clause with the subjunctive sometimes denotes *result*; it should then be translated by *that he* with *will* or *would*, &c., or by the *infinitive* with *as*; e. g.,

Nec tamen ego sum ille ferreus, qui non movear. | *Nor yet am I so iron-hearted as not to be moved.*

538. The relative clause with the subjunctive sometimes assigns a *reason* for some action or event; it should then be translated by a *subordinate clause* after *because*, or by a *participial substantive* with a *preposition*; e. g.,

O fortunâte adolescens, qui tuæ virtutis præconiæ invenëris. | *O fortunate youth in having found a herald for your bravery, or because you have, &c.*

539. The relative clause with the subjunctive after *dignus*, *indignus*, *aptus*, *idoneus*, and the like, stands in the place of object, and may be translated by the *infinitive* or by a *participial substantive* with a *preposition*; e. g.,

Videtur, qui impëret, dignus esse. | *He seems to be worthy to command.*

540. The relative clause sometimes introduces a *condition* or *concession*; and then the subjunctive should be translated by the *subjunctive* with *if*, *provided*, or *though*; e. g.,

Nulla res vehementius rempublicam continet, quam fides; quas esse nulla potest, &c. | *Nothing tends more to preserve the republic than credit, though this can be nothing, &c.*

#### IV. Final Clauses with Particles.

541. Final clauses with *ut* may be translated by the *infinitive*, or by the *potential, may* or *might*, with *that*; e. g.,

Romulus, ut civium numerum augeret, asylum patefecit. | *Romulus, that he might increase the number of citizens, opened an asylum.*

542. Final clauses with *ne* may be translated by the *infinitive* with *not*, or by the *potential*, *may*, *might*, with *that—not*; e. g.,

Ne vana urbs esset. | That the city might not be empty.

543. In final clauses after verbs of fearing, *ut* and *ne* seem to exchange meanings; *ut* = *that—not*, and *ne* = *that* or *lest*; moreover, the subjunctive present must generally be rendered by the future, *will*, and the imperfect by *would*; e. g.,

Veritus est ne rex bellaret. | He feared that the king would wage war.

544. Final clauses with *quo* may be rendered by the *potential*, *may* or *might*, with *that*; e. g.,

Medico aurum dabo quo sit studiosior. | I will give the physician gold that he may be more attentive.

545. Final clauses with *quominus* (*quo* and *minus* = by which the less, so that the less) may generally be rendered by *participial substantives* with *from*; e. g.,

Regem impediit quominus pugnaret. | He prevented the king from fighting.

546. Final clauses with *quin* may be rendered by *but*, *but that* with the *indicative*; *as not* with the *infinitive*; the *relative* with *not*, or by *participial substantives* with *from* or *without*; e. g.,

Non dubitant, quin dii illud audiant. | They do not doubt (but) that the gods hear this.

### V. Consecutive Clauses.

547. Consecutive clauses with *ut* may generally be rendered by *that* with the *indicative*, or by *as* with the *infinitive*; e. g.,

Ita vicit, ut robur hostium deleret. | He so conquered as to destroy the strength of the enemy.

548. Consecutive clauses with *ut* after *in eo esse*, &c., may be rendered *on the point of*, with a *participial substantive*; e. g.,

In eo erant, ut pacem auro emeret. | They were on the point of purchasing peace with gold.

VI. *Temporal Clauses.*

549. *Quum* with the perfect or pluperfect subjunctive in temporal clauses, may often be translated by the *perfect participle* with *having*; e. g.,

In Capream quum secessisset, eam infamem reddidit sua nequitia.		Having removed to Caprea, he rendered it infamous by his profligacy.
---	--	--

550. *Quum* with the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive may sometimes be translated by the *present participle*. This use of the present instead of the past tense arises from the fact that the English often contemplates two events as simultaneous when one of them in strict accuracy must precede the other, while the Latin is strict to mark their precise order; e. g.,

Quum in Africam venissent, Pœnos vicērunt.		Going into Africa they conquered the Carthaginians.
--	--	---

551. *Quum* with the pluperfect subjunctive in temporal clauses may sometimes be translated by the *imperfect indicative*. This use of the *imperfect* instead of the *pluperfect* is readily explained by reference to the principle mentioned above (see 550); e. g.,

Quum rediisset, respondit.		When he returned, he replied.
----------------------------	--	-------------------------------

552. The subjunctive in temporal clauses should generally be rendered by the *indicative*; e. g.,

Quum tonāret, militibus imperavit, &c.		When it thundered, he commanded his soldiers, &c.
--	--	---

553. The adverb which introduces the temporal clause sometimes has a correlative in the principal clause; this correlative, however, may generally be omitted in translating; thus, *tum—quum* = when. The adverbs, *antēquam*, *priusquam*, and *postquam*, are sometimes separated into two parts, one standing in the principal clause and the other in the temporal; this separation, however, does not affect the translation; thus, *ante—quam* and *prius—quam* = before, and *post—quam* = after; e. g.,

Ante triennium, quam Carthāgo deleretur, Cato mortem obiit.		Cato died three years before Carthage was destroyed.
---	--	--

VII. *Causal Clauses.*

554. The subjunctive in causal clauses may often be best translated by the *indicative*; e. g.,

Quod albis equis triumphasset. | *Because he had triumphed with white horses.*

555. The imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive after *quod* may sometimes be translated by the *participial substantive* with *of* or *for*; e. g.,

Accusatus est quod praedam ini- | *He was accused of having unjustly*  
que divisisset. | *divided the booty.*

VIII. *Conditional Clauses.*

556. In conditional clauses the subjunctive is often translated without the auxiliaries, *may*, *might*, *should*, *should have*, &c. This is especially the case when the condition is represented as impossible; e. g.,

Si quid haberet, daret. | *If he had any thing, he would give it.*

IX. *Concessive Clauses.*

557. The subjunctive in concessive clauses is generally best translated without the auxiliaries, *may*, *might*, &c.; e. g.,

Ille quamvis ridicula essent. | *Although these things were ludic- rous.*

X. *Intermediate Clauses.*

558. The subjunctive in clauses introduced into propositions with the subjunctive, or the accusative with the infinitive, is generally best translated by the *indicative*; e. g.,

Utrum regnum habere vellet, an | *Whether he would prefer the king-  
bona quae pater reliquisset. | dom or the property which his  
father had left.*

XI. *Dependent Questions.*

559. The subjunctive in dependent questions may often be translated by the *indicative*, and the pluperfect tense by the *imperfect*; e. g.,

Quom comperissent, quae mater | *When they had learned who their  
fuisset. | mother was.*

XII. *Infinitive Mood.*

560. The infinitive with the subject accusative must be translated by a *finite* verb with the *subject nominative* in a clause introduced by *that*; e. g.,

Dixit se regem vidiſſe. | *He ſaid that he had ſeen the king.*

561. The infinitive is ſometimes uſed in the place of a finite verb as the predicate of a ſentence; it is then called the *hiſtorical infinitive*, and is translated by the *imperfect indicative*; e. g.,

Iram pater diſſimulãre. | *The father concealed his anger.*

562. The infinitive may ſometimes be rendered by the participial substantive with the prepoſition *of, with, &c.*; e. g.,

Alcibiãdes inſimulãtur myſteria | *Alcibiades is accuſed of having violated the myſteries of Cereſa.*  
Cereſis violãſſe.

XIII. *Miscellaneous.*

563. *Certiõrem facere, lit.* to make more certain, ſhould be translated to *inform*, and *certior fieri*, to be informed; e. g.,

Caesar certior factus eſt. | *Caesar was informed.*

564. *Inter ſe, lit.* between themſelves, is beſt translated by *together*, after agree, compare, &c., but after *contrary, &c.*, it = *to each other*; e. g.,

Hi omnes inter ſe differunt. | *All theſe differ from each other.*

565. *Licet* with the dative and infinitive, is beſt translated by rendering the dative as the ſubject of the potential forms *may* or *might*, with the English of the verb uſed in the infinitive; e. g.,

Mihi ire licet. | *I may go.*

REM.—The preſent infinitive after the paſt tenses of *ſuſt* is often beſt translated by the auxiliary *have*. So alſo after the paſt tenses of *poſſum, oportet, and debeo*; e. g., *Mihi ire licuit, I might have gone.*—*Ire potui, I could have gone.*

566. *Medius, ſummus*, and the like, in agreement with ſubstantives, are often beſt translated by *the middle (the miſt)*, *the top* followed by the ſubstantive with *of*; e. g.,

Medius mons. | *The middle of the mountain.*  
Summus mons. | *The top of the mountain.*  
In media caede. | *In the miſt of the ſlaughter.*

567. *Nec* or *neque* may often be translated by *and not*, sometimes by *not* only, especially in the phrase *neque vero*; e. g.,

*Nec paucos agros urbi adjunxit.* | *And he added not a few fields to the city.*

www.libtool.com.cn

568. *Ne—quidem* with one or more words between the parts, should be translated by *not even*; or *even—not*; e. g.,

*Ne nomen quidem.* | *Not even the name.*

569. *Post*, standing as an adverb between an adjective and its substantive in the ablative to denote *time*, may sometimes be translated by the preposition *after* governing the substantive, but should usually be rendered by *afterwards*; e. g.,

*Paucis post annis.* | *After a few years.*  
| *A few years afterwards.*

570. *Quam ut* with the subjunctive, and *quam ut posset* with the infinitive, should be rendered by the *infinitive*, and the comparative before *quam* by the English positive with *too*; e. g.,

*Leges crudeliōres erant, quam ut possent observari.* | *The laws were too cruel to be observed.*

571. *Qui* at the beginning of a sentence, or at the beginning of a distinct member of a sentence, is generally best translated by a demonstrative or personal pronoun; and if *quum* is used in the same connection with *qui*, it must be translated first; e. g.,

*Quae quum ita sint.* | *Since these things are so.*  
*Qui quum morbo extinctus esset.* | *When he was dead.*

572. *Quo factum est, ut, lit.* by which it was brought about that, *sic factum est, ut*, and similar expressions, may be rendered by, *the result of which was, that*; *the consequence of which was, that*; or by *consequently*; e. g.,

*Quo factum est, ut plus, quam collagae, Miltiades valuerit.* | *The result of which was that Miltiades had greater influence than his associates.*

573. Verbs which are used impersonally in the passive with the dative of the agent, because they have no direct object in the

active, are best translated by rendering the dativo as the subject of the English passive; e. g.,

Vobis creditur.

| *You are believed.*

Mihi creditur.

| *I am believed.*

574. When two or more verbs stand together in the same compound tense, the copula *esse*, to be, is generally expressed with the last in Latin, and omitted with the rest; in the English translation, however, it should be expressed with the first and omitted with the others; e. g.,

Regulus captus et in vincula con-  
jectus est.

| *Regulus was taken and thrown into  
chains.*



[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

## NOTES.

1. **Antiquissimis.** Very early: the superlative is often best <sup>PAGE</sup> translated by *very* instead of *most*. Give the regular endings of comparison. F. B. 306; A. & S. 124; Z. 104. — **Temporibus.** 276; F. B. 669; A. & S. 253; Z. 475. — **In Italiam.** What construction would have been used with the name of a town? 282; F. B. 674; A. & S. 237; Z. 398. — **Janiculo.** A hill on the west side of the Tiber; not one of *the seven* hills of Rome, though included within the wall built by Aurelian in the third century. — **Itales . . . agriculturam.** 235; F. B. 645; A. & S. 231; Z. 391. — **Primus.** *The first*; i. e. *he was the first to teach, &c.*

2. **Hinc.** *Hence*, i. e. *from Troy*. — **Quibus.** 218; F. B. 643; A. & S. 223, Rem. 2; Z. 412. — **Pepercerat.** From *parco*; 2d root formed by *reduplication* and *change of vowel*. F. B. 222 and Rem. — **El benigne recepto . . . dedit.** *Lit. gave to him kindly received*; translate, *received him kindly and gave* (530). — **Lavinium.** Town in Latium a few miles south of Rome.

3. **Transtullit.** From *transféro*. — **Mente Albane.** *Mount Albanus*, about 16 miles southeast of Rome. — **Ejus.** For whom <sup>2</sup> does this pronoun stand? — **Romam conditam.** (See 523.) — **Albae.** 280; F. B. 672; A. & S. 221; Z. 398.

4. **Heram regum.** *Of these kings*, i. e. *of those who reigned at Alba*. — **Jove.** 457; F. B. 636; A. & S. 256; Z. 483. — **Majorem.** Compare. F. B. 306, R. 3; A. & S. 125, 5; Z. 109. — **Quam tonaret.** (552); F. B. 692, 2; A. & S. 263, 5, R. 2; Z. 578. — **Ut . . . percerent.** (541); F. B. 692; A. & S. 262; Z. 531. — **Dicebat.** What is the direct object of this verb? or, in other words, what did he say? *Ans. Hunc sonum multo, &c.* — **Tonitru.** What case would be required if *quam* should be omitted? 457; F. B. 636, Obs.; A. & S. 256, R. 3; Z. 483. — **Ictus, et**

PAGE

2 . . . . *præcipitatus est.* (574) — *Albanum lacum.* *The Alban Lake*, 5 miles in circumference, west of Mount Albanus.

5. *Minor natu.* Lit. *smaller in respect to birth or age*; translate, *younger.* — *Utrum regnum, &c.* This denotes the choice given to Numitor. — *Vellet.* 349, 364; F. B. 692, 5; A. & S. 265; Z. 552. — *Bona.* Lit. *good things* — *goods, property.* — *Reliquisset.* (558); A. & S. 266; Z. 545.

6. *Ut . . . . possideret.* This final clause shows the object which Amulius had in view in killing the son of Numitor. (541;) F. B. 692; A. & S. 262; Z. 531. — *Vestalem virginem.* *The Vestal Virgins* were the priestesses of the goddess Vesta: they ministered in her temple, and, by turns, watched the perpetual fire upon her altars night and day. They were bound by an oath of chastity, whose violation was punished by death. — *Viro.* Indirect object after *nubère*, to marry — *to veil one's self for*, in allusion to the custom of the bride's wearing the veil at the marriage ceremony. — *Hec.* This, i. e. the fact spoken of in the preceding sentence. — *Quum . . . . comperisset.* (552); 492; F. B. 692, 2; A. & S. 263, 5, R. 2; Z. 578.

7. *Quum . . . . positi.* (552.) — *Refuens.* *By or in flowing back.* (526.) — *Sileo.* *Scil. loco.* — *Qued.* (571.) — *Videns.* (525.) — *Sustulit.* From *tollo.* — *Nutriendos.* (529.)

8. *Sic.* *Thus*, i. e. as explained above. — *Quum adolevisset . . . . comperissent.* See note at the close of 6. above. — *Quis.* Subject of *fuisset* understood. — *Fuisset.* (559); 379; F. B.

3 692, 5; A. & S. 265; Z. 552. — *Aventine.* *One of the seven hills of Rome.* According to the best authority, Romulus founded his city not on the *Aventine* as here stated, but on the *Palatine*, which stands a little to the north of it. — *Quum . . . . circumdaretur.* See note at the close of 6. above. — *Moenibus.* Ablative of means. — *Irridens.* *Deriding*: this participle may be thus rendered literally.

9. *Ut . . . . augetet.* This states the purpose or object for which Romulus opened an asylum. (541); 385; F. B. 692; A. & S. 262; Z. 531. — *Asylum.* This was a place of refuge, where exiles and even criminals might obtain shelter and protection. — *Puls.* (524.) — *Civibus.* 218; F. B. 648, 2; A. & S. 224, R. 1; Z. 420, note. — *Quum . . . . venissent.* (552); 402. — *Inter ipsos ludos.* *In the midst of the very games.* — *Spectantes.* (524.)

10. **Romae.** What is the usual construction for names of towns after verbs of motion? 282; F. B. 674; A. & S. 237; Z. 398. — **Ut . . . monstraret . . . ut . . . posceret.** (541.) See also note on the first line of 9. — **Quod . . . gereret.** (558); A. & S. 266; Z. 545. — **Manibus.** Give gender. — **Annules . . . armillas.** Rings and bracelets were often awarded to soldiers who had distinguished themselves in battle. — **Perducti.** (525.)

11. **Tarpeium.** This was one of the seven hills of Rome: it was also called *Capitolinus*. The Capitol was built upon it. — **Forum Romanum.** This was an open space in the form of an irregular quadrangle between the Palatine and Capitoline Hills. In this were held the great public meetings of the Roman people — **In media caede.** *In the midst of the slaughter.* (566.) — **Raptae.** *Sc. mulieres.* — **Hinc . . . hinc.** *On the one side . . . on the other.* — **Ut . . . facerent.** See note on the first line of 9. — **In urbem recepti.** *Lit. received into the city: the meaning is, he received them into full citizenship.*

12. **Cum . . . tum.** *Not only . . . but also.* — **Debitam.** (524.) — **Raptarum.** (524.) — **Lustraret.** *Reviewed: lit. purified,* as there were certain ceremonies appointed for the review of a Roman army. — **Ortam.** *From orior.* (524.) — **Oculis.** 218; F. B. 643, 4; A. & S. 224; Z. 415. — **Hinc.** *Hence, i. e. from the circumstance mentioned above.* — **Alli . . . alli.** *Some . . . others.* — **Interfectum . . . sublatum esse.** (560, 574.)

13. **Quo exacto.** (525, 571.) — **Curibus.** 280; F. B. 672; A. & S. 254; Z. 398. — **Natus.** (524.) — **Ut . . . molliret.** See note on the first line of 9. — **Morbo decessit.** *Lit. he died of disease — he died a natural death.*

14. **Creatus.** (525.) — **Horatiorum et Curiatiorum.** After the necessary preparations for hostilities had been made both by the Albans and the Romans, and the two armies were already drawn up face to face, it was agreed to decide the question of supremacy by a combat between the three brothers, the Horatii, on the part of the Romans, and the three Curiatii, also brothers, on the part of the Albans. The Curiatii were all slain; one of the Horatii survived; his victory therefore decided the question in favor of Rome. See *Schmitz's Hist. Rome.* — **Perfidiam Metli Suffetii.** *M. Suffetius, dictator of the Albans, having been summoned by the Romans to aid them against the Veientes, drew off his for-*

PAGE

- 4 ces at the very moment of battle, and awaited the issue of the engagement. For this perfidy he was put to death, and Alba was razed to the ground. See *Schmitz's Hist. Rome.* — *Quam . . . regnasset.* (559); 402; F. B. 692, 2; A. & S. 263, 5, R. 2; Z. 578. — *Annls.* What is the common construction for duration of time? 277 and R.; F. B. 670; A. & S. 236; Z. 395, 396. — *Ictus.* (525.) — *Domo.* Give gender.
15. *Aequitate et religione.* 301; F. B. 633; A. & S. 250; Z. 457. — *Ave.* F. B. 632; A. & S. 222; Z. 409. — *Nova ei moenia circumdedit.* The same thought may be expressed thus: *novis eam moenibus circumdedit*; in which *eam* is the *direct object*, and *moenibus* the ablative of *means*. See P. C. 231. — *Primus.* See note on 1. — *Morbo ebilit.* Compare *morbo decessit*, in 13.
16. *Adventanti.* Sc. *ei.* (525); 254, R.; A. & S. 224, R. 2. — *Abstulit.* From *aufero.* — *Anguriorum.* 298; F. B. 631; A. & S. 213; Z. 436.
17. *Pupillis.* 218, 4; F. B. 643, 4; A. & S. 224; Z. 415. — *Minorum gentium.* Sc. *patres*, or *senatores.* — *Nec.* (567.) — *Ademptos.* (524.) — *Triumphans.* *Triumphing — in triumph.* The honor of entering Rome with an imposing triumphal procession was, in later times, often awarded to victorious generals. — *Capitellum.* The Capitol was the citadel of Rome, and was erected on the Capitoline Hill. — *Per Ancl filles.* What is the usual construction for the agent after passive verbs? 273 and R. 2; F. B. 659; A. & S. 248; Z. 451.
18. *Genitus.* (524.) — *Conjugi.* 218, 5; F. B. 643, 5; A. & S. 223, R. 2; Z. 412. — *Ut . . . educaret.* (541); F. B. 692; A. & S. 262; Z. 581.
- 6 19. *Dicens.* What is the direct object? — *Regem . . . accepisse.* (560.) — *Ut . . . obediret.* See last note on 18. above. — *Dum . . . convalescisset.* (552); 405; A. & S. 263, 4; Z. 575. — *Montes tres.* These were the *Quirinal*, *Viminal*, and *Esquilina* Hills. — *Primus.* See note on 1. — *Censum.* The *census* was taken every five years for the purpose of ascertaining the number of citizens, the amount of property, &c. — *Capitum.* This need not be translated. — *In agris.* In the country or territory about Rome.
20. *Cul.* 218; F. B. 643, 4; A. & S. 224; Z. 415. — *Curiae.* Senate-house on the eastern side of the Forum. — *Dejectus.*

(525.) — **Quum . . . . fugeret.** (552.) — **Demum.** 283; F. B. 675; A. & S. 287, R. 4; Z. 400. — **Prima.** See note on 1. — **Jacens.** (524.)

21. **Moribus.** Mark difference of signification between the singular and plural.

22. **In.** What cases does *in* govern, and with what significations? 289, R. 1; F. B. 681, R. 1; A. & S. 235, 2; Z. 404, 489. — **Conjurarunt.** Contracted from what? — **Ut . . . clauderet.** (541.) — **El.** *Against him*, indirect object. — **Romae.** 280; F. B. 672; A. & S. 221; Z. 398. — **Regnatum est . . . reges.** Lit. *it was reigned, &c.*; translate, *the regal government was administered by seven kings.*

23. **Tarquino expulso.** (525.) — **Consules.** The consuls were joint presidents of the Roman Commonwealth with all the power and most of the ensigns of office which the kings had assumed. — **Annum.** *For one year.* — **Ne . . . redderentur.** (542); 385; F. B. 692, 1; A. & S. 262; Z. 532. — **Diuturnitatem.** State the force of the termination *itas*, (1) when appended to adjectives, and (2) when appended to nouns. F. B. 519, 517. — **Insolentiores.** *Too haughty*: the comparative is sometimes best rendered by *too* instead of *more*. — **Expulsis regibus.** (525.) — **Acerri-mus.** Compare. — **Sublata est.** From *tollo*. — **Placuerat.** *It had been determined.* — **Ex.** *Of.*

24. **Sese invicem.** *Each other.* — **Qui quum.** *When he.* (571.)

25. **Persona . . . ferente.** (526.) — **Pontem.** Give gender. — **Donec . . . ruptus esset.** (552); 405; A. & S. 263, 4; Z. 575. — **Tiberim.** Give the common ending of the accusative singular for masculine and feminine nouns of the third declension.

26. **Animi.** What other case might have been used? 190; F. B. 624; A. & S. 211, R. 6; Z. 471. — **Castra.** Note difference of meaning between singular and plural. — **Terreret.** *Endeavored to terrify.* — **Allatis.** (523, 526.) — **Miratus.** (533.) — **Terri-tus.** (526.) — **Tusculum.** 282; F. B. 674; A. & S. 287; Z. 398.

27. **Pest reges exactos.** (523.) — **Exactos.** From *exigo*. — **Questus.** (533.) — **Quod . . . exhaustiretur.** (554); 409; A. & S. 266, 3. — **Tributis, militia, senatu.** Explain derivation, with the force of the several endings. F. B. 524, 519, 517. — **Patres. Senators.** — **Turbati.** (526.) — **Qui . . . concillaret.** (536); 367 — **Qui . . . defenderent.** (536.)

PAGE

- 8** 28. *Post exactos reges.* See 27, line 1. — *Coriolanus dictus.*
- 9** See Lesson XIII. — *Urbe expansus.* 289, R. 2; F. B. 681, R. 2; A. & S. 242. — *Urbis.* From the city. — *Nec.* (567.) — *Ut . . . parceret.* (541.) — *Quo facto.* Abl. of means, or cause: for this act; for which or whereupon. — *Exercitum, proditor.* Explain derivation with the force of the several endings. F. B. 520, 521; A. & S. 102, 6, 7; Z. 236, 1, and 237.
29. *Quum . . . gereret.* (552.) — *Duce . . . consule.* (532.) — *Dele.* 226; F. B. 644, 1; A. & S. 245; Z. 465. — *Usl.* (526.) — *Exorte.* (524.) — *Puerilem, cunctatione.* Explain derivation.
30. *Altero.* Lit. *another*; as a numeral, *second.* — *Ab urbe condita.* (523.) — *Qui . . . scriberent.* (536.) The *decemviri* were the authors of the Laws of the Twelve Tables, so called because they were engraved on twelve tables of brass. — *Decemviris.* See 287, 254, R. — *Civitati.* Explain derivation.
- 10** 31. *Tribuni militares.* *Military tribunes*; they were also sometimes called *consular tribunes*, as they were appointed in place of consuls. They were at first three in number; afterwards more. — *Deletis exercitibus.* (525.) — *Triumphos.* See note on 17.
32. *Contra Volentanos.* This limits *bello.* See 190, Rem. — *In qua.* (571.) — *Manibus . . . illigatis.* With his hands bound behind his back. — *Reducendum.* (529.) — *Quibus . . . agerent.* (536.) — *Soclestum, proditorem.* Explain derivation.
33. *Camille . . . datum est.* It was imputed as a crime to *Camillus*, that, &c. For the construction of *Camillo* and *crimini*, see 287, 245; F. B. 649, 658; A. & S. 227; Z. 422. — *Quod . . . triumphasset . . . divisisset.* (554.) — *Fame laborabat.* Was suffering from famine. — *In eo erant, ut . . . emerent.* (548.) — *Auro.* 272; F. B. 667; A. & S. 252; Z. 456. — *Nobilitate, triumphasset, civitate, laborabat.* Explain derivation.
- 11** 34. *Milliarie.* The common construction for *place*, when not expressed by the name of a town, is the ablative with a preposition. — *Magnitudine.* 190; F. B. 624; A. & S. 211, R. 6; Z. 471. — *Provocavit.* *Challenged.* — *Torque.* 254; F. B. 650; A. & S. 251; Z. 460. — *Magnitudine, provocationem, spoliavit.* Explain derivation.
35. *Neve . . . exorte.* (525.) — *Robore.* How may the nominative of this word be formed from the root, and how may the

root be found from the nominative? — **Quum processisset.** (552.) PAGE  
11

— **Armatus.** *In arms.* — **El.** Lit. *to him*, indirect object after *sedē*; best rendered by *his*. — **Ita factum est, ut, &c.** Lit. *thus it was done that, &c.* Render as follows: *the result of which was, that the Gaul, &c.* (572.)

36. **Cum honore dictatoris.** *With the rank of dictator.* The dictator was appointed only in times of great danger, and was invested with almost unlimited power for a period of six months. — **Qui quum.** (571.) — **Magistro equitum.** This is the title of an officer always appointed in connection with the dictator or by him. — **Ne . . . committeret.** (542.) — **Occasionem nactus.** *Taking advantage of a favorable opportunity.* — **Nactus.** From *nanciscor*. — **Confugit.** How is the second root formed from the first? F. B. 219. 12

37. **Annis.** 404, R. 3; A. & S. 236; Z. 476. — **Post.** *Afterwards*, adverb. — **Putaret.** 379; F. B. 692, 5; A. & S. 265; Z. 552. — **Ut . . . frangerentur . . . ut . . . obligarentur.** (541); 388; F. B. 692; A. & S. 262; Z. 531. — **Sub jugum.** The yoke was thus used as the symbol of submission and servitude; it consisted of a spear supported horizontally by two others placed in an upright position.

38. **Devictis Samnitibus.** (525.) — **Quia . . . fecissent.** If this reason had been given on the authority of the narrator, the indicative would have been used. The subjunctive implies that this was the reason then alleged for waging the war. See 409. — **Pyrrhum, auxilium.** 235; F. B. 645; A. & S. 231; Z. 393. — **Pepercerunt.** How is the second root of this verb formed? F. B. 222. — **Quaecunque . . . agerentur.** 426; A. & S. 266, 1; Z. 547.

39. **Pugna commissa.** (525.) — **Mille octingentes.** Could these 13 words be transposed? A. & S. 120, 2; Z. 116. — **Adversis vulneribus.** *With wounds in front*: it was a disgrace to receive a wound in the back. — **Etiā mortuos.** *Even in death.*

40. **Perrexit.** From *pergo*. — **igne.** Give gender. — **Exercitus.** Is this genitive *objective* or *attributive*? See 188. — **Captivus redimendus.** (523.) With *gerund* we should have *captivos redimendo*. 464; F. B. 382. — **Ex. Of.** — **Ut . . . promitteret.** (547.)

41. **Romanorum.** Is this genitive *objective* or *attributive*? 188.



PAGE

- 13** — *Qui . . . peteret.* (536); 367; F. B. 692, 6; A. & S. 264, 5; Z. 555. — *Ut Pyrrhus . . . obtineret.* This clause expresses the *condition* on which Cineas was to ask peace, and may accordingly be regarded as in apposition with *conditiōne*. See 363, R. 2, and 364. — *Ex Italia.* What construction would be used, if the name of a *town* should be substituted here? — *Quum redlisset.* (551.) — *Pyrrho.* Indirect object of *respondit*; the *direct* object is the clause, *se regum patriam vidisse*. See 374. — *Qualis . . . visa esset.* (559.)
42. *Altero.* *Second.* — *Tarentum.* 282; F. B. 674; A. & S. 287; Z. 398. — *Interjecto anno.* (525); 460; F. B. 678; A. & S. 257; Z. 640. — *Nocte.* Abl. of time. — *Promittens.* (530.) — *Vinctum.* *Bound, or in chains.* — “*Ille . . . ab honestate . . . potest.*” This entire sentence, as a direct quotation, is the
- 14** object of *dixisse*. See 373. — *Fusus.* From *fundo*. — *A Tarento.* What is the common construction? — *Quum . . . redlisset.* (549.) — *Apud Argos.* *Near Argos.* What would mean *at Argos*?
43. *C. Duillio . . . consultibus.* (532); 460; A. & S. 257, R. 7; Z. 644. — *Mari.* *Mare* has the ablative sing. in *e* or *i*, while most neuters in *e, al,* and *ar* have it in *i* only. See F. B. 127. — *Mersit.* From *mergo*. — *Romanis.* Objective modifier of *grator*. — *Duillio.* Indirect object after *concessum est*. — *Concessum est.* What is the real subject of this verb? or, in other words, *What was granted to Duillius?* Ans. *Ut, quum a coena rediret, pueri . . . eum comitarentur.*
44. *Paucis . . . interjectis.* (525); 460. — *Translatum est.* From *transféro*. — *Dux.* In apposition with *Hamilcar*. See
- 15** 441. — *Quum . . . venissent.* (550.) — *In fidem acceperunt.* *Received under their protection.* — *Quam quum, &c.* (571.) — *Captus et . . . coniectus est.* (574.) — *Interjectis, translatum est, recepit, amiserunt, acceperunt.* Explain composition. F. B. 513, 550, 551, 553; A. & S. 188, 189; Z. 260, 261.
45. *Carthaginensibus.* 218, 5; F. B. 643, 5; A. & S. 223, R. 2; Z. 412. — *Favit.* How is the second root of this verb formed? F. B. 219. How is this root regularly formed in the second conjugation? F. B. 192. — *Quum . . . victi essent.* (552.) — *Ut . . . proficisceretur, et . . . obtineret.* Verbs of asking take two objects; these clauses may, accordingly, be regarded as one of

the objects of *rogaverunt*. — **Inductus**. (525.) — **Qua**. 276; 15  
 F. B. 669; A. & S. 253; Z. 475. What is the antecedent of *qua*?  
 — **Illos . . . habere**. This infinitive-clause does not strictly depend upon *suasit*, but upon a verb or participle signifying *to say*. The verb or participle on which sentences in oblique narration depend is often omitted, when it can be easily supplied from the context. See *Lat. Prose Comp.* 460, (c). — **Casibus**. Abl. of means. — **Fractos**. (526.) From *frango*. — **Tanti non esse**. This is the predicate. See F. B. 613; A. & S. 214; Z. 426. — **Ut tot millia . . . redderentur**. This is the subject of *esse*.

46. **Puniel**. Derived from *Poeni* — *Carthaginienses*. — **Captae, . . . demersae . . . capta . . . occisa sunt**. (574.) — **Sicilia, Sardinia, insullis**. These ablatives are governed by the preposition *de* in the verb *decesserunt*. See F. B. 681, R. 2; A. & S. 242. — **Citra Iberum**. *On this side of the Ebro, i. e. on the side towards Rome*. 16

47. **Novem annos natum**. Lit. *having been born nine years*; render, *when he was nine years old*. (525); 277; F. B. 670; A. & S. 236; Z. 395. — **Arts**. Indirect object after *admovent*. — **Ille . . . aetatis**. *He, when in his twentieth year*. — **Oppugnare**. Used as object of *aggressus est*. See 374, 447. — **Denuntiaverunt**. This verb, being transitive, may take both a direct and an indirect object: do both these objects appear in the present instance? — **Qui quum**. (571.) — **Mandaretur**. What is the real subject of this verb? — **Reddita**. *Sc. sunt*. — **Saguntinis . . . victis**. (525.) — **Admovent, perenne, oppugnare, indixerunt**. Explain composition.

48. **Fratre . . . relicto**. (525.) — **Pyrenaeum, Alpes**. These accusatives depend upon *trans* in the compound verb *transiit*. F. B. 681, R. 2. — **Traditur**. What is the subject of this verb? — **Se**. Why is *se* used here rather than *eos* or *illos*? A. & S. 208; Z. 125, note. — **Primus**. See note on 1. — **Intereptus . . . caesa sunt**. (574.)

49. **Intellectum erat**. What is the subject? — **Hannibalem**. 17  
 346; F. B. 655; A. & S. 239, 599. — **Mora**. 271; F. B. 666; A. & S. 247; Z. 452, 455. — **Morae**. 298; F. B. 631; A. & S. 213; Z. 436. — **Cannae appellatur**. This is the predicate of the relative clause of which *qui* is the subject. The predicate noun denoting the same person or thing as the subject, must agree with

PAGE

**17** that subject in *case*, though it may differ from it in gender or number, or in both, as in the present instance. — *Victi . . . interemptus est*. Here *sunt* is understood after *victi*. (574.) — *Capti aut occisi*. *Sc. sunt*. — *Qued.* This relative does not relate to any particular *word* as its antecedent, but to the leading proposition, or the fact mentioned in it; the relative is accordingly of the neuter gender, as clauses used substantively uniformly take that gender. See F. B. 44; A. & S. 206, 13.

50. *Pest eam pugnam*. 276, Rem. — *Obtulit*. From *offero*. Here *obtulit* takes *Romanis* as its *indirect* object, while its *direct* object appears in the form of a clause, viz. *ut captivos redimerent*. This is plainly the *offer* made to the Romans. 383, 384. — *Responsum est*. The subject is the clause beginning with *eos*. — *Armati*. (525, 528.) — *Potuisset*. (535, R.); 426; A. & S. 286, 2; Z. 603. — *Hos omnes*. Observe position at the beginning to mark emphasis. — *Manibus*. Gender! — *Detraxerat*. From *deträho*. How is the second root formed? F. B. 208. — *In Hispania . . . Hasdrubal*. See 48, line 1. — *Remanserat*. How is the second root of this verb formed? F. B. 225, 2. — *Duobus Scipionibus*. *Cn. Cornelius Scipio* and *P. Cornelius Scipio*, the father of *P. Cornelius Scipio Africanus* who defeated Hannibal at Zama. See 56. — *Transtulerunt, obtulit, detraxerat*. Explain composition.

51. *Qui legati*. (571.) — *Qui . . . impediret*. (536); 367, 1. — *Que minus . . . trajiceret*. (545); 388; A. & S. 262, R. 9; Z. 531, 543. — *Copias*. Observe difference of signification be-

**18** tween the sing. and plur. — *Penetrans*. (525.)

52. *Res prospere gesta est*. *A successful battle was fought*. In a military sense, *rem gerere* frequently has this meaning. — *Magnam hujus insulae partem*. For arrangement of words, see 330. — *Romam*. 282; F. B. 674; A. & S. 237; Z. 398. — *Inde*. *Thence*, i. e. *Syracüsis, from Syracuse*. — *In Macedonia*. What construction would have been used if this had been the name of a town instead of that of a country? See 280. — *Profectus*. (533, 2.) — *In deditionem accepit*. Lit. *received into surrender*; the meaning is, *allowed the conditions of an honorable surrender*. — *Ita*. Observe position. 334, R. 1. — *Omni Sicilia recepta*. (525.)

53. *Duo Scipiones*. See *duobus Scipionibus* (50), and note on

the same. — **Hic, puer duodeviginti annorum.** *He, when a boy eighteen years of age.* See 458. — **Post cladem Cannensem.** See 276, Rem. — **Deserere.** Object of *cupientium*. — **Cupientium.** (524.) — **Viginti . . . juvenis.** *When a young man twenty-four years of age.* — **Die.** How governed? What is its gender? — **Qua.** Could *quo* be used here instead of *qua*? — **Carthaginiem Novam.** *New Carthage*, a city in Spain founded soon after the first Punic war by Hasdrubal, brother-in-law of Hannibal; its present name is *Carthagena*.

54. **Ab eo inde tempore.** *From this time, or from this time forth: inde* need not be translated. — **In dies.** *Daily.* This differs from *quotidie*, in denoting a daily increase or decrease; here the increase of prosperity (*laetiores*) requires *in dies*. See *Lat. Prose Comp.* 69, t. — **Evocatus.** What does this participle express? i. e. does it serve to state any of the adverbial relations of *time, cause, condition, &c.*, and if so, which one? — **Pugnans.** *Fighting, i. e. while fighting.* — **Plurimae.** Superlative of *multus*: observe comparison. F. B. 306, R. 3; A. & S. 125, 5; Z. 109.

55. **Consul creatus (est).** This is the predicate (229, 230); *con-* 19  
*sul* is the predicate-nominative. — **Creatus, et . . . missus est.** (574.) — **Romam.** 282; F. B. 674; A. & S. 237; Z. 398. — **Qua re audita.** *On hearing this.* (525, R. and 571.)

56. **Tentatam.** (524.) — **Scipio victor recedit.** *Lit. withdrew as victor; render, left the field as victor, or simply, was victorious.* — **Ingenti gloria triumphavit.** Compare *cum ingenti gloria . . . regressus est*, 52. See 271 and Rem. — **Africanus.** This title was conferred upon Scipio in commemoration of his victories in Africa. See also *nomen Asiatici*, 58, and *nomen Africani junioris*, 61. — **Post—quam.** Compound word with parts separated. See 404, R. 2. — **Cooperat.** What kind of verb? Give parts in use. A. & S. 183, 2; Z. 221.

57. **Finito Punico bello.** (525); 458, 460. Which Punic war is meant? See 43 and 47. — **Macedonicum.** *Sc. bellum.* — **Contra Philippum.** Does this phrase modify the subject or the predicate? See 190, R. — **His legibus; ne . . . inferret.** *On these conditions; viz., that he should not wage war, &c.* The clauses, *ne . . . inferret, ut redderet, &c.*, state the conditions or terms on which peace was granted, and may therefore be regarded as in apposition with *legibus*. — **Talenta.** The Attic talent

PAGE

19 was not a distinct coin, but a sum of money usually estimated at about \$1080, though some authorities put it considerably lower.

20 — *Obaldem*. See 229. — *Fluits, superatus, civitatibus, captivos*. Explain derivation.

58. *Se*. Could any other pronoun have been used here? See A. & S. 208; Z. 125, note. — *Junxerat*. Explain formation of second root. F. B. 208. — *Africanus*. See 56. — *Victus*. *Sc. est*. — *Ex Europa et Asia*. What is the construction for names of towns? — *Intra Taurum*. Within the limits of *Taurus*, a mountain-range on the north and east of Syria. — *Triumphavit*. See note on *triumphans*, 17. — *Imitationem fratris*. See 56.

59. *Phillippo . . . mortuo; copulis paratis*. (525). — *Ejus*. To whom does this refer? — *A rege*. F. B. 659; A. & S. 248. — *Cal*. (571.) — *Desertus*. (526.) — *Cum ingenti pompa*. 271 and Rem. Compare *cum ingenti gloria*, 52, and *ingenti gloria*, 56.

21 *Inusitatae magnitudinis*. 190, 441; F. B. 624; A. & S. 211, R. 6; Z. 426, 471. — *Remorum ordines*. Banks of oars; these were arranged, one above another, so that the oars belonging to the highest *ordo* or *bank* were much longer than those belonging to the lowest. It was no uncommon thing for vessels to have four or five banks of oars, and some are said to have had thirty or forty. See *Smith's Dict. of G. and R. Antiquities*. — *Latere*. This ablative is governed by a preposition understood. Explain the formation of the root from the nominative. F. B. 137 2, Rem.

60. *Tertium bellum*. See 43 and 47. — *Altero*. *Secund*. — *Transactum erat*. From *transigo*. See 56. — *Trajecerunt*. *Sc. se*. *Crossea* over. — *Ibl*. *There*, i. e. at *Carthage*. — *Per Scipionem*. What is the common construction for the agent of passive verbs? See 273 and R. 2. — *Tribunus*. Military tribune, but not of the rank of the *military tribunes* described in 31; these last possessed consular power, and were sometimes called *consular tribunes*. The tribune here mentioned was an officer of the army, whose duty consisted in preserving order in the camp, in directing military exercises, and the like. The number of military tribunes to each legion was at first *four*, afterwards *six*. — *Hujus*. Is this genitive *objective* or *attributive*? 188. — *Committere*. Object of *vitabant* understood.

61. *Scipionis*. Which *Scipio*? — *Postquam . . . trajecerant*.

404, R. 2. — **Est creatus, et . . . missus.** What is the common place for copula? 326, R.; (574.) — **Defensam.** (528.) Explain formation of 2d and 3d roots. F. B. 198, and 330, 2, c. — **Sua. As their own.** — **Junioris.** Why this epithet? See 56. How is this adjective compared? A. & S. 126, 4; Z. 113.

62. **Arma movit. Excited rebellion.** Explain formation of roots in *movit*. F. B. 219, 330. — **Ex militibus ejus. Of his soldiers.** — **Ocellis.** (525.) — **Civitatl.** Logically this is in apposition with *Corintho* implied in *Corinthiis*. — **Illatam.** (524.) From *infero*, *n* assimilated before *l* of the third root. See F. B. 550, 6. — **Romae.** 280; F. B. 672; A. & S. 221; Z. 398. — **Scipionis, Metelli, Mummi.** Supply *triumphus* with each of these genitives

63. **Post urbem conditam.** (523.) — **Ut . . . existimaretur.** (547); 422, R. 1; A. & S. 262, R. 1; Z. 531. (*a.*) — **Quam . . . peterent.** (552); 402, 2. — **Responsum est.** What is logically the subject of this verb? in other words, what answer was given? — **Placuisse.** What is the subject? — **Pastor, interfecto, imperator.** Explain derivation, and state the force of this ending.

64. **Exortum est.** From *exorior*. — **Civitate.** See note on *civitati*, 62. — **Victus.** *Sc. est.* — **Jussit.** Could the plural have been used? 483; F. B. 612, R.; A. & S. 209, R. 12; Z. 365. Here *jussit* agrees with *senatus* and is understood after *populus*. 483, R. 3. — **Tradi.** This infinitive depends upon *jussit* in the line above. — **Militem.** Lit. *soldier*, the individual used to represent the class; render, *soldiery*. — **Partim—partim.** Lit. *partly—partly*; render, *either—or*. These words may, however, be often best rendered by *some—others*, followed by of with the objective case. Thus, *he captured some of the many cities of Spain and accepted others, &c.* — **Infringi, corruptum, correxiti.** Explain composition.

65. **P. Scipione . . . consullibus.** (532.) — **Quod . . . interemisset.** (554); 409, Rem.; A. & S. 266, 3; Z. 549. — **Corruptus. Bribed.** — **Ei.** Observe position; it should stand at the beginning for a two-fold reason: 1st, it is somewhat emphatic; and 2d, the subject *Marius* should stand directly before the relative, as in this sentence. — **Triumphantis.** (525.) See note on *triumphans*, 17. — **Vinctus.** *In chains*: explain formation of second root. F. B. 208, and 225, 4. — **Ductus est et . . . strangulatus.** (574.)

PAGE

23 66. *Ab urbe condita.* (523.) — *Exarsit.* From *exardescere*.  
 24 — *Anno.* 277; F. B. 670; A. & S. 236; Z. 395. — *Cum illis.*  
*With them, i. e. with the Roman people.* — *Peraltesum.* Ex-  
 plain derivation, giving the force of the ending *us*. F. B. 530;  
 A. & S. 128, I. 4; Z. 252, 9. — *Fasi fagatique.* *Sc. sunt.* —  
*Cum—tum.* *Not only—but also.* F. B. 451. — *Fudit.* Explain  
 formation of second root. F. B. 219, 1, b. — *Partis.* *Objective*  
*or attributive?* 188. — *Id quod.* *Id* is in apposition with *jus*,  
 or rather with the clause, *jus . . . tribuerunt*, as that states what  
 they had refused to do. — *Jus civitatis.* *The right of citizen-*  
*ship.* — *Bello finito.* (525.)

67. *Anno urbis conditae . . . sexte.* *In the six hundred and*  
*sixty-sixth year from or after (lit. of) the founding of the city.*  
*Urbis conditae* — *post urbem conditam* (see 63, line 1), or *ab urbe*  
*condita* (see 66, line 1). — *Romae.* What case would have been  
 used if this had been a noun of the third declension? 280. —  
*Mithridaticum.* *Sc. bellum.* — *Causam . . . dedit.* For position  
 of words, see 335, Rem. — *Adversus Mithridatem.* This modi-  
 fies *bellum*. See 190, Rem. — *Quum . . . decretum esset.* (552);  
 402, 2; A. & S. 263, 5, R. 2; Z. 577, 578. — *Marius . . . cona-*  
*tus est.* For arrangement of elements, see 325, 332, 333. — *Ei,*  
*honorum.* 254, Rem. — *Cum—tum.* Usual meaning, *not only*  
*—but also; both—and, &c.*; render here, *either—or.* — *Asia*  
*. . . relicta.* (525.) — *Finibus.* 301; F. B. 634; A. & S. 244;  
 Z. 467. — *Civile, merabatur.* Explain derivation.

68. *Unus ex.* *One of; lit. one from.* — *Multos proscripte-*  
*runt.* *Proscribed many.* In the civil wars, Sulla caused lists of  
 the names of those persons whom he wished to have killed to be  
 exposed to public inspection. Those whose names were on these  
 lists were outlawed or proscribed, and any one might slay them  
 and claim a reward; their property was confiscated, and their  
 descendants were excluded from all offices of honor and trust.  
 See *Smith's Dict. of G. and R. Antiquities*; also *Schmitz's Hist.*  
 25 *of Rome.* — *Sanguine.* Gender? — *Civium.* Rule for geni-  
 tive plural? F. B. 141; A. & S. 83, 2; Z. 66. (b.) — *Italicum,*  
*civile.* *Sc. bellum.* — *Sociale dictum est.* This is the predicate  
 of the relative clause. — *Vires consulares.* *Men who had been*  
*consuls, i. e. men of consular rank or dignity* — *ex-consuls.* The  
*consuls, it will be remembered, were two in number, were elect-*

ed for one year, and had all the powers of king. See 23 and note on *consules*. — **Prætorios.** *Those who had been prætors.* When the office of prætor was first instituted, only one was appointed, who was to act as a kind of third consul with the leading part in the administration of justice; about a century later a second was added, called *prætor peregrinus*, to administer justice among foreigners and strangers resident at Rome. The number of prætors was increased from time to time, until at the beginning of the civil wars of Sulla and Marius, it was six; and in the dictatorship of Sulla it was raised to eight. See *Smith's Dict. of G. and R. Antiquities*, and *Schmitz's Hist. Rome*. — **Aedilitios.** *Those who had been aediles.* The *aediles* (from *aedes*) were Roman magistrates who had charge of the public buildings, highways, &c., and acted as city police. They were at first two in number, afterwards more. See *Smith's Dict.* — **Senatores.** The Roman senate (from *senex*) was regarded as a body of *elders* or *fathers* (*patres*). The number was at first 100 (see 12), then 200 (see 17), and finally 300, which continued to be the number until the time of the civil wars between Sulla and Marius. The number was then increased to 500 or 600 by the election of a large body of Roman knights. See *Smith's Dict.*

69. **L. Licinio Lucullo . . . consulis.** (532); 460; A. & S. 257, R. 7. — **Populum . . . heredem.** 229; A. & S. 230; Z. 394. — **Habere.** What other ending for the third plural of the perfect active? — **Victus.** (525.) — **Ut . . . invaderet.** (541.) Why is *invaderet* in the subjunctive and why in the imperfect? 380. — **Ipse eum.** To whom do these pronouns refer? — **Fame consumptum.** *After he had been reduced by famine.* See 525.

70. **Novum in Italia bellum.** Observe position of the phrase, **26** *in Italia*. Is this a modifier of the subject or of the predicate? — **Gladiatores.** Gladiators were men who fought for the amusement of the Roman people. They consisted mostly of prisoners, slaves, and malefactors; they were trained in the skilful use of weapons at schools established for the purpose (*ludo gladiatorio*). — **Capuae.** *At Capua.* — **Hannibal.** Subject of *movit* understood. — **Contraxerunt.** From *contrāho*: explain formation of second root. F. B. 208. — **Proconsule.** The *proconsul*, as the name implies, was one who acted with the power of a consul.



PAGE

**26** Those who had been consuls (*virī consulāres*) were often allowed to assume the government of provinces, and to exercise in these provinces all the powers of a consul; they were then called *pro-consuls*. — *Itallae*. Is this genitive *objective* or *attributive*? 188.

71. *Superatum*. (530.) — *Eidem*. 254, R.; A. & S. 224, R.  
 2. *Eidem*, of course, stands for *Mithridati*. — *Susceptus* . . . . a *Tigrane*. Mithridates, after he was defeated by Lucullus, fled to Armenia, and sought refuge in the dominions of Tigranes, his son-in-law. — *Hujus*. This refers to Tigranes. — *Tigranocerta*. This in the Armenian tongue means *the city of Tigranes*; it was built by Tigranes, and was the capital of Armenia. — *Venientem*. (524.) — *Vicit*. Form second root. F. B. 219, 1, 6. — *Ita . . . ut . . . deleret*. (547); 422, R. 1. — *Deleret*. Form second root. F. B. 192 and foot-note. — *Superatum*, *successor*. Explain derivation.

72. *Per illa tempora*. How does this expression differ from *illo tempore*? — *Maris*. Give rule for ending of *nom. pl.* F. B. 127, Rem.; A. & S. 82, exc. 1 and 83; Z. 65. — *Ut . . . esset*. (547); 422, R. 1. — *Orbe*. Supply preposition. Give gender of *orbe*, stating what it would have been if it had followed the common rule. See *Table of Gender*, F. B. 579; also A. & S. 62, and 63, 3; Z. 77. — *Id bellum*. This war, i. e. the management of it. — *Menses*. Give gender. — *Contra regem*. This modifies *bellum*. 190, R. — *Quo suscepto*. (525, 571.) — *Tantum*. *Only*. — *Neque*. (567.) — *Hausit*. From *haurio*. — *Hunc vitae finem*. For the order of these words, see 330, and for their position at the beginning of the sentence, see 335, Rem. — *Industriae*. What other case might be used? 441; F. B. 624; A. & S. 211, R. 6. — *Annis*. What case more common? 277 and Rem.; A. & S. 236; Z. 395.

73. *Ille se ei*. What nouns are represented by these pronouns? — *Parte*. 254; A. & S. 251; Z. 460. — *Pecunia*. *Sum of money*. — *Quia . . . tulerat; quod . . . recepisset*. These are both causal clauses; why then does one take the indicative and the other the subjunctive? See 409. — *Antiochiae*. 299; F. B. 632; A. & S. 222; Z. 409. — *Libertate*. Ablative of *meaus*. — *Caput*. Lit. *head*; render *capital*. — *Triumphantis*. (525.) — *Praelata*. Sc. *est*. — *Infinite*. Neuter adjective used substantively, *an immense amount*.

74. **M. T. Cicero** . . . . **consullibus**. (532.) — **Generis, ingenii**. PAGE  
28  
What other case might be used? 441. — **Ad delendam patriam**. (523.) — **Quidem**. *Indeed, or it is true.* — **Claris sed audacibus**. 440, 2. *Audacibus is used in a bad sense.* — **Urbe**. 289, R. 2; F. B. 681, R. 2; A. & S. 242.

75. **Anno urbis conditae**. See note on first line, 67. — **Consul**. 201, 203. — **Vincendo**. Gerund; abl. of *means*. 465; F. B. 696, 2; A. & S. 275, III. R. 4; Z. 667. — **Annls**. See note on *annis*, 72. — **Omnem Galliam, quae, &c.** Not all Gaul, but that portion which is bounded as described. — **Ne nomen quidem**. *Not even the name.* (568.)

76. **Contra omina et auspicia**. It was deemed by the ancient Romans the height of folly to engage battle, or to undertake any important enterprise, when the auspices were unfavorable. — **Reliquiae exercitus**. *The remnant of the army.* — **Quaestorem**. There were two distinct classes of quaestors, the one having charge of the public money, and the other serving as prosecuting officers in certain criminal trials. See *Smith's Dict.*

77. **Victor**. *As victor.* — **Rediens**. F. B. 419; A. & S. 182. 29  
— **Absens**. *In his absence, or even while absent.* — **Coept**. Give parts in use. A. & S. 183, 2; Z. 221. — **Poscere**. Explain formation of second root. F. B. 222. — **Quem quum . . . deferrent, contradictum est, &c.** *When some would confer this upon him, &c., opposition (or objection) was made, &c.* — **Dimissis exercitibus . . . redire**. *Having dismissed his army, to return; or to-dismiss his army and return.* (525, 530.) — **Dictatorem**. 229. See also note on *dictatoris*, 36, line 2.

78. **Inde**. *Thence, i. e. from Rome.* — **Hispanias**. *Spain.* The plural is often used, as the country was divided into two parts, viz. *citerior*, on this side of the Ebro, i. e. on the side toward Rome, and *ulterior*, beyond the Ebro. — **Nocte interveniente**. (525 or 526.) — **Nec . . . superari**. This entire clause is the object of *dixit*. 374. — **Nec**. (567.) — **Vincere**. This is the object of *scire*; Caesar said that Pompey did not know (what?) *to conquer, or how to conquer.* — **Ingentibus . . . commissis**. *With great forces engaged on both sides.* — **Pugnatum est**. *The battle was fought.* — **Fugatus**. (525.) — **Ut . . . acciperet**. 385, 386; F. B. 692, 1; A. & S. 262; Z. 531. — **Tutor . . . datus fuerat**. 229, 230. — **Quo conspecto**. *On see-*

PAGE

- 29** ing *this*. (525, 571.)—**Fudisse**. Explain formation of second root. F. B. 219, 1, *b*.—**Generl**. Pompey had married Julia, the daughter of Caesar; while she lived, she was, of course, a strong bond of union between the two, but she had died six years before the battle of Pharsalia.
- 30** 79. **Qua de causa**. For order of words, see 334, R. 2.—**Alexandria**. F. B. 644, 1; A. & S. 245; Z. 465.—**Insolentius**. *Too insolently, or too haughtily*. The comparative is often best rendered by *too*, instead of *more*.—**Conjuratum est**. *A conspiracy was formed*.—**Illius Bruti**. See 23.—**Regibus expulsis**. *After the banishment of the kings*. See 523, 525.—**Confessus est**. From *confodio*.
80. **Perussoribus**. 218, 5; A. & S. 223, Rem. 2; Z. 412.—**A Caesaris partibus stabat**. *Favored the party of Caesar* (stood by the party, &c.)—**Hostis judicatus est**. 229, 230.—**Caesari**. Dative after *fuerat*. 218, 1.—**Magister equitum**. See note on *magistro equitum*, 36.—**Vindicaturus**. (529.)—**Extorsit**. From *extorqueo*.—**Ut . . . daretur**. This is the object of *extorsit*; Caesar extorted from them (what?) *that the consulship should be given, &c.* See 384.—**Juveni**. See 440, 3, and
- 31** 441.—**Daretur**. For tense, see 380.—**Proscriptis**. See note on *proscripsērunt*, 68.—**Per hos**. By whom?
81. **Profecti**. This is in the plural to agree with *Octavianus et Antonius*.—**Secundo**. Sc. *proelio*.—**Victam interfecerunt**. Lit. *they slew (them) being conquered*; render, *they conquered and slew*. See 530.—**Hispanias**. See note on this word in 78.—**Gallias**. The plural is used because the Romans divided the country into two parts, viz. *Gallia ulterior* or *Transalpina*, or *Gaul beyond the Alps*; and *Gallia citerior* or *Cisalpina*, or *Gaul on this side of the Alps*; i. e. on the side toward Rome.
82. **Repuclata sorore**. (525.) Antony had married Octavia, the sister of Octavius.—**Uxorem duxit**. *Married*, lit. *lead as wife*, in allusion to the custom of the bride's being conducted to her new home by her husband and friends. See note on *nubere*, 6.—**Qui locus**. The relative here has only the force of an adjective.—**Quam**. This has the force of *postquam* (after). After designations of time, *quam* is not unfrequently thus used.—**Ex eo inde tempore**. See note on 54, first line.—**Ante**. Adverb, *before, or previously*.

83. *Idem*. Lit. *the same*; *idem* may sometimes be best rendered by *likewise*, at the same time, at once. Thus rendered the passage will stand, *Nero, being at once the step-son, the son-in-law, and the heir of Augustus*. — *Totus*. Here best rendered by *wholly*; thus, *totus . . . diversus* — wholly unlike. — *Ingenio*. What other case might be used? — *Fingendis virtutibus*. *In feigning virtues*. (523.) — *Moderata*. *Sc. sunt*. — *Petulantiae*. Indirect object after *obstitum (est)*. — *Petulantiae . . . obstitum*. *His petulance was somewhat checked, &c.* The two negatives, *non* and *nihil*, are equivalent to an affirmative. — *Per speciem amicitiae*. *Under the guise of friendship*. — *Regni*. Genitive of the crime or charge after *suspectum*. — *Affectati . . . suspectum*. *Whom he suspected of aiming at the throne*. (523.) — *Praefecti praetorii*. *The prefect (or commander) of the praetorian guards who protected the person of the emperor*. — *Quam secessisset*. (549.)

84. *Germanico*. A. & S. 246; Z. 451. — *Caligula*. This name is a diminutive from *caliga*, a kind of half-boot worn by the Roman soldiery: this surname was given to the emperor in allusion to the fact that from early youth he had been employed in military service. — *Tiberio*. 457; F. B. 636; A. & S. 256; Z. 483. 83  
— *Palatio*. *Palace*; *Palatium, the Palatine hill*, was the place where the Roman emperors and the most distinguished citizens had their residences; hence the term *palatium* came to be applied to any royal mansion or palace.

85. *Ad ludibrium reservatus*. When Caligula caused his own brother to be put to death, he spared Claudius (*ad ludibrium*) to make sport of him. — *Gestas*. (524.) *Res gestae* is a common expression for *exploits, achievements, &c.* — *Triumphantem*. (525.) — *Caesar ipse*. *The emperor himself*. — *Laevum . . . latus*. Lit. *covered his left side*; render, *walked on his left*. — *Illud*. *Sc. fecit*. — *Tenet fama*. *The report is, that, &c.*; *tenet* takes the following clause as its object. — *Datum*. *Sc. esse*.

86. *Avunculo*. F. B. 632; A. & S. 222; Z. 409. — *Se similem*. See 229, Model, Rem. — *Ad haec*. This has the force of *praeterea*, and may be rendered *moreover, in addition to these things, &c.* — *Ansus*. From *audeo*. (526.)

87. *Caesar . . . creatus*. *Having been made Caesar, i. e. emperor*. 34  
*peror*.

PAGE

- 34 88. *Eo*. F. B. 636; A. & S. 256; Z. 483.  
 89. *Jugulatus*. (530.)  
 90. *Obscure quidem natus*. *Of obscure birth indeed*. — *Optimis comparandus*. *Worthy to be compared with the best*. *Optimis* is the indirect object. — *Pecuniae*. A. & S. 213; Z. 436. — *Ita ut . . . auferret*. *Yet so as not to take it from any one unjustly*. — *Eam nulli*. 254, R.; A. & S. 224, R. 2. — *Auferrent*. Compounded of *ab* and *fero*; observe change in preposition. — *Placidissimae lenitatis*. He was a man of the most undisturbed lenity. — *Ut qui*. *As being one who*; it may be rendered, *so much so, that*. — *Accessit*. *Was added*. — *Egerant*. *Had acted or lived*.
91. *Offensarum*. 298; A. & S. 213; Z. 436. — *Dicta*. (524.) — *Triumphavit*. See note on this word in 17.
92. *Generis*. Is this genitive objective or attributive? 188 — *Qua antea*. *As before*. — *Ut negaret*. (547.) — *Quemquam . . . discedere*. This clause is the object of *negaret*. — *Nihil . . . praestitisse*. This is the object of *recordatus fuisset*.
93. *Postquam*. Compound word with its parts separated; render, *after*. — *Biennium*. 277, and 404, R. 3; A. & S. 253, R. 1; Z. 395. — *Eo mortuo*. *At his death*. — *El mortuae*. *To him, when dead*.
94. *Ipsius*. Domitian was the brother of Titus. — *Patri*. This depends upon the adjective understood after *quam*. — *Progressus*. (526.) — *Ex senatu*. *Of the senate*. — *Dominum se appellari*. 229. — *Unam*. *Sc. expeditionem*. — *De Dacis, &c.* *For his victories over the Dacians, &c.* — *Solam lauream*. *The laurel branch only* (i. e. merely); victorious generals sometimes carried a laurel branch to the Capitol, instead of celebrating a triumph. — *Vespillones*. These were the corpse-bearers who carried out the dead bodies of slaves and poor citizens at night.
- 37 95. *Athenas*. In apposition with *nomen*. — *Aquarum Illuvies*. *The flood*. — *Sub quo*. *Under whom*, i. e. in whose time. — *Triptolemo*. He is said to have been the inventor of the arts of agriculture, and is represented, by the aid of Ceres, to have distributed corn to the different parts of the earth. — *Initiorum*. *Lit. beginnings*; render, *mysteries*. These were the mysteries of Ceres, generally celebrated with great secrecy, and sometimes

at night; hence the expression in the text, *noctes initiōrum sacratae* — *Cui quum*. (571.) — *Quum . . . successisset*. (552.) This is an adverbial attributive clause denoting *time*. See 397. — *Astu*. The city, applied especially to Athens. — *Quod appellatur*. Lit. *which it is called*; render, *as it is called*.

96. *Moenibus . . . sepsisse*. Lit. *to have surrounded*, &c.; the meaning is, *that he induced them to live in towns and be governed by fixed laws*. — *Generis*. *Sons-in-law*. These were the sons of Aegyptus, the brother of Danaus; they are said to have been murdered by their brides at the instigation of their father-in-law, who suspected them of aspiring to the throne. One of the daughters is generally represented as having disobeyed her father and spared her husband. — *Deductis colonis, &c.* *Led colonists into the Peloponnesus, and gave the country its name*. (530.)

97. *Concussa est*. From *concutio*. — *Pulsi*. (526.) — *Athenas*. 282. — *Acer belli*. *Valiant in war*. 298.

98. *Ea tempestate*. What other expression might have been used? — *Generis regii*. Lycurgus was the brother of Polydeces king of Sparta. — *Viris*. 299. — *Cajus*. (571); 298. — *Obsequia principum*. *Submission to rulers*; *principum* is the objective genitive. See 188. — *Justitiam imperiorum*. Lit. *justice of*, &c.; render, *just government or administration*. — *Ut . . . agerent*. Object-clause, indirect object. See 385. — *Nubere*. See note on *viro*, 6. — *Ut uxores, &c.* *That wives and not money might be chosen*, i. e. that wives might be selected for their good qualities, and not for their money. — *Quoniam . . . videbat*. Causal clause; why does it take the indicative? See 409. — *Jurejurando*. From *jusjurandum*, a compound with both parts declined. See A. & S. 91. — *Nihil de ejus legibus*. *None of his laws*. — *Prinsquam reverteretur*. A temporal clause. — *Consultarum*. (529.) — *Quid . . . videretur*. An object-clause.

99. *Ad excitandam . . . virtutem*. (523, 529.) — *Auctore Iphito*. (532.) Iphitus revived the Olympic games, and from his time they were celebrated regularly. He was not, however, strictly the founder of them, as may be inferred from the next sentence in the text. — *Antequam conderetur*. See 400. — *Septuaginta*. Different dates are assigned for this event; some

PAGE 34

88. Eo. F B

89. Jugulatus.

90. Obscure q

mis comparand

is the indirect

Ita ut . . . . .

justly. — E.

rent. Con

tion. — P.

disturbed in

35 dered, so m

Had acted

91. Offens

— Trium

92. Gen

— Qua a

quam . . . . .

Nihil . . . . .

93. Post

render, af

36 R. 1; Z 3

him, when

94. Ipsius

This deper

Progressus.

so appellari.

&c. For h

The laurel

times carri

www.libtool.com.cn

[Faint, mostly illegible text from the reverse side of the page, including fragments of Latin and English words.]

103. **In ipso apparatu.** *In the midst of his very preparations,* PAGE  
43  
i. e. while actually engaged in preparing for a second invasion.  
— **Navium longarum.** *Ships of war,* called *longae* because they were built much longer than the ships of burden (*onerariarum*).  
— **De adventu.** This is an attributive modifier of *fama*,—the report of his approach. See 190, Rom. — **Peti.** *To be aimed at.* — **Consultum.** Supine expressing purpose. See F. B. 676; A. & S. 276, II; Z. 668, 2. — **Respondit.** This verb has the clause, *ut . . . munitent*, as object. See 383, 384. — **Id . . . valeret.** What this answer meant. — **Ut . . . conferrent.** This clause is the predicate after *esse*, as it states what the design was. — **Salamina.** Accusative in *a* in imitation of the Greek. — **Majoribus natu.** *Old or aged men, elders.* — **Sacra procuranda.** (523, 529.)
104. **Dimicari.** This is the true subject of *placēbat*. — **Qui . . . occuparent.** *To take possession of, &c.* (536.) See also 367.  
— **Ducentae.** *300 naves.* — **Ne . . . circumiretur.** Final 43  
clause; see 367, R. 2. — **Quo factum est, ut.** (572.)
105. **Astu.** See note on this word in 95. — **Themistocles unus restitit.** *Themistocles alone stood firm, objected.* — **Universos.** *All together, united.* — **Summae.** Dative depending upon *praerāt*. 218, 2. — **De servis suis, quem, &c.** *One of his servants, whom, &c.* — **Suis verbis.** *In his words, i. e. in his name, from him.* — **Nuntiare.** This verb has *ei* as its indirect object, and all the rest of the sentence after *verbis* as its direct object. See 240, 374. — **Hoc eo valebat.** *The object of this was.* — **Barbarus.** *Xerxes.* — **Contra.** *On the contrary, on the other hand.*
106. **Hic etsi . . . gesserat.** *Although he had fought an unsuccessful battle.* This clause expresses concession; see 418. — **Ut . . . posset hostes.** See 422. — **Ab eodem.** *By the same one,* i. e. Themistocles: *eodem*, it must be observed, does not belong to *gradu*. — **Gradu.** *From his position.* — **Ne . . . perseveraret.** This is the object of *verens*. 384. — **Id agi.** *Lit. that it was doing; render, was in contemplation.* — **In Hellesponte.** *Over the Hellespont.* — **Altera.** *Second.* — **Post . . . memoriam.** *Within the recollection of man.*
107. **Quam.** — *postquam.* — **Duce Pausania.** (532.) — **Quo proelio.** (571.) — **Interfectus est.** *Destroyed, cut in pieces.* — **Suo ductu . . . dedisse.** This clause is in apposition with



PAGE

**44** *sententia*. — *Victoriae*. This genitive depends upon *eryo*, which **45** may be regarded as a substantive in the ablative. — *Quamque . . . uterentur*. This is a causal clause; explain mood; see 409. — *Id fieri*. Object of *vetarent*.

108. *Sociorum*. Objective genitive. — *Fatigati*. (526.) — *Ducibus Lacedaemoniis*. (532.) — *Invidentibus* (524.) — *Quo*. Ablative after *gravius*. F. B. 636; A. & S. 256; Z. 483. — *Periculis*. Pericles, a distinguished orator and statesman of Athens, directed the counsels of his state for many years. — **46** *Quod intelligens*. (571.) — *Agros reipublicae dono*. 245; F. B. 649; A. & S. 227, R. 1; Z. 422. — *Navali proelio dimicatum est*. Lit. *it was fought*, &c.; render, *a naval battle was fought*. — *Nom nisi*. *No more than, only*. — *Ex sociorum persona*. *In the person of their allies*: these had never concurred in the peace.

109. *Exorto*. From *exorior*. (524.) — *Illi*. To whom does this refer? — *Duces*. Predicate nominative. — *Ut . . . essent*. (547.) See also 422. — *His terrori, quibus auxilio*. 257

110. *Alcibiades revocatus esset*. Alcibiades was accused of revealing the mysteries of Ceres—a crime punishable by death — *Secundo Marte pugnant*. Lit. *they fight, Mars being propitious*; render, *they fight successfully*. — *Urbi*. 237, 240. —

**47** *Fracti*. 526. — *Quum . . . audivisset*. (549, 550.) — *Inclinato*. *Sinking, unfavorable*: the figure is taken from a building just ready to fall. — *Tertio*. Sc. *proelio*.

111. *Lacedaemone*. What construction would be required with the name of a country? 282. — *Quo cogito*. *On ascertaining this*. — *Amisiss*. (524.) — *Ex utraque parte*. *On each side*. — *Afflictae*. (528.) It will be observed that the participle expressing *concession* here retains the connective *quamvis*. — *Pudore male actae rei*. *From shame at his want of success, or bad management*. — *Relictas*. (524.) — *Partim—partim*. *Either—or; some—other*; the meaning is, *he either took or killed, or better, he took some and killed others*.

**48** 112. *Alcibiades cum duce, &c.* Alcibiades was at this time in exile, having fled for his life, when he was recalled from his command in Sicily and learned that he was already under sentence of death. See 110, line 1, with note on the same. — *Qui quum*. *When this*, i. e. the senate. 571. — *Crudeliter . . . consuleret*. *Adopted cruel measures against the people, acted cru-*

*elly towards them.* — *Se . . . redderent.* This entire clause is the object of *scripsit.* — *Quum . . . nequissent.* Explain mood and tense. 402, 380. — *Intestino malo.* The senate, the four hundred. — *Perrexit.* From *pergo.*

PAGE  
48

113. *Quam plurimas.* *Quam* before a superlative is intensive, and is often best rendered by *possible*, as *quam plurimas, the greatest possible number, as many as possible*, or sometimes *very many.*

114. *Darius.* This was *Darius the Second*, and of course not the one spoken of in 101, 102, 103. — *Ut . . . mitterent.* Consecutive clause; explain mood and tense. 422, 380. — *In . . . locum.* *To take the place of, to succeed.*

115. *Navibus.* 218, 2; F. B. 643; A. & S. 224, R. 1. — *Proe-His adverso Marte pugnatis.* Lit. *battles fought, Mars being adverse*; render, *having lost battles, or, having fought unsuccessfully.* — *Praedatum.* Supine. — *Delevit.* *Destroyed — put an end to.* — *Res . . . inclinata est.* The power of the Athenians was utterly overthrown. See note on *inclinato*, 110.

116. *Neque.* *Not*; this is usually the best translation of *neque* when followed by *et.* — *Novae.* Sc. *copiae*, stores, supplies. — *Quae.* *This.* (571.) — *Nomen Atheniensium.* *The Athenian name — the Athenian state or nation.* — *Passuros.* What is the object? — *Duobus oculis.* *The two eyes*; these were *Athens* and *Sparta.* — *Longi muri brachia.* Reference is here made to the long walls which connected Athens with its ports. See 107, "*Phalerico portus*," "*Piraeici portus.*"

PAGE  
49

117. *Dediti.* *Devoted to, devoted to the interests of.* — *Quo factum est, ut, &c.* (572.)

PAGE  
50

118. *Praepositi a Lacedaemoniis.* This is an example of the abridged clause. See 440. — *Quod.* This relative, it will be observed, does not agree with its antecedent, but with the predicate-nominative *castellum.* See *Lat. Prose Comp.* — *Oppugnare.* Abridged object of *sunt adorti.* See 447. — *Jacentem.* (524 or 525.) — *Neminem . . . spillavit.* 254. — *Quorum.* The common construction requires the ablative with verbs of  *plenty and want*; the genitive is occasionally used.

119. *Quibus praefectus fuit.* See 114. — *Ad se accessitum . . . vixit.* *Summoned him into his presence and bound, &c.* See (530). — *Interfecisset, nisi . . . prohibuisset.* Explain mood

PAGE  
51

PAGE

**52** and tense. 414, 416. — **Parare**. Observe that the subject of the infinitive is omitted, being the same as that of the principal verb *coepit*. See 447. — **Imprudens**. *Too imprudently*. — **In auxilio, &c.** *In the service of*. — **Per Indomitam nationem revertantur**. This remarkable achievement is known in history as the "Retreat of the Ten Thousand."

120. **Jubet . . . discedere**. What mood is generally used after verbs of ordering, commanding, &c. ? — **Pro heste**. *As an enemy*. — **Faceret Sc. iter**; *was travelling through*. — **Cadmeam**. This was the citadel of Thebes. — **Quo . . . resisterent**. Explain the use of *quo*, also mood and tense. 386, 380. — **Laconum rebus studebant**. *Favored the interests of the Laconians*. — **Neque eo magis**. *Lit. nor the more on this account*, i. e. still they did not restore, &c. — **Liberandae patriae**. *Of liberating his country*. (523.) — **Idem sentiebant**. *Entertained the same*

**53** *opinions*, i. e. belonged to the same party. — **Eum**. This belongs to *diem* above. — **Vesperascente coele**. *At the approach of evening*. — **Pervenit**. Give the subject. — **Usque eo**. *So utterly*. — **Duce Pelopida**. *Under the guidance of Pelopidas*. (532.)

121. **Satis haberent**. *Lit. regarded it sufficient*; *render, were satisfied*. — **Imperator**. *When commander, or when in command*; a noun in apposition being frequently the representative of a temporal clause which has been abridged, should sometimes be introduced in the translation by *when*. See 458. — **Inquit**. Give object.

**54** 122. **Quod**. This agrees with the predicate-nominative *caput*. See note on *quod*, 118. — **Ante eum natum**. *Before his birth*. (523.) — **Effectum est**. Give subject. — **Obses . . . demoritur**. How may this abridged clause be filled out? See 440, 458.

123. **Robur Thessalorum equitum**. The Thessalian cavalry was regarded as the best in Greece.

**55** 124. **Olim destinato**. This may be regarded as a form abridged from the relative clause. See 440.

125. **Prædandi**. Gerund, governed by *causa*; see 443. — **Virtute . . . præstantes**. Abridged clause; explain; 440. — **Antea infestissimas**. Abridged clause; explain; 440. — **Adversis vulneribus**. *With wounds in front*: it was a disgrace to receive a wound in the back. See same expression in 39. — **Tuenda**. *To defend, to be defended*. (529.)

126. **Quantum . . . fuit.** Lit. *as much as was in him*; render, **PAGE**  
*as far as was in his power.* — **Ad formandum . . . statum.** See **56**

451. — **Dubium erat.** This is the predicate affirmed of the following clause as **subject.** **libtool.com.cn**

127. **Ad ludos spectandos.** *To witness the games.* (529.) See also 451. — **Attalo.** One of Philip's generals. — **Honoratum . . . adversarium.** See 449. — **Poterat.** Sc. *exigere.*

128. **Vincendi.** 442. — **Hic—ille.** When *hic* and *ille* are **57**  
thus used in reference to two persons or objects just mentioned, *hic* usually refers to the *latter* and *ille* to the *former*. — **Gaudere.** This is an instance of what is called the *historical infinitive*, and should be rendered by the *imperfect indicative*. A. & S. 209, R. 5; Z. 599, N. Several other examples of the *historical infinitive* occur in this paragraph. — **Amari.** This depends upon *malle*. — **Parcendi.** 298, 443. — **Victis.** Participle used substantively and governed by *parcendi*. 218. — **Nec.** (567.)

129. **Proficiscens.** (525.) — **Opes.** Object of *cogitabant* understood; construed literally the passage would read thus: *they thought of nothing if not the riches*, i. e. *if they did not think of the riches, &c.*; render, *they thought of nothing except the, &c.* — **Invitae.** Best rendered by the adv. *unwillingly.* **58**

130. **In exercitu . . . duae.** Observe that the *copulative connectives* between the several subjects are omitted. 487. — **Electos.** See 449.

131. **Caeso rege.** Lit. *by the king slain*; render, *by slaying the king.* (523.) — **Confossi, efferati.** (526.) — **Ad hoc ipsum.** **59**  
*For this very purpose.*

132. **Macedonum erat.** *Was the property of the Macedonians*; *erat* agrees with *Phoenice*, and is understood after *Syria*. — **Sibi . . . impedimento.** 257; A. & S. 227; Z. 422. — **Occlusos.** (530.) — **Exceptis.** This agrees with the omitted antecedent **60**  
of *qui*. — **His . . . nuntiatis.** This ablative absolute is an abridged concessive clause. (528.) See also 458. — **Opem a diis, &c.** *To seek aid from the gods*, i. e. by taking refuge in their temples. — **Quantumque . . . sit.** Subject of *potest*. — **Trucidati sunt.** Observe that the *participle* does not agree in gender with the subject *millia*, but with *viri* or *homines* implied in that subject.

133. **Aegyptii . . . perterriti.** This is a compound sentence

PAGE

- 60** consisting of two members, each of which is an abridged complex sentence. — *Ventum est*. Impersonal verb. — *Consecratam deo, undique . . . contactam*. Abridged attributive clauses limiting *sedem*. See 440. — *Maximus natu*. The eldest. —
- 61** *Destinaret*. Explain mood and tense. 379, 380. — *Aequo . . . compositus*. Abridged clause; explain. — *Colendi*. Gerund, depending upon *auctor*. 443.
134. *Principes*. In apposition with *legatos*. 440. — *Néque*. (567.) — *Neque . . . Halym*. In the previous offers of Darius, this river was designated to be made the boundary of Alexander's dominions. — *Inquit*. What is the direct object of this verb?
- 62** 135. *Non alias*. *On no other occasion*. — *Altior*. *Unusually deep*. — *Nec aut Persae aut Macedones, &c.* Compound sentence abridged; subjects united; 482. — *Cedere, laxare*. Historical infinitives; see note on *gaudere*, 128.
136. *Recuperandae libertatis*. (523.) — *Quem*. (571.) — *Dux . . . relictus*. Abridged relative clause. 440. — *Dantes*. 449.
- 63** 137. *Bacchantium more*. The votaries of Bacchus at their feasts indulged in various boisterous revels.
138. *Faceret*. *Sc. ut*. — *Ostendere*. Historical infinitive; see note on *gaudere*, 128. — *Allus—alius*. *One—another*.
- 64** 139. *Revertenti*. *To him on his return, or on his way home*. — *Carthaginiensium . . . Sardiniae, &c.* Compound attributive modifier of *legationes*. — *Nonnullas*. *Sc. legationes*. — *Totus*. Best rendered adverbially, *utterly, entirely*. — *Inter bibendum*. *While drinking*; an abridged temporal clause. 461.
140. *Aeacldarum*. Alexander was, by his mother, a lineal descendant of Aeacus the grandfather of Achilles. — *Dignissimum*. Adjective used substantively; object of *facere* understood. —
- 65** *Judicio*. *By a tacit decision, opposed to voce*. — *Electus esse*. 436.
141. *Quo die*. *The day in which*; the relative here must not be rendered according to 571. — *Alterius—alterius*. *The one—the other*; *sc. victoriae*. — *Quadrigas*. Chariots and horses were often sent to the Olympic games to contend for prizes. — *Puer*. *When a boy*. — *Tantum . . . fiducia fecit*. *He inspired his soldiers with such confidence*.

142. **Appellant, legunt et jubent.** Compound sentence abridged by uniting predicates. 486. — **His deducere.** This compound sentence should be carefully examined. It consists of four complex members, having the abridged subordinate clause, *his ita compositis*, common to each, with principal clauses as follows; viz., the first an abridged compound with objects (*Macedonias et Graeciae*) united; the second simple; the third abridged compound with objects (*Meleagro et Perdiccae*) united, and also with modifiers of subject (*castrorum et exercitus*) united; and the fourth complex. — **Lustratione.** This was a review accompanied with expiatory sacrifices.

143. **In duas partes.** The disputes of Perdiccas and Antigonus resulted in the formation of two hostile parties. — **Victoriae.** This depends upon *gloria* understood. — **Familliam.** *Retinuit of attendants or slaves.* — **Dicens.** Explain direct object.

144. **Iterato, adv. — iterum.** *Again, a second time.* — **Con- greditur et . . . refugit.** Compound predicate. — **Cassander et Lysimachus.** Compound subject.

145. **Ducibus Spartanis.** *Under the guidance of the Spartans.* (532.) — **Quod . . . occupassent.** This is the alleged cause, and accordingly depends upon *praetendentes*.

146. **Hortante . . . successu.** Lit. *success prompting them;* render, *encouraged or prompted by their success.* — **Alli—allii.** *Some—others.* — **Ut . . . mercarentur.** Consecutive clause; see 421, 422. — **Non laecessiti.** *Without being attacked.* (531.)

147. **Delphos.** 282. — **Munera.** Observe the various modifiers of this subject. — **Magnificentia sua.** *By their magnificence;* abl. of means. — **Voluntatem et . . . responsa.** Compound object.

148. **Statuas cum quadrigis.** These were the statues of those who had won prizes in the chariot races at the Pythian games. — **Solide . . . esse.** *That they were cast from solid gold.* — **Spel.** This depends upon *plus.* — **Dils antesignanis.** *With the gods as their champions or leaders.* — **Nec. Not.** — **Imbres . . . et pervigilliae.** Compound subject.

149. **Salutis latebras.** *A place of safety.*

150. **Philopator.** This surname from its composition means *the lover of a father*, and was given to Ptolemy in irony, as he had murdered both his parents. — **Actate immatura.** 441. —

PAGE

65

66

67

68

69

70

PAGE

- 70** **Que . . . imbutum.** Allusion is here made to the oath of eternal enmity to the Romans which his father is said to have made him take when a boy.  
 151. **Nec. . . .** *libt. Apud Cynoscephalas.* Compare 57. — **Repudiata . . .** *pace.* 458.
- 71** 152. **Invisus.** See 448. — **Criminari.** *Sc. coepit.* — **Nunc — nunc.** *At one time—at another.*  
 153. **Oeciso . . . aemulo.** This abridged clause, it will be observed, is compound. — **Nec.** (567.) — **Contracto.** Attributive clause abridged. 440.  
 154. **Macedonicum bellum.** Compare account in 59. — **De-dissent.** *They had given, i. e. he said they had given; hence the subjunctive.* 426. — **Extra ordinem.** The ordinary method of  
**72** distributing the provinces was *by lot.* — **Defecit.** *Was eclipsed.* — **Talentum.** Genitive plural; see A. & S. 53. — **Alexandre et Philippe.** Compound attributive modifier abridged.  
 155. **Tunc temporis.** *At that time; it is equivalent to illo temporis, or id temporis.* — **Conspirationem universarum.** *The union of all.* — **Responsum est.** *The reply was made.* — **Ad inspicendas res.** 451. — **Ut . . . dissolverent.** This clause may be treated as the subject of *mandatum est.*
- 73** 156. **Pugnandi . . . fecit.** *Offered the enemy battle.* — **Urbs Corinthus dirigitur.** Compare account in 62. — **Sub corona venditur.** *Are sold as slaves; some suppose that sub corona implies that a wreath was placed upon the head of the prisoner when offered for sale; and others that it merely refers to the ring (corona) of soldiers by whom he was guarded.*

# LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

For proper names the pupil is referred to the *Hist. and Geog. Index*.

## A.

**A.** An abbreviation of *Aulus*.

**A, ab, abs,** prep. with abl. From, by.

**Abduco** (ab, duco), *ĕre, duxi, ductum.* To lead away, take away, remove.

**Abeo** (ab, eo), *ĕre, tvi or ii, ūtum.* To go away, depart, withdraw from.

**Abjicio** (ab, jacio), *ĕre, jēci, jectum.* To throw away, throw, reject; prostrate, humble.

**Aboleo**, *ĕre, ēvi, ūtum.* To blot out, efface; ruin, destroy.

**Abripio** (ab, rapio), *ĕre, ripui, reptum.* To take away, carry off.

**Abrumpo** (ab, rumpo), *ĕre, rūpi, ruptum.* To break off or away, rend, sever.

**Absens** (part. of *absūm*), *tis.* Absent.

**Abstineo** (abs, teneo), *ĕre, tinui, tentum.* To keep or hold back, abstain from.

**Absūm** (ab, sum), *esse, fui, futūrus.* To be absent or away, to be distant from.

**Absūmo** (ab, sumo), *ĕre, sumpsi, sumptum.* To take from or away; destroy, consume.

**Abundo** (ab, undo), *āre, āvi, ātum.* To abound, superabound.

**Ac** (a shortened form of *atque*, used only before consonants). And.

**Accedo** (ad, cedo), *ĕre, cessi, cessum.* To approach, accede to; be added to.

**Accendo** (ad, candeo), *ĕre, cendi, censum.* To set on fire, kindle; to excite, inflame.

**Acceptus** (accipio), *a, um.* Accepted; acceptable, pleasing.

**Accipio** (ad, capio), *ĕre, cēpi, ceptum.* To accept, receive.

**Accurro** (ad, curro), *ĕre, curri (cucurri rare), cursum.* To run to, hasten to.

**Accuso** (ad, causa), *āre, āvi, ātum.* To call to account, to accuse.

**Acer, acris, acre.** Sharp; powerful, severe, valiant; diligent, intense.

**Acies, ei, f.** The order of battle, battle-array; line of soldiers; army in battle-array.

**Acquiesco** (*adquiesco* from *ad, quiesco*), *ĕre, ēvi, ūtum.* To become quiet, to repose; to acquiesce in.

**Acrīter** (acer). Vehemently, valiantly.



- Acuo, Ære, uſi, utum.** To sharpen, quicken; stimulate.
- Ad, prep.** with acc. To, towards; at, near.
- Addo** (ad, do), Ære, didi, ditum. To add, carry to, appoint to.
- Adduco** (ad, duco), Ære, duxi, ductum. To lead to, conduct, bring, induce.
- Ad eo** (ad, eo), adv. So, to such an extent.
- Ad eo** (ad, eo), ire, ſui or ii, utum. To go to, approach, visit; encounter.
- Adhuc,** adv. Thus far, as yet, even yet; still.
- Adimo** (ad, emo), Ære, emi, emptum. To take from, deprive of.
- Adipiscor, cſi, adeptus ſum,** dep. To obtain, get poſſeſſion of.
- Adjicio** (ad, jacio), Ære, jeci, jectum. To throw or caſt to or againſt, add to.
- Adjungo** (ad, jungo), Ære, junxi, junctum. To join to, unite with.
- Adminiſtro** (ad, miniſtro), Ære, avi, atum. To adminiſter, manage.
- Admiratio** (admīror), ōnis, f. Admiration, reſpect.
- Admīror** (ad, miror), āri, admiratus ſum, dep. To admire, wonder at.
- Admitto** (ad, mitto), Ære, miſi, miſum. To ſend to or forward, to admit, receive.
- Admōdum** (ad, modus), adv. Very, exceedingly.
- Admonitus, uſ,** m. Warning, advice; inſtigation.
- Admoveo** (ad, moveo), Ære, mōvi, mōtum. To move to, apply to, bring to.
- Adoleſcens** (adoleſco), entis, adj. and ſubſ., m. and f. Young, growing; a young man, a youth.
- Adoleſcentulus** (adoleſcens), i, m. A very young man, a youth.
- Adoleſco, Ære, evi** (ui rare), ultum. To grow, grow up, increaſe.
- Adopto, Ære, avi, atum.** To chooſe, adopt; take for a ſon, daughter, &c.
- Adorior** (ad, orior), tri, ortus ſum, dep. To attack, attempt, ſtrive; begin.
- Adorno, Ære, avi, atum.** To adorn, furniſh, equip.
- Ad ſto, or aſto** (ad, ſto), Ære, ſtiti. To ſtand near, ſtand by.
- Ad ſum** (ad, ſum), eſſe, fui, futurus. To be preſent or at hand, aſſiſt, ſtand by.
- Adulatio, ōnis, f.** Adulation, flattery.
- Advectus** (part. from advēho), a, um. Brought, carried to.
- Advēho** (ad, veho), Ære, vexi, vectum. To conduct, convey, import.
- Advenio** (ad, venio), ire, veni, ventum. To come to, arrive.
- Adventus** (advenio), uſ, m. Arrival, approach.
- Adverſarius, a, um,** adj. Oppoſite, oppoſing.
- Adverſarius, i, m.** ſubſt. Adverſary, opponent, antagoniſt.
- Adverſus** (adverto), a, um. Oppoſite, over againſt, adverſe, hoſtile; fronting, in front.
- Adverſus, or adverſum** (adverto), adv. and prep. Againſt, towards, oppoſite to.
- Aedes, or aedis, is, f.** Temple in the ſing.; but in the plur. dwelling, habitation, houſe.
- Aedifico** (aedes, facio), Ære, avi, atum. To build.
- Aedilitius, or aedilicius** (aedes), a, um. Pertaining to the aediles: aedilitius, i, m., one who has been aedile. The aediles were Roman magiſtrates who had charge of the public buildings, highways, &c., and acted as city police.
- Aegritudo, inis, f.** Affliction, anguiſh; care, uneaſineſs.
- Aemulus, a, un.** Emulous; often uſed ſubſtantively as rival, competitor.

- Aeneus, a, um.* Brazen.
- Aequaliter.* Equally.
- Aeque* (aequus). Equally, similarly.
- Aequipāro* (aeque, paro), *āre, āvi, ātum.* To equal, make equal.
- Aequitas* (aequus), *ātis, f.* Equality, equity.
- Aequus, a, um.* Equal, similar; just, fair; favorable, propitious.
- Aestas, ātis, f.* Summer.
- Aestimatio* (aestimo), *ōnis, f.* Estimation, worth.
- Aestimo, āre, āvi, ātum.* To value, estimate: *parvi aestimāre,* to think little of, esteem lightly.
- Aetas, ātis, f.* Age, time of life.
- Aeternitas, ātis, f.* Eternity, perpetuity.
- Affectātus* (part. from *affecto*), *a, um.* Desired, aimed at.
- Affecto, āre, āvi, ātum.* To desire, aim at, strive after.
- Afferō* (ad, fero), *ferre, attūli, allātum.* To bring, carry to, report.
- Affigo, ěre, fixi, fixum.* To affix, fasten to.
- Affirmo, āre, āvi, ātum.* To affirm, confirm, ratify.
- Afflictus* (part. from *affligo*), *a, um.* Afflicted, troubled, prostrated.
- Affligo, ěre, flixi, flictum.* To afflict, trouble, overthrow.
- Africus* (sc. *ventus*), *i, m.* The south-west wind, i. e., the wind from *Africa*.
- Ager, agri, m.* Field, land, territory.
- Aggredior, i, gressus sum.* To approach, attack, attempt.
- Agitātus* (part. from *agito*), *a, um.* Agitated, troubled.
- Agito, āre, āvi, ātum.* To harass, trouble, think of.
- Agmen, īnis, n.* An army, generally on the march, band of soldiers, troop.
- Agnosco, ěre, nōvi, nītum.* To recognize.
- Agō, ěre, egi, actum.* To conduct, drive, do, act, execute: *annum vicesimum agĕre,* to be in his (or her) twentieth year.
- Agricultura* (ager, colo), *ae, f.* Agriculture.
- Aio, ais, ait, &c.* defect. (see A. & S. 183, 4). To say, affirm.
- Ala, ae, f.* Wing.
- Alācer, cris, cre.* Active, prompt; joyful.
- Albus, a, um.* White.
- Alias.* Otherwise, at another time; *non alias,* on no other occasion.
- Aliēnus* (alius), *a, um.* Belonging to another, foreign; unfavorable.
- Aliquando.* At some time, formerly, finally, now at last.
- Aliquantum,* adv. Somewhat, in some degree.
- Aliquis* (alius, quis), *qua, quod,* and *quid.* Some one, some.
- Aliquot,* indecl. pl. adj. Several, some.
- Aliter* (alius), adv. Otherwise.
- Alius, a, ud* (gen. *alius, &c.*; see F. B. 113, R.). Other, another; *alius—alius,* one—another; *alii—alii,* some—others.
- Allōquor* (ad, loquor), *i, quātus or cātus sum,* dep. To speak to, address.
- Alo, ěre, alui, alitum* or *altum.* To support, keep, nourish, strengthen.
- Alte* (altus), adv. On high, high.
- Alter, ěra, ěrum* (gen. *alterius, &c.*; F. B. 113, R.). One of two, the other; *alter—alter,* the one—the other; *alter* as numeral = *second.*
- Altus, a, um.* High, noble, great; deep, profound; *altum* substantively, the sea, the deep.
- Amābilis* (amo), *e.* Lovely, amiable.
- Ambio, ěre, ūvi* or *ii, itum.* To surround, encompass.

- Ambo, ae, o.** Both.
- Amicitia** (amicus), *ae, f.* Friendship.
- Amicus, i, m.** A friend.
- Amicus, a, um.** Friendly, kind.
- Amita, ae, f.** A father's sister, paternal aunt.
- Amitto** (a, mitto), *ère, mīsi, mīsum.* To send away, to lose.
- Amnis, is, m.** River.
- Amo, are, avi, atum.** To love.
- Amor** (amo), *ōris, m.* Love, affection, desire.
- Amphitheatrum, i, n.** Amphitheatre, in Rome a circular or oval building used for public spectacles.
- Amplio** (amplus), *are, avi, atum.* To enlarge.
- Amplius** (comp. of *ample*), *adv.* More, further.
- Amplus, a, um.** Ample, spacious, large.
- An, interrog. particle.** Or, whether.
- Anceps, ancipitius.** Twofold, double.
- Angustia** (angustus), *ae, f.*, used mostly in pl. Narrow pass, difficulty.
- Angustus, a, um.** Narrow, confined.
- Anīma, ae, f.** Breath, life.
- Animadverto** (animus, adverto), *ère, ti, sum.* To notice, observe, perceive.
- Animus, i, m.** Mind, soul, courage.
- Annulus, or anulus, i, m.** Ring.
- Annus, i, m.** Year.
- Annus** (annus), *a, um.* Lasting a year, for a year, annual.
- Ante, adv. and prep.** Before in respect to place or time, formerly.
- Antea.** Formerly.
- Antesignānus** (ante, signum), *i, m.* Leader, commander.
- Antiquitas** (antiquus), *ātis, f.* Antiquity.
- Antiquus, a, um.** Ancient, early.
- Antistes, itis, m. and f.** President; priest, priestess.
- Anxiētas, ātis, f.** Anxiety, solitude.
- Aperte.** Openly, publicly.
- Apparātus, us, m.** Preparation, equipment.
- Apparātus, a, um.** Prepared, ready, equipped.
- Appellatio** (appello), *ōnis, f.* Name, title.
- Appello, are, avi, atum.** To call, name.
- Appello** (ad, pello), *ère, pūli, fulsum.* To drive to, bring to, induce.
- Appropinquo, are, avi, atum.** To approach.
- Apud, prep. with acc.** At, near, among.
- Aqua, ae, f.** Water.
- Aquila, ae, f.** Eagle.
- Ara, ae, f.** Altar.
- Arbitror, āri, atus sum, dep.** To think, judge.
- Arcesso, ère, vi, itum.** To call, invite; summon.
- Archon, tis, m.** The chief magistrate at Athens, archon.
- Ardeo, ère, arsi, arsum.** To be on fire, burn.
- Ardesco, ère, arsi.** To take fire, kindle.
- Argenteus** (argentum), *a, um.* Made of silver.
- Argentum, i, n.** Silver.
- Argumentum, i, n.** Argument, sign, mark.
- Argyraspis, idis, adj.** Armed with silver shields, a title applied to a company of Macedonian soldiers who had silver shields.
- Arma, ōrum, n. pl.** Arms, force of arms.
- Armātus** (armo), *a, um.* Armed.
- Armilla, ae, f.** Bracelet.
- Armo** (arma), *are, avi, atum.* To arm.
- Arrōgans, tis.** Proud, arrogant.
- Ars, tis, f.** Art, skill.

*Arx, arcis, f.* Citadel.  
*Aspis, idis, f.* Asp.  
*Asporto, are, avi, atum.* To bear or carry away.  
*Asseveratio, onis, f.* Declaration, assertion.  
*Assiduus, a, um.* Assiduous; frequent; continual, incessant.  
*Assigno, are, avi, atum.* Assign, bestow.  
*Asto, are, astiti.* To stand near or by.  
*Astu, n. indecl.* A city, generally applied to Athens.  
*Asylum, i, n.* Asylum, place of refuge.  
*At, conj.* But, yet.  
*Atque, conj.* And, and also, and besides; *atque—atque*, both—and.  
*Attingo, ere, tigi, tactum.* To attain, touch.  
*Auctor (augeo), oris, m.* Author, founder; approver, adviser.  
*Auctoritas (auctor), a'is, f.* Authority, influence.  
*Audax (audeo), acis.* Bold, audacious, desperate.  
*Audeo, ere, ausus sum.* To dare, attempt.  
*Audio, ire, iwi or ii, itum.* To hear, listen to.  
*Aufëro (ab, fero), ferre, abstuli, ablatum.* To take away or from, remove.  
*Aufugio (ab, fugio), ere, fugi.* To flee from.  
*Augeo, ere, auxi, auctum.* To enlarge, increase.  
*Augurium, i, n.* Augury, omen.  
*Auguror, ari, atus sum.* To augur, predict.  
*Aurarius (aurum), a, um.* Pertaining to gold; *auraria metalla*, gold mines.  
*Aureus (aurum), a, um.* Made of gold, golden.  
*Auriga, ae, m. and f.* Charioteer, driver.  
*Auris, is, f.* Ear.

*Aurum, i, n.* Gold.  
*Auspicium, i, n.* Omen, auspices.  
*Aut.* Or; *aut—aut*, either—or, partly—partly.  
*Autem.* But, likewise, moreover.  
*Auxilium (augeo), i, n.* Aid, plur. auxiliaries.  
*Avaritia, ae, f.* Avarice.  
*Averto (ab, verito), erti, ersum.* To avert, turn from, remove.  
*Avidus, a, um.* Desirous, eager.  
*Avis, is, f.* Bird.  
*Avunculus (avus), i, m.* Maternal uncle, a mother's brother.  
*Avus, i, m.* Grandfather.

## B.

*Bacchans, antis.* Revelling.  
*Bacchantes, ium, pl.* Votaries of Bacchus, the god of wine.  
*Barba, ae, f.* Beard.  
*Barbärus, a, um.* Foreign, barbarous, rude.  
*Barbärus, i, m.* Foreigner, barbarian.  
*Beätus, a, um.* Happy.  
*Bellicosus (bellum), a, um.* Warlike.  
*Bello (bellum), are, avi, atum.* To carry on war.  
*Bellum, i, n.* War.  
*Bene, adv.* Well.  
*Beneficium (bene, facio), i, n.* Benefit, favor.  
*Benevolentia (bene, volo), ae, f.* Kindness, benevolence.  
*Benigne, adv.* Kindly.  
*Bibo, ere, bibi, bibitum.* To drink.  
*Biennium (bis, annus), i, n.* Period of two years, two years.  
*Biformis (bis, forma), e.* Having two forms, bifurcated.  
*Bis, adv.* Twice.  
*Bolëtus, i, m.* Mushroom.  
*Bonum (bonus), i, n.* Blessing, prosperity, any good; pl. *bona*, goods, property.  
*Bonus, a, um.* Good, noble, brave.

*Brachium*, *i*, *n*. Arm, fore-arm.  
*Brevia*, *e*. Short; *brevi* (sc. tempore), shortly, in a short time.

## C.

*C*. An abbreviation of Caius;  
*Cn.*, of Cneus.  
*Cado*, *ère*, *cecidi*, *casum*. To fall, fall in battle.  
*Caduceator*, *òris*, *m*. Herald or ambassador sent to treat for peace.  
*Caedes* (*caedo*), *is*, *f*. Slaughter, bloodshed.  
*Caedo*, *ère*, *cecidi*, *caesum*. To cut, kill, slay.  
*Calamitas*, *atis*, *f*. Loss, calamity, disaster.  
*Callide*, *adv*. Shrewdly, skilfully.  
*Campus*, *i*, *m*. A plain, field of battle.  
*Canities*, *ei*, *f*. Gray hairs, old age.  
*Capax* (*capio*), *acis*. Capacious, large, comprehensive, able.  
*Capesso* (*capio*), *ère*, *ivi*, *itum*. To take, seize; *fugam capessere*, to resort to flight, betake one's self to flight.  
*Capillus*, *i*, *m*. Hair.  
*Capio*, *ère*, *cepi*, *captum*. To take, hold.  
*Captivitas* (*captivus*), *atis*, *f*. Captivity, bondage.  
*Captivus* (*capio*), *a*, *um*. Captive, enslaved; *substantivè*, a prisoner, a captive.  
*Captus* (part. from *capio*), *a*, *um*. Captured, taken.  
*Caput*, *itis*, *n*. Head, capital; *capitis damnare*, to condemn to death.  
*Carcer*, *eris*, *m*. Prison.  
*Carpentum*, *i*, *n*. Chariot, carriage.  
*Caste*, *adv*. Virtuously, chastely.  
*Castrum* (*dimin. castrum*), *i*, *n*. Castle, fortress.

*Castra* (pl. of *castrum*, a castle) *òrum*. Camp.

*Casus* (*cado*), *us*, *m*. Fall, misfortune.

*Causa*, *ae*, *f*. Cause, purpose, business.

*Causidicus* (*causa*, *dico*), *i*, *m*. Pleader, advocate; speaker.

*Cedo*, *ère*, *cessi*, *cessum*. To give place to, yield to, withdraw, depart.

*Celèber*, *bris*, *bre*. Renowned, celebrated.

*Celèbro* (*ce.èber*), *ère*, *avi*, *atum*. To celebrate, solemnize.

*Celeritas*, *atis*, *f*. Celerity, swiftness.

*Celeriter*, *adv*. Swiftly, quickly.

*Censeo*, *ère*, *ui*, *censum*. To think, judge, decree.

*Census*, *us*, *m*. Census.

*Centum*, *indecl*. Hundred.

*Centurio* (*centum*), *ònis*, *m*. Centurion.

*Certamen*, *inis*, *n*. Contest, game, engagement.

*Certatim*, *adv*. Earnestly, eagerly.

*Certus*, *a um*. Sure, certain; *certiorem facere*, to inform.

*Cesso* (*cedo*), *ère*, *avi*, *atum*. To cease, pause.

*Cetèrus*, *a um*, *nom. sing. m.* not used. The other, the rest.

*Christianus*, *a um*. Christian, often used substantively.

*Cicatrix*, *icis*, *f*. Scar.

*Circa*, *prep.* with *acc.* About, around, among.

*Circiter*, *prep.* with *acc.* About, near.

*Circum* = *circa*.

*Circumdo* (*circum*, *do*), *dùre*, *dèdi*, *dàtum*. To place round, surround, invest.

*Circumeo* (*circum*, *eo*), *ère*, *ivi* or *ii*, *itum*. To go around, surround, encompass.

*Circumspicio* (*circum*, *specio*), *ère*, *exi*, *ectum*. To look round, look for, seek.

- Circumvenio* (circum, venio), *ire, vēni, ventum*. To circumvent, deceive; surround.
- Cito, are, avi, atum*. To excite, urge, hasten; *citato equo*; at full gallop or speed.
- Citra*, adv. and prep. with acc. On this side.
- Civilis* (civis), *e*. Civil, domestic.
- Civilitas* (civilis), *atis, f*. Civility, politeness.
- Civis, is, m. and f*. Citizen.
- Civitas* (civis), *atis, f*. City, state, citizenship.
- Clades, is, f*. Loss, slaughter, destruction.
- Clam*, adv. and prep. with acc. or abl. Secretly, without the knowledge of.
- Clarus, a, um*. Splendid, renowned, clear.
- Classarius* (classis), *i, m*. A marine, *pl*. naval forces.
- Classis, is, f*. A fleet.
- Claudo, ěre, si, sum*. To close, shut.
- Clemens, entis*. Mild, gentle, clement.
- Clementia* (clemens), *ae, f*. Mildness, clemency.
- Clipeus, or clypeus, i, m*. Shield.
- Cloāca, ae, f*. Sewer, drain.
- Coelum, i, n*. The heavens, sky, weather.
- Coena, ae, f*. Principal meal of the Romans, supper, dinner.
- Coco* (con, eo), *ěre, ūvi or ii, ūtum*. To collect, assemble.
- Coepi, isti, it, def.* (See A. & S. 183, 2.) To begin.
- Coerceo, ěre, ui, ūtum*. To check, confine, restrain.
- Coercitor* (coerceo), *ōris, m*. Enforcer.
- Cogito, are, avi, atum*. To think, ponder.
- Cognatio, ōnis, f*. Relationship, resemblance, relatives.
- Cognatus, a, um*. Related, *subs.* a relative.
- Cognitus* (part. from *cognosco*), *a, um*. Ascertained, known.
- Cognomen* (con, nomen), *inis, n*. Surname.
- Cognomino* (cognomen), *are, avi, atum*. To surname, call, name.
- Cognosco, ěre, nōvi, nītum*. To ascertain, recognize.
- Cogo, ěre, cōegi, cōactum*. To collect, force, compel.
- Cohibeo* (con, habeo), *ěre, ui, ūtum*. To hold, check, confine.
- Cohors, rtis, f*. Cohort, tenth part of a legion.
- Collēga, ae, m*. Colleague.
- Colligo* (con, lego), *ěre, ēgi, ectum*. To collect, bring together.
- Collōco, are, avi, atum*. To place, set, erect.
- Collōquor* (con, loquor), *qui, cātus sum*. To converse, talk with.
- Colo, ěre, ui, cultum*. To cultivate; honor, worship.
- Colonus* (colo), *i, m*. Colonist.
- Comes, itis, m. and f*. Companion.
- Comissatio, ōnis, f*. Revelling.
- Comitor* (comes), *ari, atus sum*. To accompany.
- Commēditus, us, m*. Supplies.
- Commigro* (con, migro), *are, avi, atum*. To migrate.
- Committo* (con, mitto), *ěre, īsi, issum*. To bring together, unite, intrust, commit; *pugnam committēre*, to engage battle.
- Commōror* (con, moror), *ari, atus sum*. To tarry, delay.
- Commoveo* (con, moveo), *ěre, ōvi, ōtum*. To move, excite.
- Commūnis, e*. Common.
- Communiter* (commūnis), adv. In common, conjointly.
- Commutatio, ōnis, f*. Change.
- Compāro* (con, paro), *are, avi, atum*. To prepare, compare.
- Compello, are, avi, atum*. To address, call.
- Compello* (con, pello), *ěre, ūli, ūsum*. To force, compel, impel.

- Compensatio, ōnis, f.** Compensation, exchange, barter.
- Comperio, ire, p̄eri, pertum.** To find, find out.
- Compes (con, pes), ēdis, f.** Fetter, chain.
- Compesco, ěre, cui.** To confine, check.
- Complector, ti, ezus sum.** To embrace, encompass.
- Compleo, ěre, ēvi, ětum.** To fill, complete.
- Compōno (con, pono), ěre, osui, osutum.** To settle, adjust, adapt.
- Comprehendo, ěre, di, sum.** To seize, arrest, comprehend.
- Concēdo (con, cedo), ěre, essi, essum.** To concede, grant; *pass. impers.*, it is conceded.
- Concīdo (con, cado), ěre, idi.** To fall, perish.
- Concilio (concilium), are, avi, atum.** To unite, conciliate.
- Concilium, i, n.** Council, meeting.
- Concio, ōnis, f.** Public assembly.
- Concito (con, cito), are, avi, atum.** To raise; excite, excite rebellion.
- Concitor, ōris, m.** Exciter, mover.
- Concurro (con, curro), ěre, curri (cucurri), cursum.** To meet, assemble; engage, fight; rush to.
- Concursus (concurro), us, m.** Course, meeting, engagement.
- Concutio (con, q̄ratio), ěre, ussi, ussum.** To agitate, trouble.
- Conditio (condo), ōnis, f.** Condition, terms.
- Condo (con, do), ěre, didi, ditum.** To found; conceal, hide; place, bury.
- Conducō (con, duco), ěre, xi, ctum.** To conduct, collect; hire, contract for.
- Confěro (con, fero), ferre, tūli, collatum.** To collect, confer, engage battle; *se conferre*, to betake one's self.
- Confestim, adv.** Immediately.
- Conficio (con, facio), ěre, feci, factum.** To finish, accomplish, wear out.
- Confido, ěre, isus sum.** To trust, confide in.
- Configo, ěre, xi, xum.** To transfix, fasten together.
- Confingo (con, fingo), ěre, nxi, ictum.** To form, feign, pretend.
- Confisus (confido), a, um, part.** Trusting, relying upon.
- Confugo, ěre, xi, ctum.** To engage, fight.
- Confodio, ěre, fodi, fossum.** To pierce, wound.
- Confugio (con, fugio), ěre, fugi.** To flee for refuge.
- Conġěro (con, ġero), ěre, ġessi, ġatum.** To bring together, crowd, expend, bestow upon.
- Congredior (con, gradior), di, ġessus sum, dep.** To encounter, fight.
- Congrěgo, are, avi, atum.** To collect, congregate.
- Congressio (concredior), ōnis, f.** Engagement, battle.
- Conjicio (con, jacio), ěre, jěci, jěctum.** To discharge, hurl, throw, drive.
- Conjungo (con, jungo), ěre, nxi, nctum.** To join, conjoin.
- Conjuratio (conjuro), ōnis, f.** Conspiracy.
- Conjuratus (Id.), a, um.** Having conspired.
- Conjuro (con, juro), are, avi, atum.** To conspire.
- Conjux (conjungo), ũgis, m. and f.** Husband, wife.
- Conor, ari, atus sum, dep.** To endeavor, attempt.
- Conscendo (con, scando), ěre, di, sum.** To ascend, embark.
- Conscius, a, um.** Privy to; *subs.* accomplice, confidant.
- Consecro (con, sacro), are, avi, atum.** To consecrate.
- Consector, ari, atus sum, dep.** To follow, pursue.

- Consenesco, ěre, senui.** To grow old.
- Consęquor** (con, sequor), *qui, cętus sum.* To succeed, follow, pursue; secure.
- Consęro, ěre, ui, tum.** To join together; *manum* or *pugnām* *consęrere*, to join battle.
- Conservo** (con, servo), *are, avi, atum.* To preserve, watch over, rescue.
- Consido, ěre, sędi, sessum.** To encamp, settle.
- Consilium, i, n.** Counsel, advice, wisdom, design.
- Consobrinus, a, um.** Cousin, often *subs.*
- Conspectus** (conspicio), *us, m.* Sight, presence.
- Conspicio, ěre, exi, ectum.** To see, observe.
- Conspiratio, onis, f.** Union, conspiracy.
- Constantia, ae, f.** Constancy, firmness.
- Constat, impers.** It is known, is an admitted fact.
- Constituo** (con, statuo), *ęre, ui, utum.* To constitute; build, erect; station, place; appoint.
- Consto** (con, sto), *are, stęti, statum.* To stand together, halt.
- Consuesco, ěre, evi, etum.** To be accustomed.
- Consuetudo** (consuesco), *inis, f.* Custom, usage, habit.
- Consul** (consulo), *ulis, m.* Consul, *Roman chief magis'rate.*
- Consularis, e.** Consular; *subs.* one who has been consul, one of consular rank.
- Consulatus** (consul), *us, m.* Consulship.
- Consulo, ěre, ui, ultum.** To consult, consider; *with dat.* to consult for one's good.
- Consummo, are, avi, atum.** To finish, accomplish.
- Consumo** (con, sumo), *ęre, umpsi, umptum.* To consume, wear out, waste.
- Contęgo** (con, tego), *ęre, exi, ectum.* To cover.
- Contemno, ěre, mpsi, mptum.** To contemn, despise, disregard.
- Contemptus** (contemno), *us, m.* Contempt, scorn, disregard.
- Contendo, ěre, di, tum.** To contend, strive, attempt, labor; betake one's self, go.
- Contentio** (contendo), *onis, f.* Effort, contest, struggle.
- Contentus, a, um.** Content, contented.
- Continens** (contineo), *tis.* Adjoining, continuous: *subs. f.* continent.
- Continentia** (contineo), *ae, f.* Forbearance, self-control.
- Contineo** (con, teneo), *ęre, ui, tentum.* To hold, keep, check.
- Contra, adv. and prep. with acc.** Against, opposite to, contrary to; on the contrary.
- Contradico** (contra, dico), *ęre, dixi, dictum.* To contradict, object to.
- Contrahō** (con, traho), *ęre, xi, ctum.* To collect, incur, contract.
- Contrucido** (con, trucido), *are, avi, atum.* To slay, kill, mangle.
- Contumax, acia.** Insolent, disobedient.
- Convalesco, ěre, lui.** To gain strength, recover.
- Conveniens** (convenio), *tis.* Becoming, fit, proper.
- Convenio** (con, venio), *ire, vęni, ventum.* To convene, meet, agree, harmonize, besit.
- Converto** (con, verdo), *ęre, ti, sum.* To turn, change, alter, convert.
- Convicium** (con, vox), *i, n.* Re-proof.
- Convinco** (con, vinco), *ęre, ici, ictum.* To conquer, convict.
- Convivium, i, n.** Feast, banquet.
- Convivor, ari, atus sum.** To feast.
- Copia, ae, f.** Abundance; *pl.* forces, stores, supplies.
- Cornu, us, n.** Horn, wing of army.
- Corona, ae, f.** Garland, crown.



- Corpus, ōris, n.* Body, community.
- Corrigo* (con, rego), *ēre, ezi, ectum.*  
To reform, correct.
- Corripio* (con, rapio), *ēre, ui, eptum.*  
To seize, lay hold of.
- Corrumpto* (con, rumpo), *ēre, ūpi, uptum.* To corrupt, bribe, seduce.
- Corvus, i, m.* Raven.
- Crastinus, a, um.* Of to-morrow.
- Creber, bra, brum.* Frequent, numerous.
- Credo, ēre, ūdi, itum.* To trust, believe.
- Creo, are, avi, atum.* To appoint, elect, make.
- Cresco, ēre, ēvi, etum.* To grow, increase.
- Crimen, inis, n.* Crime, accusation.
- Criminor* (crimen), *ari, atus sum.*  
To accuse.
- Crinis, is, m.* Hair.
- Crucio* (crux), *are, avi, atum.* To pain, afflict, torture.
- Crudelis, e.* Cruel.
- Crudelitas* (crudelis), *atis, f.* Cruelty.
- Crudeliter* (Id.), adv. Cruelly.
- Crux, crucis, f.* A cross.
- Culpa, ae, f.* Fault, blame.
- Cultus, us, m.* Culture, necessities as food, clothing, &c.
- Cum,* prep. with abl. With
- Cum,* conj. = quum.
- Cunctatio* (cunctor), *ōnis, f.* Delay.
- Cunctor, ari, atus sum.* To delay, hesitate.
- Cunctus, a, um.* All, all together, entire.
- Cupide* (cupidus), adv. Eagerly.
- Cupiditas* (Id.), *atis, f.* Desire, wish.
- Cupidus* (cupio), *a, um.* Desirous, fond of.
- Cupio, ēre, ūi or ii, itum.* To desire.
- Cura, ae, f.* Care, management.
- Curia, ae, f.* Senate-house.
- Curro, ēre, cucurri, cursum.* To run.
- Currus* (curro), *us, m.* Chariot.
- Cursus* (curro), *us, m.* Course.
- Custodia, ae, f.* Care, charge of.
- D.
- Damno* (damnum), *are, avi, atum.*  
To condemn; *capitis damnare, te* condemn to death.
- Damnum, i, n.* Loss, damage.
- De,* prep. with abl. From, of, concerning.
- Dabeo, ēre, ui, itum.* To owe, ought.
- Debilito, are, avi, atum.* To weaken, disable.
- Decedo* (de, cedo), *ēre, cessi, cessum.*  
To depart, withdraw, die.
- Decem, indecl.* Ten.
- Decemplex, icis.* Tenfold.
- Decemvir* (decem, vir), *viri, m.* A decemvir.
- Decerno, ēre, crēvi, crētum.* To decide, contend, fight; decree, intrust by decree.
- Decimus* (decem), *a, um.* Tenth.
- Decipio* (de, capio), *ēre, cēpi, ceptum.*  
To deceive.
- Decrētum* (decerno), *i, n.* Decree.
- Decus, ōris, n.* Ornament, honor.
- Dedecus* (de, decus), *ōris, n.* Disgrace.
- Dedicatio, ōnis, f.* Dedication.
- Deditio* (dedo), *ōnis, f.* Surrender.
- Deo* (de, do), *ēre, didi, dītum.* To surrender; devote one's self to, give one's self up to.
- Dedūco* (de, duco), *ēre, duxi, ductum.*  
To bring down, conduct; remove.
- Defectio* (deficio), *ōnis, f.* Failure, eclipse, defection.
- Defendo, ēre, di, sum.* To defend, ward off.
- Defero* (de, fero), *ferre, tūli, lātum.*  
To offer, exhibit, bestow, present; carry or bear away.

- Deficio** (de, facio), *ēre, fēci, fectum.* To fail, spend itself; be eclipsed; desert, revolt.
- Deformis** (de, forma), *e.* Deformed, ugly.
- Defungor** (de, fungor), *gi, functus sum* To discharge, execute; die.
- Dein** or **deinde.** Then, afterwards.
- Dejicio** (de, jacio), *ēre, jēci, jectum.* To throw down, overthrow, slay.
- Delectus** (deligo), *a, um.* Chosen.
- Deleo, ēre, ēvi, etum.** To destroy, efface, put an end to.
- Delibēro, āre, āvi, atum.** To deliberate.
- Deliciae, arum, f. pl.** Delights, pleasures.
- Deligo** (de, lego), *ēre, ēgi, ectum.* To choose, select; love.
- Delirium, i, n.** Madness, dotage, instances of it.
- Dementer, adv.** Madly.
- Dementia, ae, f.** Madness, folly.
- Demergo** (de, mergo), *ēre, si, sum.* To plunge in, bury in, sink.
- Demigro** (de, migro), *āre, āvi, atum.* To remove, emigrate, migrate.
- Demorior** (de, morior), *mōri, mortuus sum.* To die.
- Demum, adv.** At length, finally.
- Deni, ae, a.** Ten by ten, ten at a time.
- Denique.** Finally
- Denūdo, āre, āvi, atum.** To make naked, strip.
- Denuntiatio** (denuntio), *ōnis, f.* Denunciation, warning.
- Denuntio** (de, nuntio), *āre, āvi, atum.* To declare, denounce.
- Denuo, adv.** Again, afresh.
- Depello** (de, pello), *ēre, ūli, ulsum.* To drive away, expel.
- Depōno** (de, pono), *ēre, posui, positum.* To lay down or aside, deposit, depose.
- Depopūlor, āri, atus sum.** To pillage, depopulate.
- Deporto, āre, āvi, atum.** To carry off or away.
- Depraedor, āri, atus sum.** To ravage, plunder.
- Deprehendo, ēre, di, sum.** To seize, catch, detect, surprise.
- Depugno, āre, āvi, atum.** To fight.
- Deripio** (de, rapio), *ēre, ipui, eptum.* To seize, tear away, snatch.
- Descendo, ēre, di, sum.** To descend.
- Describo** (de, scribo), *ēre, psi, ptum.* To describe; impose; censure; designate.
- Desēro, ēre, ui, tum.** To abandon, desert.
- Desilio, ēre, silui, sultum.** To alight, dismount.
- Desino, ēre, sivi or sii, situm.** To cease, desist.
- Desperatio, ōnis, f.** Despair, desperation.
- Despēro, āre, āvi, atum.** To despair.
- Despicio, ēre, exi, ctum.** To despise, disregard.
- Destino, āri, āvi, atum.** To destine, appoint, design.
- Desun** (de, sum), *esse, fui, futūrus.* To fail, be wanting.
- Deterreo** (de, terreo), *ēre, ui, itum.* To deter.
- Detineo** (de, teneo), *ēre, ui, entum.* To detain, hinder.
- Detrahō** (de, traho), *ēre, axi, actum.* To draw or take away, detract.
- Deus, i, m.** God, deity. (See A. & S. 53.)
- Devasto, āre.** To devastate, pillage.
- Devenio** (de, venio), *ire, vēni, ventum.* To come down, arrive, reach.
- Devinco** (de, vinco), *ēre, ūci, ictum.* To conquer.
- Dexter, tra, trum.** Right, on the right hand.
- Dextra, ae, f.** The right hand.
- Diadēma, atis, n.** Diadem.
- Dico, ēre, dixi, dictum.** To say.
- Dictator** (dico), *ōris, m.* Dictator, an officer appointed by the Romans in times of great danger

- Dies, ei, m. and f. Day.*  
*Difficile, adv. With difficulty.*  
*Digitus, i, m. Finger.*  
*Dignitas (dignus), atis, f. Dignity, rank, office.*  
*Dignor (dignus), ari, atus sum. To deem worthy, deign.*  
*Dignus, a, um. Worthy.*  
*Dilatio, onis, f. Delay, delaying.*  
*Diligens (diligō), entis. Fond of, mindful, observant, diligent.*  
*Diligentia (diligens), ae, f. Diligence.*  
*Diligo, ere, ezi, ectum. To choose.*  
*Dimico, are, avi, atum. To encounter, fight.*  
*Dimitto, ere, isi, issum. To dismiss.*  
*Diripio, ere, ui, eptum. To lay waste, pillage.*  
*Diruo, ere, ui, utum. To destroy, demolish.*  
*Discēdo, ere, essi, essum. To depart, retire from.*  
*Disceptatio, onis, f. Debate, quarrel.*  
*Disciplina, ae, f. Discipline, instruction.*  
*Disco, ere, didici. To learn.*  
*Discordia, ae, f. Discord, strife.*  
*Discrimen, inis, n. Danger, crisis.*  
*Discurro, ere, curri, cursum. To run different ways, run about, separate.*  
*Dispergo, ere, si, sum. To scatter, disperse.*  
*Displiceo, ere, ui, utum. To displease.*  
*Dissidium, i, n. Dissension.*  
*Dissimulo, are, avi, atum. To dissemble, conceal, omit.*  
*Dissipo, are, avi, atum. To dissipate, scatter.*  
*Dissolvo, ere, olvi, olutum. To destroy, abolish, dissolve.*  
*Distribuo, ere, ui, utum. To distribute.*  
*Districtus (distingo), a, um. Busy, occupied with.*  
*Distingo, ere, nzi, ctum. To occupy, engage attention.*  
*Ditio, onis, f. Rule, sway.*  
*Diu, adv. Long, for a long time.*  
*Diuturnitas (diuturnus), atis, f. Long time.*  
*Diuturnus (diu), a, um. Long continual, lasting.*  
*Diversus, a, um. Diverse, unlike, opposite.*  
*Dives, itis. Rich.*  
*Divido, ere, isi, isum. To divide, allot.*  
*Divinus, a, um. Divine.*  
*Divitiae (dives), arum, f. Riches, wealth.*  
*Divus, a, um. Divine; subs. god, goddess.*  
*Do, dare, dedi, datum. To give, impute.*  
*Doceo, ere, ui, tum. To teach.*  
*Doctus (doceo), a, um. Learned, skilled.*  
*Documentum, i, n. Lesson, proof, specimen, mark.*  
*Doleo, ere, ui, utum. To grieve.*  
*Dolor (doleo), oris, m. Pain, grief.*  
*Dolus, i, m. Artifice, deceit.*  
*Domesticus (domus), a, um. Domestic, private, personal.*  
*Dominatio, onis, f. Rule, tyranny.*  
*Domīnus, i, m. Master, owner.*  
*Dono, are, ui, utum. To subdue.*  
*Domus, us or i, f. House; domi, at home.*  
*Donec, conj. Until.*  
*Dono (donum), are, avi, atum. To give, present with.*  
*Donum (do), i, n. Present, gift.*  
*Dos, dotis, f. Gift, dowry.*  
*Dubitatio (dubito), onis, f. Doubt, hesitation.*  
*Dubito, are, avi, atum. To doubt, hesitate.*  
*Dubius, a, um. Doubtful; neut. often subs. doubt.*  
*Ducenti, ae, a. Two hundred.*  
*Duco, ere, duxi, ductum. To lead, conduct, with uxorem, to marry.*

**Ductor** (duco), *ōris*, m. Leader, general.  
**Ductus** (duco), *us*, m. Guidance, command.  
**Dum**, conj. While, until.  
**Duo**, *ae*, o. Two, both.  
**Duodēcim** (duo, decem), indecl. Twelve.  
**Duodēcimus** (duodecim), *a, um*. Twelfth.  
**Duodēviginti**, indecl. Eighteen.  
**Duplex**, *icis*. Double.  
**Durus**, *a, um*. Hard, harsh, rude.  
**Dux** (duco), *ūcis*, m. and f. Leader, guide, general.

## E

**E** or *ex*, prep. with abl. From, out of.  
**Ebrietas**, *ātis*, f. Drunkenness.  
**Edo**, *ēre, edidi, editum*. To set forth, publish; do, perform; make.  
**Educo**, *āre, avi, atum*. To bring up, educate.  
**Educo** (e, duco), *ēre, duxi, ductum*. To lead out or forth.  
**Effero**, *āre, avi, atum*. • To enrage, madden, render unmanageable.  
**Effero** (ex, fero), *ferre, extūli, elatum*. To bring forth, carry forth or out; elate.  
**Efficax** (efficio), *acis*. Effectual, efficacious.  
**Efficio** (ex, facio), *ēre, feci, factum*. To effect, occasion.  
**Effugio** (ex, fugio), *ēre, ūgi*. To flee, escape from.  
**Effundo** (ex, fundo), *ēre, ūdi, ūsum*. To pour out, pour; indulge in; squander, waste.  
**Effusus** (effundo), *a, um*. Extravagant, prodigal.  
**Ego**, *mei*, &c. I.  
**Egregie** (egregius), adv. Excellently, remarkably.  
**Egregius**, *a, um*. Excellent.

**Ejicio** (e, jacio), *ēre, jēci, jectum*. To throw or drive out, expel; reject.  
**Elephantus**, *i*, m. and f. Elephant.  
**Eligo** (e, lego), *ēre, ēgi, ectum*. To choose, elect.  
**Emergo** (e, mergo), *ēre, si, sum*. To emerge, come to light, rise in importance.  
**Emineo**, *ēre, ui*. To stand out, be prominent or conspicuous.  
**Emitto** (e, mitto), *ēre, misi, issum*. To send forth or away; let go.  
**Emo**, *ēre, emi, emptum*. To buy.  
**Enim**, conj. For.  
**Eniteo**, *ēre, ui*. To shine forth; be distinguished.  
**Enixe**, adv. Earnestly.  
**Eo**, adv. Thither, therefore; *eo usque*, so far, to such an extent.  
**Eodem**, adv. To the same place.  
**Epigramma**, *ātis*, n. Inscription.  
**Epūlae**, *arum*, f. pl. Food, banquet, feast.  
**Epūlor** (epūlae), *ari, atus sum*. To feast.  
**Eques** (equus), *itis*, m. Horseman.  
**Equester** (eques), *tris, tre*. Equestrian.  
**Equitatus**, *us*, m. Cavalry.  
**Equus**, *i*, m. Horse.  
**Ergo**, adv. Therefore; *as suba*. abl. on account of, for, with gen.  
**Erigo** (e, rego), *ēre, exi, ectum*. To raise up, animate.  
**Eripio** (e, rapio), *ēre, ipui, eptum*. To snatch or take away.  
**Erudio**, *ire, iwi or ii, itum*. To instruct, refine.  
**Eruditus** (erudio), *a, um*. Learned, instructed in.  
**Erumpo** (e, rumpo), *ēre, ūpi, uptum*. To break forth, rush forth.  
**Eruo**, *ēre, ui, ūtum*. To root out, destroy.  
**Et**. And; *et—et*, both—and.  
**Etiam**. Also, even.  
**Etsi** (et, si). Although, though.  
**Evado**, *ēre, āsi, āsum*. To go out; escape; evade.

- Erho** (e, veho), *ere, eri, actum.* To carry or lead forth.
- Evenio** (e, venio), *ire, veni, ventum.* To come forth, happen; *evenit, ut, it* chanced, that.
- Everto** (e, verto), *ere, ti, sum.* To pull down, overthrow.
- Evoco** (e, voco), *are, avi, atum.* To call forth, summon.
- Evolo** (e, volo), *are, avi, atum.* To fly or flee away, hasten away.
- Ex**, prep. with abl. From. (See *e* or *ex*).
- Exadversum** or **exadversus**, adv. and prep. with acc. Opposite, against.
- Exanimis**, *are, avi, atum.* To deprive of life or spirit; kill.
- Exardesco**, *ere, arsi.* To kindle, be inflamed; break out as war.
- Excēdo** (ex, cedo), *ere, cessi, cessum.* To retire, withdraw.
- Excelsē**, adv. On high, aloft, highly.
- Excidium**, *ii, n.* Destruction, ruin.
- Excipio** (ex, capio), *ere, cepi, ceptum.* To take out, except.
- Excito**, *are, avi, atum.* To excite, arouse, awake.
- Excludo** (ex, claudo), *ere, si, sum.* To exclude, shut out, cut off.
- Excogito** (ex, cogito), *are, avi, atum.* To devise, think out.
- Excutio** (ex, quatio), *ere, ussi, ussum.* To shake or throw off.
- Exemplum**, *i, n.* Example.
- Exeo** (ex, eo), *ire, ivi or ii, itum.* To go from or forth.
- Exerceo**, *ere, cui, citum.* To exercise, practise.
- Exercitus** (exerceo), *us, m.* Army.
- Exhaurio** (ex, haurio), *ire, hausi, haustum.* To exhaust, impoverish.
- Exigo** (ex, ago), *ere, egi, actum.* To drive out, expel; finish, end; demand.
- Exiguus**, *a, um.* Small.
- Exilium**, *i, n.* Banishment, exile.
- Eximius**, *a, um.* Excellent, choice; remarkable.
- Eximo** (ex, emo), *ere, emi, emptum.* To take away or from; exempt; rescue.
- Existimo**, *are, avi, atum.* To judge, think.
- Exitium** (exeo), *i, n.* End, death, destruction.
- Exorior** (ex, orior), *iri, ortus sum,* dep. partly of 3d conj. To arise; be derived from.
- Exornō**, *are, avi, atum.* To adorn, furnish, equip.
- Exorsus**, *a, um.* Hating, hated, odious.
- Expedio**, *ire, ivi or ii, itum.* To release, extricate; also to be expedit.
- Expeditio** (expedio), *ōnis, f.* Expedition.
- Expello** (ex, pello), *ere, puli, pulsum.* To expel, drive away.
- Expeto** (ex, peto), *ere, ivi or ii, itum.* To seek, request.
- Expleo**, *ere, epi, etum.* To fill, make full; fulfil.
- Explico**, *are, avi, atum.* To unfold; adjust; settle.
- Explorator**, *ōnis, m.* Explorer, spy.
- Exporto**, *are, avi, atum.* To carry away.
- Expugno** (ex, pugno), *are, avi, atum.* To take, conquer, storm.
- Excindo**, *ere, idi, issum.* To destroy.
- Exsculpo**, *ere, psi, ptum.* To erase.
- Exsecrabilis** *e.* Detestable.
- Exsequiae**, *arum, f. pl.* Funeral.
- Exsequor** (ex, sequor), *qui, cūsum.* To prosecute, accomplish, finish; perferm.
- Exsilium**, *i, n.* Banishment, exile.
- Expectatio** (expecto), *ōnis, f.* Expectation, high hope.
- Expecto** (ex, spectro), *are, avi, atum.* To await, expect.
- Extinguo**, *ere, nzi, nctum.* To extinguish, destroy.

**Exsto, are, stitī.** To stand out, be conspicuous.  
**Exsul, ūlis, n.** and **f.** An exile.  
**Extemplo, adv.** Immediately.  
**Extorqueo, ēre, orsi, ortum.** To extort, obtain by force.  
**Extra, adv.** and **prep.** with **acc.** Without, on the outside; beyond.  
**Extrāho (ex, traho), ēre, axi, actum.** To extract; rescue.

F.

**Fabŭla, ae, f.** Report, narrative.  
**Fabulōsus (fabŭla), a, um.** Fabulous.  
**Facile (facilis), adv.** Easily.  
**Facilis (facio), e.** Easy.  
**Facilitas (facilis), atis, f.** Facility, affability.  
**Facinus, oris, n.** Wickedness, crime; deed, act.  
**Facio, ēre, feci, factum.** To do, make.  
**Factio, onis, f.** Faction, party.  
**Factum (facio), i, n.** Deed, exploit.  
**Fallo, ēre, fefelli, falsum.** To deceive, foil.  
**Fama, ae, f.** Fame, report.  
**Fames, is, f.** Hunger, famine.  
**Familia, ae, f.** Retinue of slaves, a family.  
**Familiaritas, atis, f.** Friendship, intimacy.  
**Famŭla, ae, f.** Female slave.  
**Fatālis (fatim), e.** Fated, fatal.  
**Fatigo, are, avi, atum.** To oppress, trouble, weary, importune.  
**Fatum, i, n.** Fate, destiny, oracle.  
**Faveo, ēre, favi, fautum.** To favor.  
**Favor (faveo), oris, m.** Favor, kindness.  
**Felicitas, atis, f.** Felicity, success.  
**Feliciter, adv.** Happily; prosperously.  
**Femina, ae, f.** Woman, female.  
**Femur, oris, n.** Thigh.  
**Fera, ae, f.** Wild beast.

**Fere, adv.** Almost.  
**Ferne, adv.** Almost.  
**Fero, ferre, tuli, latum.** To bear, endure; raise; say, tell; propose as law.  
**Ferrum, i, n.** Iron, sword.  
**Ferus, a, um.** Wild, rude, cruel; **ferus** and **fera** (subs.), wild animal or beast.  
**Fessus, a, um.** Wearied, exhausted.  
**Festino, are, avi, atum.** To hasten.  
**Festus, a, um.** Festal; **festum** (subs.), a festival, feast.  
**Fidelis (fides), e.** Faithful, trusty.  
**Fides, ēi, f.** Fidelity, allegiance; protection, confidence, assurance; *in fidem*, under protection.  
**Fiducia, ae, f.** Trust, confidence.  
**Filia, ae, f., dat. and abl. pl. filia-bus.** Daughter.  
**Filius, i, m.** Son.  
**Fingo, ēre, finxi, fictum.** To form, feign.  
**Finio, (finis), ire, ivi, itum.** To finish, put an end to.  
**Finis, is, m. and f.** Limit, end; *pl.* territory.  
**Finitimus, a, um.** Neighboring; *subs.* a neighbor.  
**Fio, fieri, factus sum, pass. of facio.** To be made; become, happen.  
**Firme, adv.** Firmly, resolutely.  
**Flagitiōsus, a, um.** Infamous, abandoned.  
**Flagro, are, avi, atum.** To burn, be carried on with zeal.  
**Flamma, ae, f.** Flame.  
**Flecto, ēre, xi, xum.** To bend, turn.  
**Fletus, us, m.** Weeping, tears.  
**Florens (floreo), tis.** Blooming excellent.  
**Floreo, ēre, ui.** To bloom, flourish, prosper; excel.  
**Flumen, inis, n.** Stream, river.  
**Fluvius, i, m.** River.  
**Foedus, ēris, n.** League, alliance.  
**Forem, es, &c. = essem, es, &c.,** might be; *fore = futurum esse.*  
**Forma, ae, f.** Form, shape.

- Formo* (forma), *āre, āvi, ātum*. To form, fashion.
- Fora, tis, f.* Chance; abl. *forte* as adv., by chance, perhaps.
- Fortis, e.* Brave, valiant.
- Fortiter* (fortis). Bravely.
- Fortitudo* (fortis), *inis, f.* Fortitude, bravery.
- Fortūna, ae, f.* Fortune.
- Forum, i, n.* Market-place, forum.
- Frango ēre, fregi, fractum*. To break.
- Frater, tris, m.* Brother.
- Fraudo* (fraus), *āre, āvi, ātum*. To defraud, cheat.
- Fraus, dis, f.* Fraud, deceit.
- Frequenter*, adv. Frequently, in great numbers.
- Fretum, i, n.* A strait, sound.
- Fretus, a, um.* Trusting, relying upon.
- Frigus, ōris, n.* Coldness, cold.
- Frugalitas, atis, f.* Frugality, integrity.
- Fruventarius* (frumentum), *a, um*. Producing corn, fruitful.
- Fruventum, i, n.* Corn, grain.
- Fruor, i, itus and ctus sum*. To enjoy.
- Frustra*, adv. In vain.
- Fuga, ae, f.* Flight.
- Fugio, ēre, fugi, fugitum*. To fly, flee.
- Fugo, āre, āvi, ātum*. To rout, put to flight.
- Fulmen, inis, n.* Lightning, thunder-bolt.
- Fundale, is, n.* Torch.
- Fundamentum, i, n.* Foundation.
- Funditus*, adv. Utterly, entirely.
- Fundo, ēre, fudi, fusum*. To pour out, shed, rout; also to make, cast.
- Fundus, i, m.* Land, estate.
- Funēbris* (funus), *e.* Funeral, funereal.
- Funestus* (funus), *a, um*. Deadly, destructive.
- Fungor, gi, ctus sum*, dep. To discharge, perform.
- Funus, ōris, n.* Dead body, corpse.
- Furcula, ae, f.* Narrow defile.
- Furor, ōris, m.* Fury, madness.
- Furtum, i, n.* Theft.

## G.

- Gaudeo, ēre, gavissus sum*. To rejoice, take pleasure in.
- Gelu, us, n.* Cold, hail.
- Geminus, a, um.* Twin, double.
- Gener, eri, m.* Son-in-law.
- Genus, tis, f.* Clan, race, tribe, nation.
- Genus, ōris, n.* Race, people, kind.
- Gero, ēre, gessi, gestum*. To bear, wear; carry on, perform; wage as war.
- Gestio, ire, ivi or ii, itum*. To desire, long for.
- Gesto* (gero), *āre, āvi, ātum*. To bear, carry.
- Gigno, ēre, genui, genitum*. To bring forth, beget, produce.
- Gladiator, ōris, m.* Gladiator, a fighter at the public games.
- Gladiatorius* (gladiator), *a, um*. Gladiatorial.
- Gladius, i, m.* Sword.
- Glisco, ēre*. To grow, spread; rise.
- Gloria, ae, f.* Glory.
- Gradus, us, m.* Step, stair, position.
- Grandis, e.* Large, great.
- Grando, inis, f.* Hail.
- Gratia, ae, f.* Favor, gratitude; pl. thanks.
- Gratias* or *gratis*, adv. For nothing, without pay.
- Gratulatio, ōnis, f.* Gratulation, congratulation.
- Gratus, a, um*. Pleasing, acceptable; grateful.
- Gravis, e.* Heavy, severe.
- Graviter* (gravis), adv. Heavily, severely.
- Gravo* (gravis), *āre, āvi, ātum*. To burden, load.

## H

*Habeo, ēre, ui, ūtum.* To have; regard; keep.  
*Habitus* (habeo), *us, m.* Habit, dress, attire.  
*Hasta, ae, f.* Spear.  
*Hastile, is, n.* Spear.  
*Hastilis* (hasta), *e.* Belonging to a spear.  
*Haud, adv.* Not.  
*Haurio, ĩre, si, ūtum.* To drink, draw out, exhaust.  
*Hedēra, ae, f.* Ivy.  
*Heres, ēlis, m.* and *f.* Heir, heiress.  
*Heros, ōis, m.* Hero.  
*Hesternus, a, um.* Of yesterday.  
*Hic, haec, hoc.* This, he, she, it.  
*Hic, adv.* Here, in this place.  
*Hiems, ēmis, f.* Storm, winter.  
*Hinc* (hic), *adv.* Hence, on this side; *hinc—hinc*, on the one side—on the other side.  
*Hodie, adv.* To-day.  
*Homo, ĩnis, m.* and *f.* Human being, man.  
*Honestas, ātis, f.* Honor, honesty.  
*Honor, ōris, m.* Honor, rank, dignity.  
*Honorifice, adv.* Honorably.  
*Honoro* (honor), *are, āvi, ātum.* To honor, reverence.  
*Hortor, āri, ātus sum.* To exhort, incite.  
*Hortus, i, m.* Garden.  
*Hostia, ae, f.* Victim.  
*Hostilis* (hostis), *e.* Hostile.  
*Hostis, is, c.* Enemy.  
*Humānus, a, um.* Human.  
*Humo, are, āvi, ātum.* To bury.

## I

*Ibi, adv.* There, in that place.  
*Ico, ēre, ĩci, ĩctum.* To strike; make, ratify.  
*Idem, eādem, idem.* The same; sometimes best rendered by also.

*Idoneus, a, um.* Suitable, fit.  
*Igitur, conj.* Therefore, accordingly.  
*Ignāvus, a, um.* Slothful, indolent.  
*Ignis, is, m.* Fire.  
*Ignobilit̄er, adv.* Meanly, disgracefully.  
*Ignōro, āre, āvi, ātum.* To be ignorant of, not know.  
*Ille, a, ud.* That; he, she, it.  
*Illigo, āre, āvi, ātum.* To bind.  
*Illustis, e.* Illustrious, famous.  
*Illustro* (illustis) *are, āvi, ātum.* To enlighten, illumine, illustrate.  
*Illuvies, ēi, f.* Flood.  
*Imber, bris, m.* Rain, shower.  
*Imbuo, ēre, ui, ūtum.* To imbue, impress.  
*Imitatio, ōnis, f.* Imitation.  
*Immānis, e.* Inhuman, cruel.  
*Immatūrus, a, um.* Young, immature.  
*Immēmor, ōris.* Unmindful, forgetful.  
*Immitto* (in, mitto), *ēre, ĩsi, ĩssum.* To send or let in; let go; bring forward.  
*Immortalis, e.* Immortal.  
*Immunitas, ātis, f.* Immunity, exemption.  
*Impatiens, tis.* Impatient.  
*Impatienter* (impatiens), *adv.* Impatiently.  
*Impedimentum* (impedio), *i, n.* Impediment, obstacle; *pl.* baggage.  
*Impedio, ĩre, ĩvi or ĩi, ĩtum.* To impede, embarrass; hinder, prevent.  
*Impello* (in, pello), *ēre, pūli, pulsum.* To impel, induce.  
*Impendo* (in, pendo), *ēre.* To impend, threaten, overhang.  
*Impensa, ae, f.* Expense, cost.  
*Imperātor* (impēro), *ōris, m.* Commander, emperor.  
*Imperium* (impēro), *i, n.* Command, power, rule, sway, reign.  
*Impēro, āre, āvi, ātum.* To command, rule, govern.



- Impetus**, *us*, *m*. Attack, fury.  
**Impōno** (in, pono), *ere, osui, ositum*.  
 To place or put in or to; enjoin;  
 impose.  
**Impūro**, *are, avi, atum*. To reject.  
**Imprudenter**, *adv*. Imprudently.  
**Impūbes, eris**. Youthful, young.  
**Impugno** (in, pugno), *are, avi, atum*.  
 To assail, attack.  
**Impulsus** (impello), *us, m*. Instiga-  
 tion.  
**In**, *prep*. with *acc.* or *abl*. Into,  
 to, for, against, *with acc.*; in, on,  
*with abl*.  
**Incedium** (incendo), *i, n*. Fire,  
 conflagration.  
**Incendo, ere, di, sum**. To set on  
 fire, inflame, excite.  
**Incertus** (in, certus), *a, um*. Un-  
 certain.  
**Incesso, ere, tui or i**. To attack.  
**Inchoo, are, avi, atum**. To begin,  
 commence.  
**Incido** (in, cado), *ere, cidi, casum*.  
 To fall into or upon, fall in with,  
 happen.  
**Incido** (in, caedo), *ere, cidi, casum*.  
 To cut, destroy.  
**Incipio** (in, capio), *ere, epi, eptum*.  
 To begin, undertake.  
**Incitamentum** (incito), *i, n*. Incen-  
 tive, inducement.  
**Incitatus** (incito), *a, um*. Run-  
 ning; *equo incitato*, at full speed.  
**Incito, are, avi, atum**. To incite,  
 hasten, spur on; inspire.  
**Inclino, are, avi, atum**. To incline,  
 bend; *pass.* to sink, go to ruin.  
**Incola** (incola), *ae, c*. Inhabitant.  
**Incolo** (in, colo), *ere, colui, cultum*.  
 To dwell, abide in, inhabit.  
**Incolūmis, e**. Safe, uninjured.  
**Incommodum, i, n**. Misfortune, de-  
 feat.  
**Incredibilis, e**. Incredible.  
**Incrementum, i, n**. Growth, in-  
 crease.  
**Inde, adv**. Thence, from that  
 place.  
**Indecore, adv**. Disgracefully.
- Index** (indico), *icis, m.* and *f*. In-  
 former, witness.  
**Indico** (in, dico), *ere, dixi, dictum*  
 To declare, publish, appoint.  
**Indigeo, ere, ui**. To need; *part. in-*  
*digens* subs. an indigent person.  
**Indignor** (indignus), *ari atus sum*.  
 To disdain, scorn; be indignant.  
**Indignus** (in, dignus), *a, um*. Un-  
 worthy, harsh, indecent.  
**Indoles, is, f**. Nature, native qual-  
 ity, excellence.  
**Indomitus** (in, domitus), *a, um*.  
 Unsubdued, invincible.  
**Indubitatus, a, um**. Undoubted,  
 certain.  
**Induciae, or indutiae, arum, f. pl**.  
 Truce.  
**Indūco** (in, duco), *ere, duxi, ductum*.  
 To induce, lead into, overlay,  
 adorn with, gild.  
**Induratus** (indūro), *a, um*. Obdu-  
 rate.  
**Indūro, are, avi, atum**. To harden.  
**Industria, ae, f**. Industry.  
**Ineo** (in, eo), *ire, tui or ii, itum*.  
 To enter, go into; *gratiam inire*,  
 to obtain the favor of, conciliate.  
**Inermis** (in, arma), *e*. Unarmed.  
**Infāmis, e**. Infamous, notorious.  
**Infelix** (in, felix), *icis*. Unhappy,  
 unfortunate.  
**Infensus, a, um**. Exasperated, en-  
 raged.  
**Inferior, us**. Inferior.  
**Infēro** (in, fero), *ferre, tūli, illatum*.  
 To carry against, wage against.  
**Infesto** (infestus), *are, avi, atum*.  
 To infest, trouble.  
**Infestus, a, um**. Infested, trouble-  
 some, hostile.  
**Infinitus, a, um**. Great, infinite.  
**Inflammo, are, avi, atum**. To in-  
 flame, arouse.  
**Informis** (in, forma), *e*. Shapeless,  
 deformed.  
**Infringo** (in, frango), *ere, egi, actum*.  
 To infringe, break.  
**Infūla, ae, f**. Fillet, head-dress,  
 badge of office.

- Ingēmo, ēre, ui.* To groan, lament.  
*Ingenium, i, n.* Character, genius.  
*Ingens, tis.* Great, mighty.  
*Ingenuus, a, um.* Freeborn, ingenuous.  
*Ingratia (ingrātus), ae, f.* Ingratitude.  
*Ingratiis or ingrātis, adv.* Against one's will.  
*Ingrātus (in, gratus), a, um.* Disagreeable, offensive, ungrateful.  
*Ingridior (in, gradior), di, gressus sum, dep.* To enter, encounter.  
*Inimicitia (inimicus), ae, f.* Enmity.  
*Inimicus (in, amicus), a, um.* Hostile; *subs.* an enemy.  
*Iniquē (iniquus), adv.* Unjustly.  
*Iniquus (in, aequus), a, um.* Unfavorable, unjust.  
*Initium (ineo), i, n.* Beginning; *pl.* sacred mysteries.  
*Injicio (in, jacio), ēre, jēci, jectum.* To throw in; cause; inspire with.  
*Injuria, ae, f.* Injury, wrong.  
*Injuste, adv.* Unjustly.  
*Innocens, tis.* Innocent.  
*Innotesco, ēre, notui.* To become known.  
*Innoxius, a, um.* Harmless, innocent.  
*Inopinātus, a, um.* Sudden, unexpected.  
*Inquam or inquo, defect.* (See A. & S. 183, 5.) To say.  
*Inscitia, ae, f.* Ignorance.  
*Insequor (in, sequor), qui, cūtus sum.* To follow, pursue.  
*Insidiae, arum, f. pl.* Ambush, treachery.  
*Insigne, is, n.* Mark, sign; *pl.* badges of office, insignia.  
*Insignis, e.* Distinguished, noted.  
*Insisto, ēre, stiti, stitum.* To persist; urge; untreat.  
*Insolens, tis.* Unusual, insolent.  
*Insolenter (insolens).* Insolently.  
*Inspicio, ēre, exi, ectum.* To consider, inspect.
- Instauro, are, avi, ctum.* To renew.  
*Instinctus, us, m.* Instigation, impulse.  
*Instituto (in, statuo), ēre, ui, ctum.* To institute, establish.  
*Instrumentum (instruo), i, n.* Implements, movables, goods.  
*Instruo, ēre, uzi, uctum.* To prepare, build, furnish with, equip.  
*Insula, ae, f.* Island.  
*Insuper.* Moreover.  
*Intactus, a, um.* Unharméd.  
*Intelligo, ēre, exi, ectum.* To understand, perceive, know.  
*Inter, prep. with acc.* Between, among, in the midst of.  
*Intercipio (inter, capio), ēre, cēpi, ceptum.* To catch; intercept, take from.  
*Interclūdo (inter, claudio), ēre, si, sum.* To prevent, cut off.  
*Interdum, adv.* Sometimes.  
*Interea, adv.* In the mean time.  
*Intereo (inter, eo), ēre, vi or ii, ctum.* To perish.  
*Interfector (interficio), oris, m.* Murderer.  
*Interficio (inter, facio), ēre, fēci, sectum.* To kill.  
*Intērim, adv.* In the mean time, meanwhile.  
*Interimo (inter, emo), ēre, ēmi, emptum.* To deprive of, to kill.  
*Interior, us.* Interior, inland.  
*Interitus (intereo), us, m.* Destruction.  
*Interjicio (inter, jacio), ēre, jēci, jectum.* To place between; *anno interjecto*, at the expiration of a year.  
*Internecio, onis, f.* Slaughter.  
*Internuncius, or internuntius, i, m.* Messenger.  
*Interregnum (inter, regnum), i, n.* An interregn, interregnum.  
*Interritus (in, territus), a, um.* Fearless, undismayed.  
*Interrōgo (inter, rogo), are, avi, ctum.* To ask, question.

- Interrumpo* (inter, rumpo), *ēre, rūpi, ruptum*. To break down, interrupt.
- Intersero, ēre, ui, tum*. To allege.
- Intervenio* (inter, venio), *ire, vēni, ventum*. To intervene, occur.
- Intestinus, a, um*. Intestine, civil.
- Intra, adv.* and prep. with acc. Within.
- Intro, are, avi, atum*. To enter.
- Introeo, ire, iui or ii, itum*. To enter.
- Intueor, eri, itus sum*. To look at, observe.
- Inusitatus, a, um*. Unusual, extraordinary.
- Invado, ēre, si, sum*. To invade, seize.
- Invenio* (in, venio), *ire, vēni, ventum*. To find, meet with.
- Invicem, adv.* By turns, one another.
- Invictus* (in, victus), *a, um*. Unconquered, invincible.
- Invideo* (in, video), *ēre, vidi, vsum*. To envy.
- Invidia, ae, f.* Envy.
- Invisus, a, um*. Odious, hateful.
- Invito, are, avi, atum*. To invite, allure.
- Invitus, a, um*. Unwilling.
- Ipsē, a, um*. Self, himself, herself, itself.
- Ira, ae, f.* Anger.
- Iracundia, ae, f.* Anger, hasty temper.
- Irrideo* (in, rideo), *ēre, si, sum*. To ridicule, laugh at.
- Irrumpo* (in, rumpo), *ēre, rūpi, ruptum*. To rush into; make an incursion into.
- Is, ea, id.* He, she, it; that.
- Ita, adv.* Thus, so; to such an extent.
- Itaque, conj.* Therefore, and thus.
- Item, adv.* Likewise, also.
- Iter, itinēris, n.* Way, march, route.
- Iterato* (itēro), *adv.* Again, a second time.
- Itēro* (itērum), *are, avi, atum*. To repeat, renew.
- Itērum, adv.* Again, a second time.
- J.
- Jaceo, ēre, ui, itum*. To lie.
- Jacio, ēre, jeci, jactum*. To throw, hurl; also, to lay, place, erect.
- Jaciūm* (jacio), *i, n.* Dart, javelin.
- Jam, adv.* Now, already.
- Jubeo, ēre, jussi, jussum*. To order, direct.
- Jucundus, a, um*. Pleasing, delightful.
- Judex* (judico), *icis, m.* and *f.* Judge, arbiter.
- Judicium* (judex), *i, n.* Judgment, decision, trial.
- Judico, are, avi, atum*. To judge.
- Jugulo, are, avi, atum*. To kill, murder.
- Jugum, i, n.* Yoke.
- Jungo, ēre, nxi, nctum*. To join, unite.
- Junior* (juvēnis), *us*. Younger.
- Juro, are, avi, atum*. To take oath, swear.
- Jus, juris, n.* Right, justice.
- Jusjurandum jurisjurandi.* (See A. & S. 91.) An oath.
- Jussu* (jubeo), *abl. sing.* used only in this case. Command, order.
- Justitia* (justus), *ae, f.* Justice.
- Justus* (jus), *a, um*. Just.
- Juvēnis, e.* Young; *subs.* a youth, young man.
- L.
- L.* An abbreviation of *Lucius*.
- Labor, oris, m.* Labor.
- Labōro* (labor), *are, avi, atum*. To labor, strive, take pains; toil; suffer.
- Lac, lactis, n.* Milk.
- Lacesso, ēre, iui or ii, itum*. To excite, assail, provoke.

- Lacrīma*, or *lacrīma*, *ae, f.* Tear.  
*Lacrīno*, or *lacrīmo* (*lacrīma*), *āre, āvi, ātum.* To weep, shed tears.  
*Lacus, us, m.* Lake.  
*Laete* (*laetus*), *adv.* Gladly.  
*Laetitia* (*laetus*), *ae, f.* Joy, gladness.  
*Laetus, a, um.* Glad, joyous.  
*Laevus, a, um.* Left, on the left hand.  
*Largior, iri, itus sum.* To bestow, lavish; bribe.  
*Lassitudo, inis, f.* Fatigue, weariness.  
*Late, adv.* Widely, far and wide.  
*Latēbra, ae, f.* Retreat, hiding-place, pretence.  
*Latīne* (*Latinus*), *adv.* In Latin.  
*Latro, ōnis, m.* Mercenary, robber.  
*Latus, ēris, n.* Side.  
*Laudo* (*laus*), *āre, āvi, ātum.* To praise.  
*Laureus, a, um.* Of laurel, laurel; *laurea* (subs.), a laurel-tree or branch, laurel wreath.  
*Laus, laudis, f.* Praise.  
*Laxo, āre, āvi, ātum.* To relax, loosen.  
*Lectus* (*lego*), *a, um.* Choice, excellent.  
*Legatio, ōnis, f.* Legation, embassy.  
*Legatus, i, m.* Ambassador, lieutenant.  
*Legio, ōnis, f.* Legion.  
*Lego* (*lex*), *āre, āvi, ātum.* To bequeathe as a legacy.  
*Lego, ēre, legi, lectum.* To choose, elect; read.  
*Lenitas, atis, f.* Lenity, mildness.  
*Leniter, adv.* Gently, mildly.  
*Letalis, e.* Deadly, mortal.  
*Levis, e.* Light, easy.  
*Leviter* (*levis*), *adv.* Lightly, slightly.  
*Lex, legis, f.* Law, condition, terms.  
*Liber, bri, m.* Book.  
*Liber, ēra, ērum.* Free.
- Liberalitas, atis, f.* Liberality, generosity.  
*Libēri, ōrum, m. pl.* Children.  
*Libēro* (*liber*), *āre, āvi, ātum.* To liberate, free.  
*Libertas* (*liber*), *atis, f.* Liberty, freedom.  
*Libertus, i, m.* A freedman.  
*Libido, inis, f.* Desire, lust.  
*Licet, impers.* It is lawful, is permitted.  
*Licet, conj.* Although, though.  
*Ligneus, a, um.* Wooden, of wood.  
*Libērae, arum, f. pl.* Letter, letters; literature.  
*Literarius* (*litērae*), *a, um.* Literary.  
*Litus, ōris, n.* Shore, sea-shore.  
*Locuplētō, āre, āvi, ātum.* To enrich, make rich.  
*Locus, i, m. pl. loci, or loca, n.* Place.  
*Longe* (*longus*), *adv.* Much, greatly, by far.  
*Longinquus, a, um.* Remote, distant.  
*Longus, a, um.* Long.  
*Loquor, qui, locūtus sum.* To speak, converse.  
*Lorica, ae, f.* Coat of mail.  
*Luctus* (*lugeo*), *us, m.* Grief, mourning.  
*Ludibrium, i, n.* Sport, derision, laughing-stock.  
*Ludicra, crum, adj. nom. sing. m.* not used. Sportive.  
*Ludicrum, i, n.* Show, game.  
*Ludo, ēre, lusi, lusum.* To play, sport.  
*Ludus, i, m.* Play, sport, school.  
*Lugeo, ēre, lusi.* To grieve, mourn, weep for.  
*Luna, ae, f.* Moon.  
*Luo, ēre, lusi, lūtum or lutum.* To pay; expiate, atone for.  
*Lupa, ae, f.* A she-wolf.  
*Lustratio, ōnis, f.* Expiatory sacrifice; review attended with sacrifices.  
*Lustro, āre, āvi, ātum.* To purify, review.

*Lux, lucis, f.* Light, light of day.  
*Luxuria, ae, f.* Luxury, excess.  
*Luxus, us, m.* Luxury, luxuries, revelling.

www.libtool.com

## M.

*M.* An abbreviation of *Marcus*.  
*Magis, adv.* More.  
*Magister, tri, m.* Master, leader; teacher.  
*Magistratus, us, m.* Magistracy, magistrate.  
*Magnifice* (magnificus) *adv.* Magnificently, splendidly.  
*Magnificenter, adv.* = *magnifice*.  
*Magnificentia* (magnificus), *ae, f.* Magnificence, costliness.  
*Magnificus, a, um;* comp. *magnificentior*, superl. *magnificentissimus*. Splendid; stately; high-minded.  
*Magnitudo* (magnus), *inis, f.* Greatness, size.  
*Magnus, a, um;* comp. *major*, superl. *maximus*. Great; *majores*, forefathers, ancestors; *majores* with *natu*, elders.  
*Magus, i, m.* A wise man, particularly among the Persians.  
*Majestas, atis, f.* Majesty, dignity.  
*Major.* (See *magnus*.)  
*Male* (malus), *adv.* Badly, with ill success.  
*Malo, malle, malui*, irregular. (See F. B. 410; A. & S. 178.) To prefer.  
*Malum, i, n.* Misfortune, evil.  
*Malus, a, um;* comp. *pejor*, superl. *pessimus*. Bad, wicked.  
*Mando, are, avi, atum.* To bid, enjoin, intrust.  
*Maneo, ere, nisi, nsum.* To remain.  
*Manifesto, are, avi, atum.* To show, manifest.  
*Manumitto, ere, isi, issum.* To emancipate, make free.  
*Manus, us, f.* Hand, force.  
*Mare, is, n.* Sea.

*Martinus* (mare), *a, um.* Marine, of the sea, from or by the sea.  
*Maritus, i, m.* Husband.  
*Mas, maris, m.* Male, the male, man.  
*Mater, tris, f.* Mother.  
*Materia, ae, f.,* or *materies, ei, f.* Materials.  
*Matrimonium, i, n.* Marriage.  
*Matrōna, ae, f.* Matron.  
*Maxime, adv.* Especially, in the highest degree.  
*Maximus, a, um;* superl. of *magnus*. Greatest. (See also H. & G. Index.)  
*Medicus, i, m.* Physician.  
*Medius, a, um;* Middle, midst of, middle of. (See F. B. 267.)  
*Melior* (bonus), *us.* Better.  
*Membrum, i, n.* Member, limb.  
*Memini, isti, defect.* (See A. & S. 183.) To remember.  
*Memorabilis, e.* Memorable.  
*Memoria, ae, f.* Memory, recollection.  
*Memoro, are, avi, atum.* To mention, relate.  
*Mens, tis, f.* Mind, reason.  
*Mensis, is, m.* Month.  
*Mentio, onis, f.* Mention.  
*Mercatus, us, m.* Public sale, fair; meeting.  
*Mercor, ari, atus sum.* To trade, buy.  
*Mereo, ere, ui, itum.* To deserve, merit.  
*Mergo, ere, si, sum.* To merge, sink, destroy.  
*Meritum, i, n.* Reward, merit.  
*Merum, i, n.* Wine, pure wine.  
*Merx, cis, f.* Merchandise, goods.  
*Metallum, i, n.* Metal, mine.  
*Metuo, ere, ui.* To fear.  
*Metus, us, m.* Fear, dread.  
*Mens, a, um, voc. sing. masc. mi.* My, mine.  
*Migro, are, avi, atum.* To migrate, remove.  
*Miles, is, m.* Soldier.  
*Militaris* (miles), *e.* Military.

- Militia** (miles), *ae, f.* Warfare, military service.
- Milito** (miles), *are, avi, atum.* To serve as a soldier, to serve.
- Mille**, subs. and adj. Thousand; *millia*, subs., a thousand, a thousand men.
- Milliarius** (or *um, n.*), *i, m.* Milestone, mile.
- Minor** (parvus), *us.* Smaller, less.
- Minus**, adv. Less.
- Mirabilis** (miror), *e.* Wonderful.
- Miror, ari, atus sum.** To wonder, admire.
- Miser, era, erum.** Unfortunate, miserable.
- Misereo, ere, ui, itum.** To pity; often impersonal.
- Misereor, eri, ertus or eritus sum,** dep. To pity.
- Miseria** (miser), *ae, f.* Misery, affliction.
- Misericordia, ae, f.** Compassion.
- Mitto, ere, misi, missum.** To send.
- Moderate** (moderatus), adv. With moderation.
- Moderatio, onis, f.** Moderation, self-control.
- Moderatus, a, um.** Discreet, moderate.
- Modius** (or *um, n.*), *i, m.* Measure, a little more than a peck.
- Modus, i, m.** Manner, measure, limits.
- Moenia, ium, n. pl.** Walls of a city, city.
- Moles, is, f.** Mole, dam.
- Molito, onis, f.** Undertaking, preparation.
- Mollis, ire, vi or ii, itum.** To soften.
- Momentum, i, n.** Weight, influence.
- Monitus, us, m.** Advice.
- Mons, tis, m.** Mountain, mount.
- Monstro, are, avi, atum.** To show.
- Mora, ae, f.** Delay.
- Morbis, i, m.** Disease.
- Morior, iri or i, mortuus sum,** dep. To die.
- Moror** (mora), *ari, atus sum,* dep. To delay, tarry.
- Mors, tis, f.** Death.
- Mortifer** (mors and fero), *era, erum, ci.* Deadly, mortal.
- Mos, moris, m.** Custom, manner; *pl.* character, morals.
- Motus, us, m.** Motion; commotion, revolt.
- Moveo, ere, movi, motum.** To move, excite.
- Mox, adv.** Presently, soon.
- Mucro, onis, m.** Point of sword, sword.
- Muliëbris** (mulier), *e.* Belonging to women, womanly, woman's.
- Mulier, eris, f.** Woman.
- Multitudo** (multus), *inis, f.* Multitude.
- Multo, are, avi, atum.** To punish, deprive of by way of punishment; to fine.
- Multo, adv.** By far, much.
- Multus, a, um;** comp. *plus, n.*, superl. *plurimus.* Much, many.
- Munia, ium, n. pl.** Duties, functions of office.
- Munimentum, i, n.** Fortification, defence, covering.
- Munio, ire, vi or ii, itum.** To fortify, defend.
- Munitio, onis, f.** Fortification, rampart.
- Munitus, a, um.** Fortified.
- Munus, eris, n.** Reward, present; service, office.
- Murus, i, m.** Wall.
- Muto, ari, avi, atum.** To change, alter.
- Mutuus, a, um.** Mutual.

## N.

- Nam, conj.** For.
- Namque, conj.** For, but.
- Nanciscor, ci, nactus sum,** dep. To obtain, take advantage of.
- Narro, are, avi, atum.** To relate, narrate.

- Nascor, ci, natus sum.* To be born, to arise.
- Natio, ōnis, f.* Nation, people.
- Natus, defective, abl. sing.* By birth, in age; *maximus natus, eldest.*
- Naturalis, e.* Natural.
- Navalis (navis), e.* Naval.
- Navigatio, ōnis, f.* Navigation, sailing.
- Navigo, āre, āvi, ātum.* To sail upon, navigate.
- Navis, is, f.* Ship.
- Ne, adv. and conj.* used with imperative and subj. Not, that not, lest; *after verbs of fearing, that, lest; nequidem, or ne—quidem, not even.*
- Ne, interrog. particle, 177, Rem. 1 and 2.*
- Nec or neque, adv. and conj.* Neither, nor; and not, not; *nec—nec, neque—neque, neither—nor.*
- Necessarius, a, um.* Necessary.
- Neco, āre, āvi, ātum.* To slay, kill.
- Negligens, tis.* Negligent, neglectful.
- Negligo, ěre, exi, ectum.* To neglect, disregard.
- Nego, āre, āvi, ātum.* To deny, refuse.
- Negotium, i, n.* Business, difficulty.
- Nemo (inis, gen. not in good use).* No one, nobody.
- Nepos, ōtis, m.* Grandson.
- Neque.* (See *Nec.*)
- Nequeo, ěre, ěvi or ěi, ětum, irreg. like eo.* (See A. & S. 182, R. 3.) To be unable, not to be able.
- Nequidem.* (See *Ne.*)
- Nequis or ne quis, qua, quod or quid.* That no one.
- Nequitia, ae, f.* Inactivity, remissness.
- Nescio (ne and scio), ěre, ěvi or ěi, ětum.* To be ignorant, not to know.
- Nihil, n. indecl.* Nothing; *adv. not, in nothing.*
- Nimis, adv.* Exceedingly, too much.
- Nimius, a, um.* Excessive, too much, too great.
- Nisi, conj.* Unless, if not, except.
- Nitor, ti, nisus or nixus sum, dep.* To strive, attempt.
- Nix, nivis, f.* Snow.
- Nobilis, e.* Noble, famous.
- Nobilitas (nobilis), atis, f.* Fame, nobleness; nobility, nobles.
- Noceo, ěre, ui, itum.* To hurt, harm.
- Noctu, abl.* By night.
- Nocturnus, a, um.* Nocturnal, occurring at night.
- Nolo, nolle, nolui, irreg.* (See F. B. 410, and A. & S. 178.) To be unwilling.
- Nomen, inis, n.* Name.
- Non, adv.* Not; *nonnisi, only.*
- Nonagesimus, a, um.* Ninetieth.
- Nondum, adv.* Not yet.
- Nonne, interrog. particle.* (See 177, R. 2.) Whether, *expecting answer yes.*
- Nonnullus, a, um* (declined like *nullus*). Some.
- Nonus, a, um.* Ninth.
- Novem, indecl.* Nine.
- Noverca, ae, f.* Stepmother.
- Novo (novus), āre, āvi, ātum.* To renew, change; revolutionize.
- Novus, a, um.* New; *novae res, revolution.*
- Nox, noctis, f.* Night.
- Nubo, ěre, psi, ptum.* To veil one's self, to marry, *applied to the bride as she was covered with a veil.*
- Nudus, a, um.* Naked, uncovered.
- Nullus, a, um.* (See F. B. 113, R.) No one, no.
- Num, interrog. particle.* (See 177, R. 2, and 381.) Whether, *used both in direct and independent questions.*
- Numĕrus, i, m.* Number.
- Nunc.* Now.

*Nuncūpo, are, avi, atum.* To call, name.

*Nunquam.* Never.

*Nuntio (or cio), are, avi, atum.* To announce, relate.

*Nuntius, i, m.* Message, news, messenger.

*Nuptiae, arum, f. pl.* Marriage, nuptials.

*Nutrio, ire, vi or ii, itum.* To nourish, support.

*Nympha, ae, f.* Spouse, wife, nymph.

## O.

*Ob, prep.* with acc. On account of, for.

*Obducō (ob, duco), ēre, duxi, ductum.* To draw over, overspread, cover.

*Obedio, ire, vi or ii, itum.* To obey, serve; be subject to.

*Obeo (ob, eo), ire, vi or ii, itum.* To meet; die.

*Objecto, are, avi, atum.* To expose, set forth; endanger.

*Objicio (ob, jacio), ēre, jēci, jectum.* To expose, offer, present.

*Obitus, us, m.* Death.

*Obligō, are, avi, atum.* To oblige, put under obligation.

*Obliviscor, ci, oblitus sum, dep.* To forget.

*Obruo, ēre, ui, utum.* To destroy, overwhelm.

*Obscūre (obscurus), adv.* In obscurity, obscurely.

*Obscūrus, a, um.* Obscure, hidden; mean.

*Obsequium, i, n.* Submission, fealty.

*Obseruo, are, avi, atum.* To observe, keep.

*Obses, idis, m. and f.* Hostage.

*Obsideo (ob, sedeo), ēre, ēdi, essum.* To besiege, invest.

*Obsidio (obsideo), onis, f.* Siege, blockade.

*Obsto (ob, sto), are, stiti, statum.* To oppose, prevent.

*Obtēro, ēre, trivi, tritum.* To crush, wear down.

*Obtestor, ari, atus sum, dep.* To call to witness, implore, conjure.

*Obtineo (ob, teneo), ēre, inui, entum.* To obtain, hold, prevail.

*Obtingo, ēre, figi.* To befall, happen to.

*Obtrunco, are, avi, atum.* To slaughter.

*Occasio, onis, f.* Opportunity, occasion.

*Occido (ob, caedo), ēre, cidi, ctum.* To kill.

*Occulte (occultus), adv.* In secret, secretly.

*Occultus, a, um.* Secret, hidden; reserved, dissembling.

*Occupo, are, avi, atum.* To occupy, take possession of.

*Occurro (ob, curro), ēre, curri (cucurri), cursum.* To meet, attack.

*Oceānus, i, m.* Ocean.

*Octāvus (octo), a, um.* Eighth.

*Octingenti, ae, a.* Eight hundred.

*Octo, indecl.* Eight.

*Octoginta (octo), indecl.* Eighty.

*Oculus, i, m.* Eye.

*Odium, i, n.* Hatred, enmity.

*Offendo, ēre, di, sum.* To offend, injure.

*Offensa, ae, f.* Offence, harm.

*Offensus (offendo), a, um.* Offended, hostile.

*Offero (ob, fero), ferre, obtuli, oblatum.* To offer, show; *se offerre*, to offer one's self as an antagonist, to oppose; expose one's self.

*Offend*, to offend, injure.

*Officium, i, n.* Office, duty.

*Olim, adv.* Formerly.

*Omen, inis, n.* Omen, sign.

*Omnino (omnis), adv.* Wholly; only, in all; at all.

*Omnis, e.* All, every.

*Oneraria (onus), ae, f.* Ship of burden.



- Onustus** (onus), *a, um*. Laden, full of.
- Optimus**, *a, um*. Rich, fertile.
- Oportet**, impera. It behooves, one ought.
- Opprior**, *iri, oppertus* or *opperitus sum*. To wait for, await.
- Oppëtc**, *ëre, iui* or *ii, itum*. To encounter, seek.
- Oppidanus** (oppidum), *a, um*. Inhabitant of a town.
- Oppidum**, *i, n*. Town, city.
- Opportunitas** (opportünus), *ätis, f*. Opportunity, fitness.
- Opportünus**, *a, um*. Suitable, fit.
- Opprimo**, *ëre, essi, essum*. To put down, defeat, overcome; suppress; oppress.
- Oppugno** (ob, pugno), *äre, ävi, ätum*. To attack, storm, take by storm.
- Ops**, *opis, f*, nom. sing. not used. Power, resources, force, aid.
- Optimas** (optimus), *ätis, m*. and *f*. A noble, one of the aristocracy.
- Optünus** (superl. bonus), *a, um*. Best, most excellent.
- Optio**, *önis, f*. Choice, option.
- Opto**, *äre, ävi, ätum*. To wish, desire; ask.
- Opülens, tis**, or *opulentus, a, um*, adj. Wealthy, rich.
- Opus**, *ëris, n*. Work.
- Opus**, nom. and accus. Need.
- Ora, ae, f**. The shore, coast.
- Oraculum**, *i, n*. Response, oracle.
- Oratio** (oro), *önis, f*. Oration, speech, language.
- Orator** (oro), *öris, m*. Orator.
- Orbis, is, m**. Circle, world; *orbis terrarum*, the world.
- Orbitas, ätis, f**. Bereavement, orphanage.
- Ordino** (ordo), *äre, ävi, ätum*. To arrange, establish.
- Ordo**, *tnis, m*. Row, rank, order; bank as of oars; *extra ordinem*, out of the common course.
- Oriens** (part. orior), *tis*. Rising, east.
- Origo, inis, f**. Origin, source.
- Orior, iri, ortus sum**, dep. mostly of 3d conj. (See A. & S. 177.) To rise, appear.
- Ornamentum, i, n**. Equipage, ornament.
- Oro, äre, ävi, ätum**. To adorn, equip.
- Oro, äre, ävi, ätum**. To ask, speak.
- Ortus** (orior), *us, m*. A rising; birth; beginning.
- Os, ossis, n**. Bone.
- Oscülor, äri, ätus sum**. To kiss.
- Ostendo, ëre, di, sum or *tum*. To show.**
- Ostentum, i, n**. Prodigy.
- Ostium, i, n**. Mouth, door.

## P.

- P.** An abbreviation of *Publius*.
- Paco** (pax), *äre, ävi, ätum*. To subdue.
- Pactum, i, n**. Bargain, contract; *abl. pacto*, way, manner.
- Paene**, adv. Almost.
- Palam**, adv. Openly.
- Palatium, i, n**. Palace.
- Pango, ëre, nxi, nctum, or pepigi, pactum**. To contract, ratify.
- Par, paris, adj**. Equal, a match for.
- Parätus** (paro), *a, um*. Prepared, ready.
- Parco, ëre, peperci or *parsi, parçtum* or *parsum*. To spare.**
- Parens, tis, m**. and *f*. Parent.
- Parento** (parens), *äre, ävi, ätum*. To sacrifice in honor of parents, or friends.
- Parco, ëre, ui, itum**. To obey, be subject to.
- Pario, ëre, pepëri, paritum or *partum*. To bear, bring forth, produce.**
- Paro, äre, ävi, ätum**. To prepare, equip.
- Part, partis, f**. Part, portion; party.

*Parsimonia*, *ae*, *f*. Frugality, parsimony.  
*Partim*, *adv*. Partly, in part; *partim*—*partim*, some—others, either—or.  
*Parvus*, *a*, *um*; *comp*. *minor*; *superl*. *minimus*. Small, little.  
*Passus*, *us*, *m*. Pace; *mille passus*, a mile.  
*Pastor* (*pasco*), *oris*, *m*. Shepherd.  
*Patefacio*, *ere*, *feci*, *factum*. To disclose.  
*Pateo*, *ere*, *ui*. To lie open, be exposed.  
*Pater*, *tris*, *m*. Father.  
*Paternus* (*pater*), *a*, *um*. Paternal.  
*Patior*, *ti*, *passus sum*. To permit, keep, endure.  
*Patria*, *ae*, *f*. Country, native country.  
*Patrimonium*, *i*, *n*. Estate, patrimony.  
*Patrius* (*pater*), *a*, *um*. Fatherly.  
*Patruelis*, *is*, *m*. and *f*. Cousin by the father's side.  
*Patruus*, *i*, *m*. Uncle by the father's side.  
*Pauci*, *ae*, *a*. Few.  
*Paulatim*, *adv*. By degrees, gradually.  
*Paulus*, *a*, *um*. Little, small.  
*Pax*, *pacis*, *f*. Peace.  
*Pecco*, *are*, *avi*, *atum*. To err, sin.  
*Pecunia*, *ae*, *f*. Money, sum of money.  
*Pedes*, *itis*, *m*. Foot-soldier.  
*Pedester*, *tris*, *tre*. Pedestrian, on foot, on land.  
*Pellicio*, *ere*, *lexi*, *lectum*. To allure, cajole.  
*Pellis*, *is*, *f*. Skin, hide.  
*Pello*, *ere*, *pepuli*, *pulsum*. To drive.  
*Pendeo*, *ere*, *pependi*. To hang, be suspended.  
*Penetro*, *are*, *avi*, *atum*. To penetrate.  
*Pernitus*, *adv*. Inwardly; fully, entirely.  
*Penuria*, *ae*, *f*. Poverty, want.

*Per*, *prep*. with *acc*. Through, by.  
*Percussor* (*percutio*), *oris*, *m*. Assassin, murderer.  
*Percutio*, *ere*, *ussi*, *ussum*. To kill, slay, strike.  
*Perditus*, *a*, *um*. Lost, abandoned, desperate.  
*Perdo*, *ere*, *didi*, *ditum*. To destroy, waste, lose.  
*Perduco* (*per*, *duco*), *ere*, *duxi*, *ductum*. To conduct, bring to.  
*Peregrinus*, *a*, *um*. Foreign.  
*Perennis* (*per*, *annus*), *e*. Continual, perpetual.  
*Pereo*, *ire*, *ivi* or *ii*, *itum*. To perish.  
*Perfero* (*per*, *fero*), *ferre*, *tuli*, *latum*. To carry through; bear; suffer.  
*Perfidia*, *ae*, *f*. Perfidy.  
*Pergo*, *ere*, *rexi*, *rectum*. To go on or to, persevere.  
*Periculosus* (*periculum*), *a*, *um*. Dangerous.  
*Periculum*, *i*, *n*. Danger, peril.  
*Peritus*, *a*, *um*. Skilled in, skilful.  
*Permitto* (*per*, *mitto*), *ere*, *isi*, *issum*. To send; grant, permit; *permitteditur*, *impers*. it is permitted.  
*Permutatio*, *onis*, *f*. Exchange, barter.  
*Perniciosus* (*pernicies*), *a*, *um*. Destructive, pernicious.  
*Perpaucus*, *a*, *um*. Few, very few.  
*Perp̄etro*, *are*, *avi*, *atum*. To finish, achieve.  
*Perpetuo*, *adv*. Constantly, ever.  
*Perpetuus*, *a*, *um*. Perpetual, constant.  
*Pers̄quor*, *qui*, *citus sum*. To follow, carry on, prosecute.  
*Persevero*, *are*, *avi*, *atum*. To persevere, persist.  
*Pers̄ona*, *ae*, *f*. Part, character, person.  
*Perspicio*, *ere*, *exi*, *ectum*. To perceive.  
*Perstringo*, *ere*, *inxi*, *ictum*. To graze, wound slightly

- Persuadeo, ēre, si, sum.* To persuade.
- Perterro, ēre, ui, itum.* To terrify greatly.
- Pertineo, ēre, ui.* To pertain to, tend.
- Pervenio (per, venio), ire, vēni, ventum.* To reach, come to.
- Pervigilia, ae, f.* A vigil, keeping awake.
- Peto, ēre, tvi or ii, itum.* To seek, ask, aim at.
- Petulantia, ae, f.* Petulance, wantonness.
- Phalærae, arum, f. pl.* Trappings, ornaments for horses.
- Philosophus, i, m.* Philosopher.
- Pictus (pingo), a, um.* Painted.
- Pileus (or, um, n.), i, m.* Hat.
- Pingo, ēre, pinxi, pictum.* To paint, depict.
- Pirata, ae, m.* Pirate.
- Placeo, ēre, ui, itum.* To please, be pleasing to; be determined.
- Placidus (placeo), a, um.* Quiet, gentle.
- Plane, adv.* Plainly.
- Plebs, bis, f.* Common people.
- Plerumque, adv.* Commonly, frequently.
- Plerusque, aque, umque.* Most, many.
- Plurimus.* (See *Multus*.)
- Plus, adv.* More.
- Plus, uris, n. adj.* (See *Multus*.) Much, *pl.* many.
- Poculum, i, n.* Cup.
- Poenā, ae, f.* Punishment.
- Poeta, ae, m.* Poet.
- Polliceor, eri, itus sum.* To promise.
- Polluo, ēre, ui, utum.* To pollute, defile.
- Pompa, ae, f.* Pomp.
- Pono, ēre, posui, positum.* To place, build, pitch.
- Pons, tis, m.* Bridge.
- Populatio, onis, f.* Pillaging, booty; people, population.
- Populo (populus), are, avi, atum.* To depopulate; *populor, dep.* = *populo*.
- Populus, i, m.* People.
- Porrigo, ēre, rezi, rectum.* To extend, stretch.
- Porta, ae, f.* Gate.
- Portendo, ēre, di, tum.* To portend.
- Portio, onis, f.* Portion, share.
- Portus, us, m.* Port, harbor.
- Posco, ēre, poposci.* To demand, ask.
- Possessio, onis, f.* Possession.
- Possideo, ēre, edi, essum.* To possess.
- Possum, posse, potui, irreg.* (See F. B. 407, and A. & S. 154.) To be able.
- Post, adv. and prep. with acc.* Afterwards, after, since.
- Postea, adv.* Afterwards.
- Posteritas, atis, f.* Posterity.
- Posterus, a, um.* Following, ensuing; *posteri*, posterity, descendants; *postrimo, ad postrimum*, at last.
- Postquam, or post quam, conj.* After, after that.
- Postrumus (superl. posterus), a, um.* The last.
- Postridie, adv.* On the following day.
- Postulo, arc, avi, atum.* To demand.
- Potens (possum), tis.* Able, powerful.
- Potestas, atis, f.* Power.
- Potior, iri, itus sum.* To obtain, get possession of.
- Praebeo, ēre, ui, itum.* To show, furnish.
- Praecedo, ēre, essi, essum.* To precede.
- Praeceptor, oris, m.* Preceptor, commander.
- Praecipio, ēre, cepi, ceptum.* To admonish, advise, order.
- Praecipitium, i, n.* Precipice.
- Praecipito, are, avi, atum.* To throw down, precipitate.

- Praecipue** (praecipuus), adv. Especially.
- Praecipuus**, a, um. Remarkable, prominent, special.
- Praecläre**, adv. Excellently, nobly.
- Praeclüdo**, (prae, claudio), *äre, si, sum*. To hinder, preclude, cut off.
- Praeco**, *önis*, m. Herald, crier.
- Praeda**, *ae, f*. Prey, booty.
- Praedico** (prae, dico), *äre dixi, dictum*. To predict, forewarn.
- Praedictum**, i, n. Prediction, warning.
- Praeditus**, a, um. Endued with.
- Praedor** (praeda), *äri, ätus sum*. To plunder.
- Praefäri**, defective. (See *Fari*, A. & S. 183, 6.) To predict, prophecy; say.
- Praefectus**, i, m. Commander, prefect.
- Praefero** (prae, fero), *ferre, tülü, lätum*. To prefer, choose; carry or bear before.
- Praeficio** (prae, facio), *äre, feci, factum*. To place over, put in command.
- Praemium**, i, n. Reward.
- Praepöno** (prae, pono), *äre, posui, positum*. To place over, intrust with.
- Praescribo** (prae, scribo), *äre, psi, ptum*. To direct, prescribe.
- Praesens**, *tis*. Present.
- Praesentia** (praesens), *ae, f*. Presence.
- Praesidium**, i, n. Guard, garrison.
- Praestans**, *tis*. Excellent, eminent.
- Praesto**, *äre, sliti, itum*. To surpass, be superior to; furnish, do, pay; evince, show.
- Praesum** (prae, sum), *esse, fui, futurus*. To preside over, command.
- Fraetendo**, *äre, di, tum*. To pretend, allege.
- Praeter**, prep. with acc. Except, besides.
- Praeterea**, adv. Besides, moreover.
- Praetereo** (praeter, eo), *äre, üvi or ii, itum*. To pass by, omit.
- Praetorius**, a, um. Praetorian, belonging to a praetor or general; - **praetorius**, subs. one who has been praetor.
- Pravus**, a, um. Depraved, bad.
- Precor**, *äri, ätus sum*. To beseech, pray.
- Premo**, *äre, essi, essum*. To press, urge.
- Pretium**, i, n. Price, worth.
- Preces**, *um, f. pl. dat. acc. and abl. sing.* also occur. Prayers, entreaties.
- Pridie**, adv. On the day before.
- Primo**, **primum** (primus), adv. At first, first.
- Primus** (superl. prior), a, um. First.
- Princeps**, *ipis*, m. Prince, ruler; chief man.
- Principatus**, *us, m*. Sovereignty, imperial power.
- Principium**, i, n. Beginning.
- Prior**, *us*. Former, previous.
- Pristinus**, a, um. Ancient, primitive.
- Prius**, adv. Before; *priusquam* or *prius quam*; before that, before.
- Privätus**, a, um. Private, personal, *subs.* a private citizen.
- Privignus**, i, m. Step-son.
- Privo**, *äre, ävi, ätum*. To deprive of.
- Pro**, prep. with abl. Before, in front of; for, instead of, as; *pro hoste*, as an enemy.
- Probatio**, *önis, f*. Approbation, proof.
- Probo**, *äre, ävi, ätum*. To prove, show; approve.
- Procëdo**, *äre, essi, essum*. To step forth, advance, proceed, come on.

- Proconsul** (pro, consul), *ũlia*, m. Proconsul, one with the authority of consul.
- Procul**, adv. At a distance, far off.
- Procurō, āre, āvi, ātum.** To attend to, have the care of.
- Procurro** (pro, curro), *ēre, curri* (cucurri), *cursum.* To run forth, project.
- Prodigium**, *i*, n. Prodigy, prophetic omen.
- Proditio** (prodo), *ōnis*, f. Treachery, treason.
- Proditōr** (prodo), *ōris*, m. Traitor.
- Prodo, ēre, didi, ditum.** To disclose, betray.
- Prodūco** (pro, duco), *ēre, duxi, ductum.* To lead forth, produce.
- Proelium**, *i*, n. Battle, conflict.
- Profecto**, adv. Indeed, truly.
- Proficiscor, ci, profectus sum.** To depart, set out, go.
- Profigo, āre, āvi, ātum.** To overthrow, ruin.
- Profugio** (pro, fugio), *ēre, fugi, itum.* To flee, escape.
- Progredior, i, essus sum.** To proceed, advance.
- Prohibeo, ēre, ui, itum.** To prohibit, prevent.
- Promissus, a, um.** Growing long, long.
- Promitto** (pro, mitto), *ēre, isi, isum.* To send forth, promise.
- Promontorium, i, n.** Promontory.
- Promptus, a, um.** Prompt, ready.
- Propāgo, āre, āvi, ātum.** To propagate; prolong.
- Prope**, adv. Near, nearly.
- Propēro, āre, āvi, ātum.** To hasten.
- Proprius** (comp. prope), adv. Nearer.
- Propōno** (pro, pono), *ēre, posui, positum.* To set forth, state, propose.
- Proprius, a, um.** Peculiar, proper, one's own.
- Propter**, prep. with acc. For, on account of.
- Propterea**, adv. Therefore, on that account.
- Propulso, āre, āvi, ātum.** To repel, ward off.
- Prorumpo, ēre, rūpi, ruptum.** To rush or break forth.
- Proscribo** (pro, scribo), *ēre, psi, ptum.* To proscribe, outlaw.
- Prosequor, qui, cūtus sum.** To follow, attend; pursue, prosecute.
- Prorsilio, ire, ivi, ii or ui.** To leap up, spring forth.
- Prosperē**, adv. Happily, prosperously.
- Prosterno, ēre, strāvi, strātum.** To prostrate, overthrow.
- Prosum** (pro, sum), *desse, fui.* To profit, avail.
- Protinus**, adv. Directly, immediately after.
- Providet** (pro, video), *ēre, vidi, visum.* To provide, be on one's guard.
- Provincia, ae, f.** Province.
- Provocatio** (provōco), *ōnis*, f. Challenge.
- Provōco, āre, āvi, ātum.** To challenge.
- Proximus, a, um.** Nearest, next.
- Prudens, tis.** Prudent, wise.
- Prudentia** (prudens), *ae, f.* Prudence.
- Pubes, ēris.** Grown up, adult.
- Publice** (publicus), adv. Publicly.
- Publicus, a, um.** Public.
- Pudor, ōris, m.** Regard, respect, modesty, awe, shame.
- Puella, ae, f.** Girl.
- Puer, ēri, m.** Boy.
- Puerilis** (puer), *e.* Boyish, youthful.
- Pueritia** (puer), *ae, f.* Boyhood.
- Pugio, ōnis, m.** Dagger, poniard.
- Pugna, ae, f.** Battle.
- Pulcher, chra, chrum.** Beautiful.
- Punio, ire, ivi, itum.** To punish.
- Pupillus, i, m.** Pupil.
- Purgo, āre, āvi, ātum.** To purify, purge.
- Puto, āre, āvi, ātum.** To think, imagine.

## Q.

**Q.** or **Qu.** An abbreviation of *Quintus*.

**Quadragesimus, a, um.** Fortieth.

**Quadraginta, indecl.** Forty.

**Quadriennium, i, n.** Space of four years.

**Quadriga, ae, f.** Chariot, four-horse chariot.

**Quadringentesimus, a, um.** The four hundredth.

**Quadringenti, ae, a.** Four hundred.

**Quaero, ĕre, sivi, situm.** To seek, inquire, ask.

**Quaestio (quaero), ōnis, f.** Question.

**Quaestor, ōris, m.** Treasurer, quaestor.

**Quaestorius (quaestor), a, um.** Quaestorian; *quaestorius* (subs.), one who has been quaestor.

**Qualis, e.** What, what sort; *talis*—*qualis*, such—as.

**Quam, adv. and conj.** How; *quam multi*, how many; *with superl.* intensive, *quam maximus*, as great as possible; than, after.

**Quamdiu, adv.** How long, as long as.

**Quamquam, conjunc.** Although, though.

**Quamvis.** However, however much, though.

**Quando? adv.** When?

**Quantus, a, um.** How great; *tantus*—*quantus*, so great as.

**Quare.** Wherefore, whereby.

**Quartus, a, um.** Fourth.

**Quasi.** As if.

**Quatio, ĕre, —, quassum.** To shake.

**Quatriduum (quatuor, dies), i, n.** Space of four days, four days.

**Quatuor, indecl.** Four.

**Quatuordĕcim (quatuor, decem), indecl.** Fourteen.

**Que,** appended to another word. And.

**Querĕla (queror), ae, f.** Complaint.

**Queror, i, questus sum, dep.** To complain.

**Qui, quae, quod, rel. and interrog.** Who, which, what.

**Quia, conj.** Because.

**Quicumque (or cunq̄ue), quaecumque, quodcumque.** Whoever, whatever.

**Quidam, quaedam, quoddam or quiddam.** A certain one, certain.

**Quidem.** Indeed.

**Quiĕtus, a, um** Quiet, at rest.

**Quin.** That not, but that.

**Quindĕcim, indecl.** Fifteen.

**Quingenti, ae, a.** Five hundred.

**Quinquagesimus, a, um.** Fiftieth.

**Quinquaginta, indecl.** Fifty.

**Quinque, indecl.** Five.

**Quinquennium, i, n.** Five years, space of five years.

**Quintus, a, um.** Fifth.

**Quippe, conj.** Indeed.

**Quis, quae, quid? interrog. subs.** Who, which, what?

**Quisnam or quinam, quaenam, quodnam or quidnam.** Who, which, what.

**Quisquam, quaequam, quidquam or quicquam.** Any, any one.

**Quisque, quaeque, quodque or quidque.** Every, every one, whoever, whatever; *with superl. intensive, primo quoque tempore*, on the very first opportunity.

**Quisquis, quaequae, quidquid or quicquid.** Whoever, whatever.

**Quo.** Where, whither, that, in order that.

**Quoad.** Till, until.

**Quod, conj.** That, because.

**Quominus (quo, minus).** That not, from.

**Quondam, adv.** Formerly.

**Quoniam, conj.** Since.

**Quoque.** Also, likewise.

**Quotidie.** Daily, every day.

**Quum or cum.** When, since; *quum*—*tum*, not only—but also, both—and; *rarely*, either—or.

## R.

- Rabies*, *ēi*, f. Madness, rage.  
*Radix*, *icis*, f. Root, foot, base as of mountain.  
*Ramus*, *i*, m. Branch.  
*Rapina*, *as*, f. Rapine, plunder.  
*Rapio*, *ēre*, *ui*, *tum*. To rob, carry off.  
*Rapto* (*rapio*), *āre*, *avi*, *atum*. To carry or drag, ravage, rob.  
*Raptor* (*rapio*), *ōria*, m. Robber, plunderer.  
*Raro* (*rarus*), *adv.* Rarely, seldom.  
*Rarus*, *a*, *um*. Rare, uncommon.  
*Ratio*, *ōnis*, f. Plan, method; kind.  
*Ratis*, *is*, f. Raft.  
*Rebello*, *āre*, *avi*, *atum*. To rebel.  
*Recēdo*, *ēre*, *essi*, *essum*. To withdraw, recede.  
*Recipio* (*re*, *capio*), *ēre*, *cēpi*, *cep- tum*. To receive, recover, resume; *se recipere*, to betake one's self, withdraw.  
*Recito*, *āre*, *avi*, *atum*. To repeat, recite.  
*Recognosco*, *ēre* *nōvi*, *nītum*. To recognize.  
*Recordor*, *ari*, *atus sum*, *dep.* To recollect.  
*Recte*, *adv.* Rightly.  
*Rector*, *ōria*, m. Director, ruler.  
*Recupero*, *āre*, *avi*, *atum*. To regain.  
*Reddo*, *ēre*, *didi*, *dītum*. To restore, return; render; assign.  
*Redeo*, *ire*, *ivi* or *ii*, *itum*. To go back, return.  
*Redigo*, *ēre*, *ēgi*, *actum*. To force, reduce, compel.  
*Redimo*, *ēre*, *ēmi*, *emptum*. To ransom.  
*Reditus* (*redeo*), *us*, m. Return, revenue.  
*Redūco*, *ēre*, *xi*, *ctum*. To lead back, reduce.  
*Refero*, *ferre*, *tūli*, *lātum*. To refer; requite; place among.
- Reficio*, *ēre*, *eci*, *ectum*. To repair, restore; recover.  
*Refugio*, *ēre*, *xi*, *zum*. To flow back.  
*Refugio*, *ēre*, *ūgi*, *ugitum*. To retreat.  
*Regina*, *ae*, f. Queen.  
*Regio*, *ōnis*, f. Region, country.  
*Regius* (*rex*), *a*, *um*. Royal.  
*Regno* (*regnum*), *āre*, *avi*, *atum*. To reign, rule.  
*Regnum* (*rex*), *i*, n. Kingdom, sovereignty.  
*Rego*, *ēre*, *xi*, *ctum*. To direct, manage.  
*Regredior*, *i*, *essus sum*. To return.  
*Religio*, *ōnis*, f. Religion, obligation.  
*Relinquo*, *ēre*, *liqui*, *lictum*. To leave, desert.  
*Reliquiae*, *arum*, f. pl. Remnant, those who escaped.  
*Reliquus*, *a*, *um*. The rest, remaining.  
*Remaneo*, *ēre*, *ansi*, *ansum*. To remain.  
*Remedium*, *i*, n. Remedy.  
*Reminiscor*, *ci*, *dep.* To remember.  
*Remitto*, *ēre*, *misi*, *missum*. To send back.  
*Removeo*, *ēre*, *mōvi*, *mōtum*. To take away, remove.  
*Remus*, *i*, m. Oar.  
*Renovo*, *āre*, *avi*, *atum*. To renew.  
*Renuntio*, *āre*, *avi*, *atum*. To report.  
*Repāro*, *āre*, *avi*, *atum*. To renew, repair.  
*Repello*, *ēre*, *ūli*, *ulsum*. To repel, drive back.  
*Repente*, *adv.* Suddenly.  
*Repentinus*, *a*, *um*. Unexpected, sudden.  
*Reperio*, *ire*, *pēri*, *pertum*. To find.  
*Repleo*, *ēre*, *ēvi*, *ētum*. To fill, fill again.  
*Repōno*, *ēre*, *osui*, *osītum*. To replace, restore, lay up.  
*Reporto*, *āre*, *avi*, *atum*. To gain, bear off.

**Repraesento, are, avi, atum.** To represent.

**Reprehendo, ère, di, sum.** To blame, censure.

**Repudio, are, avi, atum.** To reject, divorce.

**Repugno, are, avi, atum.** To resist.

**Res, rei, f.** Thing; state; deed; battle.

**Reservo, are, avi, atum.** To keep, reserve; spare, save.

**Resisto, ère, stiti, stitum.** To oppose, resist.

**Respectus, us, m.** Respect, regard.

**Respicio, ère, exi, ectum.** To look back; regard, respect.

**Respondeo, ère, di, sum.** To reply.

**Responsum, i, n.** Answer, response.

**Respublica, reipublicae, f. comp.** (See A. & S. 91.) Republic.

**Restituo, ère, ui, utum.** To restore.

**Retardo, are, avi, atum.** To detain, retard, check.

**Retineo, ère, ui, tentum.** To retain.

**Reus, i, m.** Criminal, defendant.

**Reverentia, ae, f.** Reverence.

**Revereor, èri, itus sum.** To fear, reverence.

**Reverto, ère, ti, sum; revertor, dep.** To come back, return.

**Revoco, are, avi, atum.** To recall.

**Rez, regis, m.** King.

**Rideo, ère, si, sum.** To laugh.

**Ripa, ae, f.** Bank as of a river.

**Rite, adv.** Rightly, in due form.

**Robur, oris, n.** Strength.

**Robustus (robur), a, um.** Robust, strong.

**Rogo, are, avi, atum.** To ask.

**Rotundus, a, um.** Round, spherical.

**Ruina, ae, f.** Ruin, fall.

**Rumpo, ère, rupi, ruptum.** To break.

**Ruo, ère, rui, ruitum or rutum.** To run, rush forth.

**Rupes, is, f.** Rock, cliff.

**Rursus (or um), adv.** Back, again.

**Rus, ruris, n.** Country as opposed to city.

## S.

**S.** An abbreviation of *Sextius* or *Spurius*; *Sp.* for *Spurius*.

**Sacer, sacra, sacrum.** Sacred.

**Sacerdos (sacer), otis, m. and f.** Priest, priestess.

**Sacrificium, i, n.** Sacrifice.

**Sacro (sacer), are, avi, atum.** To consecrate.

**Sacrum, i, n.** Sacred rite or institution; sacrifice.

**Saepe, adv.** Often.

**Saevio, ire, iui or ii, itum.** To rage, be cruel.

**Saluber, bris, bre.** Healthful, salubrious.

**Salus, utis, f.** Safety.

**Saluto, are, avi, atum.** To salute.

**Salvus, a, um.** Safe, unhurt.

**Sancte, adv.** Chastely.

**Sanguis, inis, m.** Blood.

**Sapiens, tis.** Wise; *subs.* a wise man.

**Sapientia (sapiens), ae, f.** Wisdom.

**Satelles, itis, m. and f.** Lifeguard, attendant.

**Satio, onis, f.** Sowing.

**Satis, adv. adj. subs.** Enough, sufficiently; *satis habere*, to be content.

**Saucius, a, um.** Wounded, intoxicated.

**Saxum, i, n.** Rock, stone.

**Scando, ère, di, sum.** To climb.

**Scelustus (scelus), a, um.** Wicked.

**Scelus, eris, n.** Crime, wickedness.

**Scio, scire, scivi, scitum.** To know.

**Scriba (scribo), ae, m.** Scribe, clerk.

**Scribo, ère, psi, ptum.** To write, prepare.

**Scutum, i, n.** Shield.

**Secedo, ère, cessi, cessum.** To retire, withdraw.

**Secundus, a, um.** Second, favorable.

**Sed. But.**

**Sedecim, indecl.** Sixteen.



- Sedeo, ēre, sedi, sessum.* To sit, stay.
- Sedes, is, f.* Seat, abode, residence.
- Seditio, ōnis, f.* Quarrel, sedition.
- Seditiosus (seditio), a, um.* Mutinous, seditious.
- Sedo, āre, avi, atum.* To allay, quiet.
- Segnis, e.* Slothful, inactive.
- Segniter, adv.* Slothfully.
- Senel, adv.* Once.
- Semianimis, e.* Half-dead.
- Semper, adv.* Always, ever.
- Senātor (senex), ōris, m.* Senator.
- Senātus (senex), us, m.* Senate.
- Senex, senis, m. and f., comp. senior.*  
An old man, an aged person.
- Sententia, ae, f.* Opinion, sentence.
- Sentio, ire, si, sum.* To perceive, think, judge.
- Sepelio, tre, peltvi or ii, pultum.*  
To bury.
- Sepio, ire, psi, ptum.* To guard, shelter.
- Septem, indecl.* Seven.
- Septimus, a, um.* Seventh.
- Septingentesimus, a, um.* The seven hundredth.
- Septingenti, ae, a.* Seven hundred.
- Septuagesimus, a, um.* Seventieth.
- Septuaginta, indecl.* Seventy.
- Sepultura, ae, f.* Burial.
- Seq̄or, qui, cūtus sum.* To follow, succeed.
- Serpo, ēre, psi, ptum.* To spread, extend.
- Servitus, ūtis, f.* Servitude.
- Servo, āre, avi, atum.* To observe, keep; preserve.
- Servus, i, m.* Slave.
- Seu.* Whether; *seu—seu*, whether—or.
- Severitas (sevērus), ātis, f.* Severity.
- Sevērus, a, um.* Severe, strict.
- Sex, indecl.* Six.
- Sexagesimus, a, um.* Sixtieth.
- Sexaginta, indecl.* Sixty.
- Sexcentesimus, a, um.* Six hundredth.
- Sexcenti, ae, a.* Six hundred.
- Sextus, a, um.* Sixth.
- Si, conj.* If.
- Sic, adv.* Thus, so.
- Siccus, a, um.* Dry.
- Sicut or sicūti.* Just as, so as, as if.
- Sido, ēre, sidi or sedi.* To sit, to settle down.
- Significo, āre, avi, atum.* To show, indicate, mean.
- Signum, i, n.* Mark, standard.
- Similis, e.* Similar, like.
- Simul, adv.* At the same time.
- Simulo, āre, avi, atum.* To counterfeit, feign.
- Sine, prep.* with abl. Without.
- Singularis, e.* Single, singular.
- Singulus, a, um.* Single, one by one.
- Sinister, tra, trum.* Left, on the left.
- Sino, ēre, sivi, situm.* To permit; *situs, put*, placed.
- Sinus, us, m.* Bosom, bay.
- Siquidem.* If indeed, inasmuch as.
- Socer, eri, m.* Father-in-law.
- Sociālis (socius), e.* Social, friendly.
- Societas (socius), ātis, f.* League, alliance.
- Socius, i, m.* Ally, confederate.
- Sol, solis, m.* Sun.
- Solemniter, adv.* Solemnly, in due form.
- Soleo, ēre, ūtus sum.* To be accustomed.
- Solertia, ae, f.* Sagacity, shrewdness.
- Solidus, a, um.* Solid.
- Solitudo (solus), ūtis, f.* Solitude.
- Solitus (soleo), a, um.* Usual.
- Solum, adv.* Only, alone.
- Solus, a, um.* (See F. B. 113, R.) Alone.
- Solutus (solvo), a, um.* Unrestrained, dissolute.
- Solvo, ēre, vi, ūtum.* To loose, unbind.
- Somnus, i, m.* Sleep.
- Sonus, i, m.* Sound.
- Sordidus, a, um.* Sordid, filthy.

- Soror, ōris, f.* Sister.  
*Sors, sortis, f.* Lot.  
*Spargo, ēre, si, sum.* To scatter, let fall loose.  
*Spatium, i, n.* Space.  
*Species, ei, f.* Appearance, guise.  
*Spectaculum, i, n.* Spectacle, show.  
*Specto, āre, avi, atum.* To view, witness.  
*Spes, ei, f.* Hope.  
*Spolio (spolium), āre, avi, atum.* To rob; spoil; despoil.  
*Spolium, i, n.* Plunder, spoil, booty.  
*Statim, adv.* At once, immediately.  
*Statua, ae, f.* Statue.  
*Statuo, ēre, ui, utum.* To determine; appoint, place.  
*Status, us, m.* State, condition.  
*Sterno, ēre, stravi, stratum.* To prostrate.  
*Sto, sare, steti, statum.* To stand.  
*Strages, is, f.* Slaughter, defeat.  
*Strangulo, āre, avi, atum.* To strangle.  
*Strenue (strenuus), adv.* Vigorously, carefully.  
*Strenuus, a, um.* Active, valiant.  
*Studeo, ēre, ui.* To study, favor.  
*Studiosē, adv.* Diligently, earnestly.  
*Studium, i, n.* Zeal, study.  
*Suadeo, ēre, si, sum.* To advise.  
*Sub, prep.* with acc. or abl. Under, at the foot of.  
*Subdōlus, a, um.* Crafty, deceitful.  
*Subduco (sub, duco), ēre, duxi, ductum.* To take away, withdraw.  
*Subigo (sub, ago), ēre, .egi, actum.* To subdue.  
*Subito, adv.* Suddenly.  
*Sublīmis, e.* High, on-high.  
*Suborno, āre, avi, atum.* To bribe, suborn.  
*Subsidium, i, n.* Aid, reinforcement.  
*Subsum (sub, sum), esse, fui.* To be at hand or near; be under.  
*Subtrāho (sub, traho), ēre, axi, actum.* To take away, remove.
- Subvenio (sub, venio), ēre, vēni, ventum.* To come to; to aid, relieve.  
*Suburbānus, a, um.* Suburban; *suburbānum (subs.),* an estate near a city.  
*Succēdo (sub, cedo), ēre, essi, essum.* To succeed, come after.  
*Successio, ōnis, f.* Succession.  
*Successor (succēdo), ōris, m.* Successor.  
*Successus, us, m.* Success.  
*Succumbo, ēre, cubui, cubitum.* To yield, submit to.  
*Sufficio (sub, facio), ēre, feci, factum.* To substitute; be sufficient, suffice.  
*Sui, sibi, &c.* Himself, herself, itself, &c.  
*Sum, esse, fui, futurus.* To be.  
*Summa (summus), ae, f.* Supreme power.  
*Summoveo (sub, moveo), ēre, mōvi, mōtum.* To remove, displace.  
*Summus.* (See *Supērus*.)  
*Sumo, ēre, mpsi, mptum.* To take, inflict.  
*Sumptus, us, m.* Expense, cost.  
*Super, prep.* with acc. or abl. Over, above, upon; of, concerning.  
*Superbia, ae, f.* Pride, haughtiness.  
*Superbus, a, um.* Proud.  
*Supēro (supērus), āre, avi, atum.* To surpass; conquer; pass by.  
*Supersum (super, sum), esse, fui.* To remain, be left, survive.  
*Supervenio (super, venio), ēre, vēni, ventum.* To come to, surprise.  
*Supērus, a, um; comp. superior;* superl. *suprēmus* or *summus.* High, above; past, former.  
*Supplémentum, i, n.* Supplies, reinforcement.  
*Supplicium, i, n.* Punishment.  
*Supra, prep.* with acc. Above, upon.  
*Suscipio, ēre, cepi, ceptum.* To bear, endure; receive; undertake.

*Suspectus*, *a*, *um*. Suspected.  
*Suspendo*, *ere*, *di*, *sum*. To suspend, hang up.  
*Suspensus* (*suspendo*), *a*, *um*. Uncertain, undecided; anxious.  
*Suspicio*, *onis*, *f*. Suspicion.  
*Suspicio*, *ere*, *exi*, *ectum*. To suspect.  
*Suspicio*, *ari*, *atus sum*. To suspect.  
*Sustineo*, *ere*, *ui*, *tentum*. To sustain, withstand; endure, endure the thought of.  
*Suus*, *a*, *um*. His, her, its, their, &c.; *pl.* often, one's party, friends.

## T.

*T.* An abbreviation of *Titus*.  
*Tabernaculum*, *i*, *n*. Tent.  
*Tabula*, *ae*, *f*. Tablet, table.  
*Tactus*, *us*, *m*. Touch.  
*Taedet*, *impera*. It disgusts, wears.  
*Talentum*, *i*, *n*. Talent, sum of money.  
*Talis*, *e*. Such.  
*Tam*. So.  
*Tamdiu*. So long.  
*Tamen*, *conj.* Yet, nevertheless.  
*Tandem*, *adv.* At length.  
*Tanquam*, *adv.* As, just as  
*Tantum*. Only.  
*Tantus*, *a*, *um*. Such, so great; *tanti esse*, to be worth the while.  
*Tectum* (*tego*), *i*, *n*. House.  
*Tego*, *ere*, *texi*, *tectum*. To cover.  
*Telum*, *i*, *n*. Weapon.  
*Temere*, *adv.* Rashly.  
*Tempestas* (*tempus*), *atis*, *f*. Time; tempest, storm.  
*Tempestive*, *adv.* Seasonably, just at the time, opportunely.  
*Templum*, *i*, *n*. Temple.  
*Tempus*, *oris*, *n*. Time.  
*Teneo*, *ere*, *ui*, *tentum*. To hold, keep, occupy.  
*Tento*, *are*, *avi*, *atum*. To try; attack.

*Tergeminus*, *a*, *um*. Threefold; *tergemini*, three brothers born at a birth.  
*Tergum*, *i*, *n*. Back.  
*Termino* (*terminus*), *are*, *avi*, *atum*. To limit, bound.  
*Terminus*, *i*, *m*. Limit, boundary; end.  
*Terra*, *ae*, *f*. Earth, land.  
*Terreo*, *ere*, *ui*, *itum*. To terrify.  
*Terrester* (*terra*), *tris*, *tre*. Terrestrial, on land, land (*as adj.*)  
*Territorium*, *i*, *n*. Territory.  
*Terror* (*terreo*), *oris*, *m*. Terror, alarm; fear of.  
*Tertius*, *a*, *um*. Third.  
*Testamentum*, *i*, *n*. Testament, will.  
*Testis*, *is*, *m*. and *f*. Witness.  
*Testor* (*testis*), *ari*, *atus sum*. To affirm; call to witness.  
*Theatrum*, *i*, *n*. Theatre.  
*Thorax*, *acis*, *m*. Breastplate.  
*Tibicen*, *inis*, *m*. Fluter, piper.  
*Timeo*, *ere*, *ui*. To fear.  
*Timor*, *oris*, *m*. Fear.  
*Tollo*, *ere*, *sustuli*, *sublatum*. To raise, elate; take away; destroy; discard.  
*Tonitru*, *us*, *n*. Thunder.  
*Tono*, *are*, *ui*. To thunder; *impers.* it thunders.  
*Torquis*, *is*, *m*. and *f*. Collar.  
*Tot*, *indecl.* So many.  
*Totidem*, *indecl.* Just as many, the same number.  
*Totus*, *a*, *um*. (See F. B. 113, R.). All, the whole, *sometimes best rendered by adv.* wholly, entirely.  
*Tracto*, *are*, *avi*, *atum*. To use, treat, manage.  
*Trado*, *ere*, *didi*, *ditum*. To deliver, give, consign to; also to relate, say; *traditur* (when *impera.*), it is said.  
*Traho*, *ere*, *xi*, *ctum*. To draw; protract; derive.  
*Traficio* (*trans*, *jacio*), *ere*, *jeci*, *jectum*. To throw over; to cross; conduct over.

*Trano, are, avi, atum.* To swim over.

*Trans,* prep. with acc. Across, beyond.

*Transeo* (trans, eo), *ire, iti* or *ii, itum.* To go over.

*Transféro* (trans, fero), *ferre, tūli, lātum.* To transport, transfer.

*Transfigo, ere, fixi, fixum.* To transfix.

*Transfuga, ae, m.* Deserter, fugitive.

*Transgredior, i, gressus sum.* To go or pass over.

*Transigo* (trans, ago), *ere, egi, actum.* To accomplish, finish.

*Transilio, ire, tui, ii, or ui.* To leap or pass over.

*Transitus, us, m.* Passage.

*Transmarinus, a, um.* Transmarine, over the sea.

*Trano* = *trano.*

*Trecentesimus, a, um.* The three hundredth.

*Trecenti, ae, a.* Three hundred.

*Tredēcim,* indecl. Thirteen.

*Trepidus, a, um.* Alarmed, in terror.

*Tres, tria.* Three.

*Tribūnus, i, m.* Tribune.

*Tribuo, ere, ui, utum.* To bestow, impute.

*Tributarius, a, um.* Tributary.

*Tribūtum* (tribuo), *i, n.* Tax, tribute.

*Tricesimus, a, um.* The thirtieth.

*Tricies,* adv. Thirty times.

*Trigeminus* = *tergeminus.*

*Trigesimus* = *tricesimus.*

*Triginta,* indecl. Thirty.

*Triplex, icia.* Triple, threefold.

*Tripudio, are.* To leap, dance.

*Tripus, odis, m.* Tripod.

*Trirēmis, is, f.* Galley with three banks of oars.

*Tristis, e.* Sad.

*Triumpho* (triumphus), *are, avi, atum.* To triumph, have a triumphal procession.

*Triumphus, i, m.* Triumph.

*Tropaeum, i, n.* Trophy, victory.

*Trucido* (trux, caedo), *are, avi, atum.* To slay, massacre.

*Trux, trucis.* Fierce, stern.

*Tu, tui, &c.* Thou, you.

*Tueor, eri, tutus or tutus sum.* To look upon; preserve, defend.

*Tum.* Then; *tum—tum,* not only—but also; both—and.

*Tumultuo, are, avi, atum.* To make a noise or tumult.

*Tumultus, us, m.* Tumult, sedition.

*Tumulus, i, m.* Tomb, grave.

*Tunc,* adv. Then; *tunc temporis,* then.

*Turba, ae, f.* Crowd, throng, multitude.

*Turbo* (turba), *are, avi, atum.* To disturb, throw into confusion.

*Turpiter,* adv. Basely, disgracefully, in disgrace.

*Turris, is, f.* Tower.

*Tutor, oris, m.* Tutor, guardian.

*Tutus, a, um.* Safe.

*Tyrannis, idis, f.* Tyranny.

*Tyrannus, i, m.* Tyrant, monarch.

## U.

*Uber, eris, n.* Udder, dug.

*Ubertas, atis, f.* Richness, fertility.

*Ubi,* adv. Where, when, *sometimes interrog.*

*Ubique.* Every where.

*Ulciscor, ci, ultus sum,* dep. To avenge, revenge.

*Ullus, a, um.* (See F. B. 113, R.) Any, any one.

*Uterior, us;* superl. *ultimus.* Further, more remote; superl. last.

*Ultio, onis, f.* Revenge.

*Ultra,* adv. and prep. with acc. Beyond, more than.

*Ultero,* adv. Voluntarily, of one's own accord.

*Ullulo, are, avi, atum.* To howl.

*Unde,* adv. Whence, *also interrog.* whence!

*Undecim*, indecl. Eleven.  
*Undenonagésimus*, a, um. The eighty-ninth.  
*Undequinquaginta*, indecl. Forty-nine.  
*Undevicesimus*, a, um. Nineteenth.  
*Undique*, adv. From all quarters or sides.  
*Unguentum*, i, n. Ointment, perfume.  
*Unguis*, is, m. Nail, claw, talon.  
*Universus*, a, um. Whole, entire; all together.  
*Unquam*, adv. At any time, ever.  
*Unus*, a, um. (See F. B. 113, R.) One, alone.  
*Unusquisque*, unaquaque, &c. (unus, quisque, both parts declined.) Each, each one.  
*Urbs, urbis*, f. City.  
*Urgeo*, ère, ursi. To urge, drive; press upon.  
*Usque*, adv. So far as; *usque ad*, even to; *usque eo*, to such an extent.  
*Usurpo*, ère, avi, àtum. To usurp, assume.  
*Usus*, us, m. Use, service; need.  
*Ut* or *uti*, conj. That, as; *after verbs of fearing*, that not.  
*Utrumque* or *utrumque*, adv. However, somewhat.  
*Uterque*, utraque, *utrumque*, like *uter*. (See F. B. 113, R.) Both, each.  
*Utilis*, e. Useful.  
*Utilitas*, àtis, f. Utility, service.  
*Utor*, i, usus sum. To use.  
*Utrisque* or *utrinque*, adv. On both sides.  
*Utrum*, in double questions. Whether.  
*Uxor*, òris, f. Wife.

## V.

*Vacuus*, a, um. Vacant, empty.  
*Vadum*, i, n. Ford, shallow water.  
*Vagitus*, us, m. Crying.

*Vagor*, àri, àtus sum. To wander about.  
*Vagus*, a, um. Wandering.  
*Valeo*, ère, ui, itum. To have strength, avail.  
*Validus*, a, um. Strong, powerful.  
*Vanus*, a, um. Empty, vain, false.  
*Varietas* (varius), àtis, f. Variety, change.  
*Varius*, a, um. Various.  
*Vasto* (vastus), ère, avi, àtum. To lay waste, devastate.  
*Vastus*, a, um. Waste, desert, vast.  
*Vates*, is, m. and f. Prophet, prophetess.  
*Vaticinium*, i, n. Prediction.  
*Vaticinor* (vates), àri, àtus sum. To prophesy, predict.  
*Vecors*, dia. Mad, insane.  
*Vehiculum* (veho), i, n. Carriage.  
*Veho*, ère, xi, ctum. To carry, bear.  
*Vel*, conj. Or, even; *vel—vel*, either—or.  
*Velut* or *veluti*, adv. As, like as, as if.  
*Vendo*, ère, d'idi, ditum. To sell; *sub coròna vendere*, to sell as slaves.  
*Venenum*, i, n. Poison.  
*Veneror*, àri, àtus sum. To venerate, worship.  
*Venio*, ire, veni, ventum. To come.  
*Venter*, tris, m. Belly, stomach.  
*Verbèro*, ère, avi, àtum. To whip, scourge, beat.  
*Verbum*, i, n. Word.  
*Vere* (verus), adv. Truly.  
*Vereor*, èri, itus sum. To fear.  
*Vèro* (verus), adv. and conj. Truly, indeed; but.  
*Verso*, ère, avi, àtum, or *versor*, dep. To turn; busy one's self, be occupied with.  
*Versus*, us, m. A verse.  
*Vertex* (verto), icis, m. Summit, top.  
*Verto*, ère, ti, sum. To turn.  
*Verum*, conj. But.  
*Verus*, a, um. True, real.

- Vesanus, a, um.* Mad, frantic.  
*Vescor, ci.* To enjoy, feed upon.  
*Vesp̄era, ae, f.* Evening.  
*Vesperasco (vesp̄era), ēre, r̄avi.* To become evening.  
*Vespillo, ōnis, m.* A corpse-bearer.  
*Vester, tra, trum.* Your.  
*Vestibulum, i, n.* Vestibule, entrance.  
*Vestio (vestis), ire, ivi, itum.* To clothe.  
*Vestis, is, f.* Garment.  
*Veteranus (vetus), a, um.* Veteran.  
*Veto, āre, ui, itum.* To forbid.  
*Vetus, ēris.* Old, of long standing, ancient.  
*Vetustas (vetus), ātis, f.* Antiquity, age.  
*Vetustus, a, um.* Old, ancient.  
*Via, ae, f.* Way.  
*Vicesimus, a, um.* Twentieth.  
*Vicinus, a, um.* Neighboring.  
*Victor, ōris, m.* Conqueror.  
*Victoria, ae, f.* Victory.  
*Victus (vivo), us, m.* Food, provisions.  
*Vicus, i, m.* Village.  
*Video, ēre, di, sum.* To see; *pass. videor, &c.,* to be seen; to seem.  
*Vigeo, ēre, ui.* To flourish, thrive.  
*Viginti, indecl.* Twenty.  
*Villa, ae, f.* Country-seat, villa.  
*Vincio, ire, vinxi, vinctum.* To bind.  
*Vinco, ēre, vici, vi sum.* To conquer.  
*Vinculum or vinclum, i, l.* Fetter, chain.  
*Vindex, icis, m. and f.* Defender.
- Vindico, āre, āvi, ātum.* To claim; rescue, defend; punish, avenge.  
*Vinolentus (vinum), a, um.* Full of wine, intoxicated with wine.  
*Vinum, i, n.* Wine.  
*Vio, āre, āvi, ātum.* To violate, do violence to; profane, harm.  
*Vir, viri, m.* Man, hero, husband.  
*Virga, ae, f.* Rod, twig.  
*Virgo, inis, f.* Virgin, maiden.  
*Virtus (vir), ūtis, f.* Manliness, bravery, virtue.  
*Vis, vis, pl. vires.* Power, strength, force; forces; abundance.  
*Viscus, ēris, n.* Vitals, bowels.  
*Viso, ēre, si, sum.* To view, see, visit.  
*Vita, ae, f.* Life.  
*Vitis, is, f.* Vine.  
*Vitium, i, n.* Fault, vice.  
*Vito, āre, āvi, ātum.* To shun, avoid.  
*Vivo, ēre, xi, ctum.* To live.  
*Vivus, a, um.* Living, alive.  
*Voco (vox), āre, āvi, ātum.* To call, name.  
*Volo, velle, volui, irreg. (See F. B. 410.)* To will, be willing.  
*Voluntarius, a, um.* Voluntary.  
*Voluntas (volo), ātis, f.* Wish, inclination; good will.  
*Vox, vocis, f.* Voice, word.  
*Vulgus, i, n.* Populace, common people.  
*Vuln̄ero (vulnus), āre, āvi, ātum.* To wound.  
*Vulnus, ēris, n.* Wound.  
*Vultus, us, m.* Countenance.

[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

## ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

### A

- Acca. *Acca*, *ae*, *f*.  
 Accept. *Accipio*, *ēre*, *cēpi*, *ceptum*.  
 Accompany. *Comitor*, *ari*, *atus sum*.  
 Accuse. *Accūso*, *āre*, *āvī*, *atum*.  
 Achæan. *Achæus*, *a*, *um*; subs. *Achæus*, *i*, *m*.  
 Act, do. *Ago*, *ēre*, *ēgi*, *actum*; to act, behave, *se gero*, *ēre*, *gessi*, *gestum*.  
 Add. *Adjungo*, *ēre*, *junxi*, *junctum*; *addo*, *ēre*, *didī*, *dītum*.  
 Adopt measures, to deliberate. *Consūlo*, *ēre*, *ui*, *tum*; to adopt cruel measures, *crudeliter consulere*, &c.  
 Advice. *Consilium*, *i*, *n*.  
 Advise. *Suadeo*, *ēre*, *suasi*, *suasum*.  
 Aeneas. *Aenæas*, *ae*, *m*.  
 Aetolian. *Aetolus*, *a*, *um*; subs. *Aetolus*, *i*, *m*.  
 Africa. *Africa*, *ae*, *f*.  
 After (*prep.*). *Post*, with acc.  
 After (*adv.*). *Post*; *postquam*; *postea*; a few years after, *paucis post annis*.  
 Afterwards. *Postea*.  
 Against. *Contra*, with acc.; also indicated by the indirect object.  
 Agriculture. *Agricultura*, *ae*, *f*.  
 Agrippina. *Agrippina*, *ae*, *f*.  
 Aid. *Auxilium*, *i*, *n*.  
 Aid, to bear aid. *Auxilium fero*, *ferre*, *tuli*, *latum*.  
 Aim at, seek. *Quæro*, *ēre*, *sivi* or *ii*, *itum*.  
 Alba. *Alba*, *ae*, *f*.
- Alban. *Albanus*, *a*, *um*; subs. *Albanus*, *i*, *m*.  
 Albanus. *Albanus*, *i*, *m*.  
 Alcibiades. *Alcibiades*, *is*, *m*.  
 Alexander. *Alexander*, *dri*, *m*.  
 All, every. *Omnis*, *e*.  
 All, the whole. *Totus*, *a*, *um*. (See F. B. 113, R.)  
 Already. *Jam*.  
 Although. *Quamquam*, *etsi*, *etsiansi*.  
 Always. *Semper*.  
 Ambassador. *Legatus*, *i*, *m*.  
 American. *Americanus*, *a*, *um*; subs. *Americanus*, *i*, *m*.  
 Ammon or Hammon. *Ammon* or *Hammon*, *onis*, *m*.  
 Amphictyon. *Amphictyon*, *onis*, *m*.  
 Amphipolis. *Amphipolis*, *is*, *f*.  
 Amulius. *Amulius*, *i*, *m*.  
 Anchises. *Anchises*, *ae*, *m*.  
 Ancient. *Antiquus*, *a*, *um*.  
 Ancus. *Ancus*, *i*, *m*.  
 And. *Et*, *atque*, *ac*, *que* (enclitic).  
 Anger. *Ira*, *ae*, *f*.  
 Announce. *Nuntio*, *āre*, *āvī*, *atum*.  
 Antigonus. *Antigonus*, *i*, *m*.  
 Antiochus. *Antiochus*, *i*, *m*.  
 Antipater. *Antipater*, *tri*, *m*.  
 Any. *Ullus*, *a*, *um* (F. B. 113, R.); any one, *aliquis*, *qua*, *quid*.  
 Apollo. *Apollo*, *inis*, *m*.  
 Appear, seem. *Videor*, *ēri*, *visus sum*.  
 Appoint. *Creo*, *āre*, *āvī*, *atum*; *instituo*, *ēre*, *ui*, *atum*.  
 Appoint over, commission. *Præpono*, *ēre*, *posui*, *positum*.



[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)



www.libtool.com

- nsus. *Census, us, m.*  
 rtain. *Certus, a, um.*  
 rtain one, some one. *Quidam, quaedam, quoddam.*  
 ronea. *Chaeronea, ae, f.*  
 main, fetter. *Compes, edis, f.; vinculum, i, n.*  
 hallenge (subs.). *Provocatio, onis, f.*  
 Challenge (verb). *Provdco, are, avi, atum.*  
 Change. *Muto, are, avi, atum.*  
 Character, nature. *Ingenium, i, n.*  
 Chariot. *Currus, us, m.*  
 Charles. *Carolus, i, m.*  
 Check, put down. *Compesco, ere, ut.*  
 Choose. *Lego, ere, legi, lectum; deligo, ere, legi, lectum.*  
 Christian. *Christianus, i, m.*  
 Cineas. *Cineas, ae, m.*  
 Citadel. *Arx, arcis, f.*  
 Citizen. *Civis, is, m. and f.*  
 City. *Urbs, urbis, f.*  
 Civil. *Civilis, e.*  
 Claim. *Vindico, are, avi, atum.*  
 Cloud. *Nubes, is, f.*  
 Cnaeus or Cneus. *Cnaeus or Cneus, i, m.*  
 Cocles. *Cocles, itis, m.*  
 Cold, frost. *Frigus, oris, n.; gelus, us, n.*  
 Collatinus. *Collatinus, i, m.*  
 Come. *Venio, ire, veni, ventum.*  
 Command (verb). *Impero, are, avi, atum.*  
 Commander, leader. *Imperator, oris, m.; dux, ducis, m.*  
 Commence, enter upon. *Ineipio, ere, cepi, ceptum; incipio, are, avi, atum.*  
 Compel. *Compello, ere, puli, pulsus.*  
 Conceal. *Occulto, are, avi, atum.*  
 Conclude, finish, make. *Facio, ere, feci, factum; to conclude peace, pacem facere.*  
 Condemn. *Damno, are, avi, atum; to condemn to death, capitibus damnare.*  
 Condition, terms. *Conditio, onis, f.*

are, avi, atum.  
 m.  
 are, avi, atum.  
 m.  
 m. f. n.  
 us, a, um; subs.  
 ac, f.  
 Carthago, inis, f.  
 Carthaginensis, e;  
 Carthaginensis, is.  
 Cassander, dri, m.  
 Castellum, i, n.  
 ca or filis, is, f.  
 Catilina, ae, m.  
 to effect, make. *Efficio, ere, effectum.*  
 Equites, um, m. l.;  
 nitatus, us, m.  
 Cecrops, opis, m.  
 (verb). *Vitupero, are, avi,*

- Approach, arrival. *Adventus, us, m.*  
 Apulia. *Apulia, ae, f.*  
 Arbela. *Arbela, ōrum, n.*  
 Ardea. *Ardea, ae, f.*  
 Aridaeus. *Aridaeus, i, m.*  
 Arise. *Orior, tri, ortus sum.*  
 Arm, furnish with arms. *Armo, are, avi, atum.*  
 Armed. *Armatus, a, um.*  
 Armenia. *Armenia, ae, f.*  
 Arms. *Arma, ōrum, n. pl.*  
 Army. *Exercitus, us, m.*  
 Around. *Circa, circum* with acc.  
 Arrival, approach. *Adventus, us, m.*  
 Arrive, arrive at or in. *Advenio, ire, vĕni, ventum.*  
 Artaxerxes. *Artaxerxes, is, m.*  
 Artemisium. *Artemisium, i, n.*  
 As. *U*; *as* is often omitted in rendering into Latin.  
 As slaves. *Sub corōna*; to sell as slaves, *sub corōna vendĕre, dīdi, ditum.*  
 Ascanius. *Ascanius, i, m.*  
 Asia. *Asia, ae, f.*  
 Asiaticus. *Asiaticus, i, m.* Sur-name of one of the Scipios.  
 Ask. *Rogo, are, avi, atum*; ask, ask for, seek, *peto, ěre, tvi or ii, tum.*  
 Assassinator, assassin. *Percussor, ōris, m.*  
 Assistance. *Auxilium, i, n.*  
 At. *In* with abl.; *ad, apud* with acc.; before names of towns indicated by *gen.* or *abl.* 280.  
 At a high price. *Magni*; at a very high price, *maċimi*; at a low price, *parvi.*  
 At home. *Domi.*  
 At one time, at a certain time. *Quondam.*  
 At that time, then. *Illo tempĕre, tunc.*  
 Athenian. *Atheniensis, e*; subs. *Atheniensis, is.*  
 Athens. *Athĕnae, arum, f. pl.*  
 Atthis. *Atthis, idis, f.*  
 Attica. *Attica, ae, f.*  
 Auxiliaries. *Auxilia, ōrum, n. pl.*
- Await, wait for. *Opperior, tri, peritus* or *oppertus sum.*
- B.
- Babylon. *Babylon, ōnis, f.*; *Babylonia, ae, f.*  
 Bad, depraved. *Malus, a, um*; *pravus, a, um.*  
 Balbus. *Balbus, i, m.*  
 Battle. *Pugna, ae, f.*; *proelium, i, n.*  
 Battle-array. *Acies, ei, f.*  
 Be. *Sum, esse, fui futūrus.*  
 Be able, can. *Possom, posse, potui.*  
 Be envious. *Invideo, ěre, vīdi, vīsum.*  
 Be made. *Fio, fiĕri, factus sum.*  
 Be occupied. *Distringor, gi, ictus sum.*  
 Be willing. *Volo, velle, volui.*  
 Be wise. *Sapio, ěre, tvi or ii*; *sapiens esse.*  
 Beautiful. *Pulcher, chra, chrum*; *formōsus, a, um.*  
 Because. *Quod*; *quia.*  
 Become. *Fio, ěri, factus sum.*  
 Become unmanageable. *Effĕror, āri, atus sum.*  
 Before (adv.). *Antĕquam, prius quam.*  
 Believe. *Credo, ěre, dīdi, ditum.*  
 Belong, be to. *Sum, esse, fui, futūrus.*  
 Benefit. *Beneficium, i, n.*  
 Bequeathe. *Lego, are, avi, atum.*  
 Beseech. *Precor, āri, atus sum.*  
 Besiege. *Oppugno, are, avi, atum*. *obsideo, ěre, sēdi, sessum.*  
 Best. *Optimus, a, um*, superl. of *bonus.*  
 Between. *Inter* with accus.  
 Beyond. *Extra*, with acc.  
 Bind. *Vincio, ire, nxi, nctum.*  
 Bird. *Avis, is, f.*  
 Bite. *Mordeo, ěre, momordi, morsum.*  
 Book. *Liber, bri, m.*  
 Booty. *Praeda, ae, f.*  
 Boston. *Bostonia, ae, f.*

Both—and. *Et—et; quum—tum.*  
 Boy. *Puer, ěri, m.*  
 Brave. *Fortis, e.*  
 Bravely. *Fortiter.*  
 Bravery, boldness. *Virtus, ūtis, f.; fortitudo, ĩnis, f.*  
 Break, break down. *Rumpo, ěre, rupi, ruptum.*  
 Brennus. *Brennus, i, m.*  
 Bridge. *Pons, tis, m.*  
 Brother. *Frater, tris, m.*  
 Brutus. *Brutus, i, m.*  
 Build. *Aedifico, ěre, avi, atum.*  
 Burning, a fire, a conflagration. *Incendium, i, n.*  
 But. *Sed, at, autem.*  
 By. *A, ab, abs* with *abl.* (before voluntary agent); in other cases, indicated by *abl. alone.*

## C.

Cadmea. *Cadmĕa, ae, f.*  
 Caecilius. *Caecilius, i, m.*  
 Caesar. *Caesar, ěris, m.*  
 Caius. *Caius, i, m.*  
 Caligula. *Caligŭla, ae, m.*  
 Call, name. *Appello, ěre, avi, atum; voco, ěre, avi, atum.*  
 Camillus. *Camillus, i, m.*  
 Capital. *Caput, ĩtis, n.*  
 Capitol. *Capitolium, i, n.*  
 Captive. *Captivus, a, um; subs. captivus, i, m.*  
 Capua. *Capua, ae, f.*  
 Carthage. *Carthĕgo, ĩnis, f.*  
 Carthaginian. *Carthaginiensis, e; subs. Carthaginiensis, is.*  
 Cassander. *Cassander, dri, m.*  
 Castle. *Castellum, i, n.*  
 Cat. *Felis or felis, is, f.*  
 Catiline. *Catilina, ae, m.*  
 Cause, to effect, make. *Efficio, ěre, feci, effectum.*  
 Cavalry. *Equites, um, m. pl.; equitatus, us, m.*  
 Cecrops. *Cecrops, ěpis, m.*  
 Censure (verb). *Vitupĕro, ěre, avi, atum.*

Census. *Census, us, m.*  
 Certain. *Certus, a, um.*  
 Certain one, some one. *Quidam, quaedam, quoddam.*  
 Chaeronea. *Chaeronea, ae, f.*  
 Chain, fetter. *Compes, ědis, f.; vincŭlum, i, n.*  
 Challenge (subs.). *Provocatio, ōnis, f.*  
 Challenge (verb). *Provdco, ěre, avi, atum.*  
 Change. *Muto, ěre, avi, atum.*  
 Character, nature. *Ingenium, i, n.*  
 Chariot. *Currus, us, m.*  
 Charles. *Carŭlus, i, m.*  
 Check, put down. *Compesco, ěre, ut.*  
 Choose. *Lego, ěre, legi, lectum; deligo, ěre, legi, lectum.*  
 Christian. *Christianus, i, m.*  
 Cineas. *Cineas, ae, m.*  
 Citadel. *Arx, arcis, f.*  
 Citizen. *Civis, is, m. and f.*  
 City. *Urbs, urbis, f.*  
 Civil. *Civilis, e.*  
 Claim. *Vindico, ěre, avi, atum.*  
 Cloud. *Nubes, is, f.*  
 Cnaeus or Cneus. *Cnaeus or Cneus, i, m.*  
 Cocles. *Cocles, ĩtis, m.*  
 Cold, frost. *Frigus, ōris, n.; gelus, us, n.*  
 Collatinus. *Collatinus, i, m.*  
 Come. *Venio, ěre, veni, ventum.*  
 Command (verb). *Inpĕro, ěre, avi, atum.*  
 Commander, leader. *Imperĕtor, ōris, m.; dux, ducis, m.*  
 Commence, enter upon. *Ineipio, ěre, cĕpi, ceptum; inc'oo, ěre, avi, atum.*  
 Compel. *Compello, ěre, pŭli, pulsum.*  
 Conceal. *Occulto, ěre, avi, atum.*  
 Conclude, finish, make. *Facio, ěre, feci, factum; to conclude peace, pacem facĕre.*  
 Condemn. *Damno, ěre, avi, atum; to condemn to death, capit'is damnĕre.*  
 Condition, terms. *Conditio, ōnis, f.*

- Confer upon, commit to. *Tribuo, Ære, ui, Ætum.*  
 Conon. *Conon, Ænis, m.*  
 Conquer. *Vinco, Ære, vici, victum.*  
 Consul. *Consul, Ælis, m.*  
 Consult. *Consulo, Ære, ui, tum.*  
 Content, contented. *Contentus, a, um.*  
 Continual, incessant. *Assiduus, a, um.*  
 Contrary to, on the contrary. *Contra, adv. and prep. with acc.*  
 Corinth. *Corinthus, i, f.*  
 Corinthian. *Corinthius, a, um; suba Corinthius, i, m.*  
 Coriolanus. *Coriolanus, i, m.*  
 Cornelius. *Cornelius, i, m.*  
 Country, region, territory. *Regio, Ænis, f.; fines, ium, m.; native country, one's country, patria, æ, f.; country (as opposed to city), rus, rurs, n.*  
 Cranaus. *Cranaus, i, m.*  
 Crassus. *Crassus, i, m.*  
 Cremona. *Cremona, æ, f.*  
 Crime. *Crimen, Ænis, n.*  
 Cursor. *Cursor, Æris, m.*  
 Cut off, hinder. *Intercludo, Ære, si, sum.*  
 Cyrus. *Cyrus, i, m.*
- D.
- Dagger. *Pugio, Ænis, m.*  
 Danger. *Periculum, i, n.*  
 Danube. *Danubius* (the upper part), *i, m.*; *Iter* (the lower part), *tri, m.*  
 Darius. *Darius, i, m.*  
 Datis. *Datis, is, m.*  
 Daughter. *Filia, æ, f.* (Dat. pl. *filabus.*)  
 Day. *Dies, Æi, m. and f.*  
 Death. *Mors, mortis, f.*  
 Deceive. *Decipio, Ære, cæpi, ceptum.*  
 Decemvir. *Decemvir, tri, m.*  
 Declare. *Indico, Ære, dixi, dictum;* to declare war, *bellum indicere.*  
 Defeat. *Vinco, Ære, vici, victum.*
- Defend. *Defendo, Ære, di, sum.*  
 Defraud. *Fraudo, Ære, Ævi, Ætum.*  
 Delight in, rejoice. *Gaudeo, Ære, gavisus sum.*  
 Deliver. *Trado, Ære, didi, Ætum.*  
 Delphi. *Delphi, Ærum, m.*  
 Demetrius. *Demetrius, i, m.*  
 Depart. *Proficiscor, ci, profectus sum; abeo, Ære, Ævi or ii, Ætum.*  
 Depraved. *Pravus, a, um.*  
 Deprive. *Privo, Ære, Ævi, Ætum.*  
 Descendants, posterity. *Posteri, Ærum, m. pl.*  
 Design, s. *Consilium, i, n.*  
 Design, designate. *Designo, Ære, Ævi, Ætum.*  
 Desirous; desirous of. *Cupidus, a, um.*  
 Desist. *Discedo, Ære, cessi, cessum.*  
 Despair. *Desperatio, Ænis, f.*  
 Destroy. *Evertio, Ære, ti, sum; diruo, Ære, ui, Ætum; deleo, Ære, Ævi, Ætum.*  
 Destruction. *Pernicies, Æi, f.*  
 Determine. *Statuo, Ære, ui, Ætum.*  
 Dictator. *Dictator, Æris, m.*  
 Die. *Morior, tri or i, mortuus sum.*  
 Difficult. *Difficilis, e.*  
 Direct, order. *Jubeo, Ære, jussi, jussum.*  
 Discharge. *Fungor, gi, functus sum.*  
 Discourse. *Sermo, Ænis, m.*  
 Disregard, despise. *Contemno, Ære, psi, ptum.*  
 Distinguished. *Praestans, tis.*  
 Divine. *Divinus, a, um.*  
 Do, make. *Facio, Ære, feci, factum.*  
 Do wrong. *Pecco, Ære, Ævi, Ætum.*  
 Dog. *Canis, is, c.*  
 Dove. *Columba, æ, f.*  
 Drive. *Pello, Ære, pepuli, pulsum.*  
 During. *Inter* with acc.  
 Dutiful. *Pius, a, um.*  
 Duty. *Officium, i, n.*  
 Dwell. *Habito, Ære, Ævi, Ætum.*

## E

Early, ancient. *Antiquus, a, um*.  
 Earth. *Terra, ae, f*.  
 Educate, bring up. *Educo, are, avi, atum*.  
 Egypt. *Aegyptus, i, f*.  
 Egyptian. *Aegyptius, a, um*; subs. *Aegyptius, i, m*.  
 Eight. *Octo, indecl*.  
 Either. *Aut*; either—or, *aut—aut*; vel—vel. 475.  
 Elder. *Major, us, comp. of magnus*; *major natus*.  
 Elect, choose. *Creo, are, avi, atum*; *lego, ere, legi, lectum*; *eligo, ere, legi, lectum*.  
 Elephant. *Elephantus, i, m*; *elephas, antiq, m*.  
 Embassy. *Legatio, onis, f*.  
 Eminent. *Insignis, e*; *praestans, tis*.  
 Empire. *Imperium, i, n*.  
 End. *Finis, is, m, and f*.  
 Enemy. *Hostis, is, m, and f*; personal enemy or foe, *inimicus, i, m*.  
 Engage battle, engage. *Configo, ere, fixi, flictum*.  
 Engagement. *Proelium, i, n*; *pugna, ae, f*.  
 Enjoy. *Fruor, frui, fructus sum*.  
 Enlarge. *Amplio, are, avi, atum*.  
 Enter. *Introeo, ire, ivi or ii, itum*.  
 Envy, be envious. *Invideo, ere, vidi, visum*.  
 Epaminondas. *Epaminondas, ae, m*.  
 Equity. *Aequitas, atis, f*.  
 Escape. *Effugio, ere, fugi*.  
 Even, equal. *Par, paris*.  
 Ever, at any time. *Unquam*; ever, always, *semper*.  
 Exchange (subs.). *Permutatio, onis, f*.  
 Excite, arouse, sharpen. *Acuo, ere, ui, utum*.  
 Exile, person banished. *Exsul, ulis, m*.  
 Exile, banishment. *Exsilium, i, n*.  
 Expense. *Sumptus, us, m*.  
 Eye. *Oculus, i, m*.

## F

Fabius. *Fabius, i, m*; pl. *Fabii*.  
 Fabricius. *Fabricius, i, m*.  
 Falerii. *Falerii, orum, m*.  
 Fall in battle, fall. *Cado, ere, cecidi, casum*.  
 Falsehood. *Mendacium, i, n*.  
 Family, descent. *Genus, eris, n*; family, members of a family, *familia, ae, f*.  
 Famous. *Clarus, a, um*; *nobilis, e*.  
 Father. *Pater, tris, m*.  
 Father-in-law. *Socer, soceri, m*.  
 Faustulus. *Faustulus, i, m*.  
 Favor (verb). *Faveo, ere, favi, fautum*.  
 Fear (trans. v.). *Metuo, ere, ui, utum*.  
 Feast. *Convivium, i, n*; *coena, ae, f*.  
 Festival. *Festum, i, n*.  
 Few. *Pauci, ae, a*.  
 Field. *Ager, agri, m*.  
 Fifteen. *Quindécim, indecl*.  
 Fifth. *Quintus, a, um*.  
 Fifty. *Quinquaginta, indecl*.  
 Fight. *Pugno, are, avi, atum*; *committo, ere, misi, missum*.  
 Fill. *Compleo, ere, evi, etum*.  
 Finally. *Postremo*; *ad postremum*; *denique*.  
 Finish. *Finio, ire, ivi, itum*.  
 First. *Primus, a, um*.  
 Fish. *Piscis, is, m*.  
 Five. *Quingue, indecl*.  
 Flatterer. *Adulator, oris, m*.  
 Flee. *Fugio, ere, fugi, fugitum*; to flee for refuge, *confugio, ere, fugi, fugitum*.  
 Fleet. *Classis, is, f*; *naves, ium, f pl*.  
 For (conj.). *Enim, nam, namque*.  
 For (prep.). *Pro* with abl.; also indicated by the dative.  
 For a year, lasting a year. *Annus, a, um*.  
 For ever. *Perpetuo*.

- Force, force of arms. *Vis, via, f.* ;  
pl. *vires* ; *arma, ōrum, n. pl.*  
Forces. *Copiae, ōrum, f. pl.* ; *vires,*  
*ium, f. pl.*  
Forget. *Obliviscor, ci, litus sum.*  
Former—latter. *Ille—hic.*  
Fortieth. *Quadragesimus, a, um.*  
Fortification. *Munitio, ōnis, f.*  
Fortified. *Munitus, a, um* ; very  
strongly fortified, *munitissimus,*  
*a, um.*  
Fortune. *Fortūna, ae, f.*  
Forty. *Quadragesima, indecl.*  
Fought. *Commisus, a, um* ; in a  
battle fought at Chaeronea, *in*  
*proelio ad Chaeroneā commisso.*  
Found, to build. *Condo, ēre, dīdi,*  
*ditum.*  
Four. *Quatuor, indecl.*  
Four hundred. *Quadringenti, ae, a.*  
Fourth. *Quartus, a, um.*  
Fraud. *Fraus, dis, f.*  
Friend. *Amicus, i, m.*  
Friendly. *Amicus, a, um.*  
Friendship, intimacy. *Familiāritas,*  
*ātis, f.*  
From. *A, ab, de, e, ex* with abl. ;  
also indicated by abl. alone ; from,  
on account of, *propter* with acc.  
Frost, cold. *Gelus, us, n.* ; *frigus,*  
*ōris, n.*
- G.
- Galba. *Galba, ae, m.*  
Game. *Ludus, i, m.* ; *certāmen,*  
*inis, n.*  
Gaul. *Gallia, ae, f.*  
Gaul, a Gaul. *Gallus, i, m.*  
General, leader. *Dux, ducis, m.*  
and f.  
German. *Germanus, a, um* ; subs.  
*Germānus, i, m.*  
Get or take possession of. *Occūpo,*  
*āre, āvi, ātum.*  
Girl. *Puella, ae, f.*  
Give. *Do, dare, dedi, datum* ; to  
give as a present, *dono dare.*
- Gladiator. *Gladiator, ōris, m.*  
Gladiatorial. *Gladiatorius, a, um.*  
Gladly. Expressed by adj. *laetus,*  
*a, um,* in agreement with the  
subject.  
Glory. *Gloria, ae, f.*  
Go. *Eo, ire, ivi, itum* ; *contendo,*  
*ēre, di, sum* ; go, set out, *profi-*  
*ciscor, ci, profectus sum.*  
God, a god. *Deus, i, m.* (See  
A. & S. 53.)  
Golden, of gold, gold. *Aureus, a,*  
*um.*  
Good. *Bonus, a, um.*  
Government, royal authority. *Reg-*  
*num, i, n.*  
Grand-daughter. *Neptis, is, f.* ;  
*nepos, ōtis, f.*  
Grand-father. *Avus, i, m.*  
Grand-mother. *Avia, ae, f.*  
Grand-son. *Nepos, ōtis, m.*  
Grant, assign to. *Tribuo, ēre, ui,*  
*ūtum.*  
Great. *Magnus, a, um* ; *ingens,*  
*tis.*  
Greatness. *Magnitudo, inis, f.*  
Grecian, Greek. *Graecus, a, um* ;  
subs. *Graecus, i, m.*  
Greece. *Grecia, ae, f.*
- H.
- Hamilcar. *Hamilcar, āris, m.*  
Hannibal. *Hannibal, ālis, m.*  
Happen, come to pass. *Fio, fieri,*  
*factus sum.*  
Happily. *Beate.*  
Happy. *Beatus, a, um.*  
Hasdrubal. *Hasdrūbal, ālis, m.*  
Hasten, make haste. *Festino, āre,*  
*āvi, ātum.*  
Have. *Habeo, ēre, ui, itum.*  
He, she, it. *Ille, a, ud* ; *is, ea, id*  
He himself, himself. *Ipsē, a, um.*  
Here. *Hic.*  
Hero. *Heros, ōis, m.*  
High, lofty. *Altus, a, um.*  
High-minded, magnanimous. *Mag-*  
*nanimus, a, um.*

Him, himself, herself, itself (oblique case referring to subject). *Sui, sibi, &c.*

His, her, its, &c. *Suus, a, um,* referring to the subject; *ejus* (gen. of *is*) not referring to subject.

Historian. *Historicus, i, m.*

Hither. *Huc.*

Hold. *Teneo, ěre, ui, tum; obtineo, ěre, ui, tum.*

Home. *Domus, us* or *i, f.*; at home, *domi.*

Honor. *Honor, ěris, m.*

Horatius. *Horatius, i, m.*

Horse. *Equus, i, m.*

Hostage. *Obses, ědis, m.* and *f.*

House. *Domus, us* or *i, f.*; *teetum, i, n.*

How. *Quam;* how many, *quam multi;* quot.

How, by what means? *quomodo, qui?* How does it happen? *qui fit?*

How, of what sort or nature. *Qualis, e.*

How long? *Quamdiu?*

How old. *Quot annos* with *natus;* How old is he? *Quot annos natus est?*

Hundred. *Centum,* indecl.

Hunger. *Fames, is, f.*

## L

L. *Ego, mei.*

If. *Si.*

Impute, give. *Do, dare, dedi, datum;* to impute as a crime, *crimini dare.*

In. *In* with abl.

In the mean time. *Interim; interea.*

In order that, in order. *Ut, quo.*

In vain. *Frustra.*

Increase. *Augeo, ěre, xi, ctum.*

Individual, separate, one by one. *Singuli, ae, a.*

Infantry. *Pedites, um, m.*

Inhabitant. *Incola, ae, m.* and *f.*

Inhabitant or citizen of Catina. *Catinensis* or *Catiniensis, is, m.* and *f.*

Inquire. *Interrogo, are, avi, atum.*

Insolent. *Insolens, tis.*

Institute. *Instituo, ěre, ui, utum.*

Instructed, accomplished in. *Eruditus, a, um.*

Into. *In* with acc.

Invade. *Invado, ěre, si, sum.*

Invite. *Invito, are, avi, atum.*

Island. *Insula, ae, f.*

Issus. *Issus, i, f.*

It is better. *Praestat.*

It is characteristic of, duty of, part of, &c. *Est* with genitive. (See 434; also F. B. 187.)

It is ordered, the order is given. *Praescribitur.*

It is usual. *Solet.*

It is well known, is an admitted fact. *Constat.*

Italian. *Italus, a, um;* subs. *Italus, i, m.*

Italy. *Italia, ae, f.*

## J.

Jerusalem. *Hierosolyma, ae, f.,* or *orum, n. pl.*

John. *Johannes, is, m.*

Journey. *Iter, itiněris, n.*

Judea. *Judaea, ae, f.*

Jugurtha. *Jugurtha, ae, m.*

Junius. *Junius, i, m.*

Jupiter. *Jupiter, Jovis, m.*

Just. *Justus, a, um.*

## K.

Keep, hold. *Habeo, ěre, ui, utum.*

Kid. *Haedus, i, m.*

Kill. *Interficio, ěre, feci, factum;* *occido, ěre, cidi, ctum.*

Kind. *Benignus, a, um.*

King. *Rex, regis, m.*

Kingdom. *Regnum, i, n.*

Know. *Scio, scire, scivi, scitum;* not to know, *nescio, ěre, tvi* or *ii, itum.*



## L.

L. *L.*, abbreviation of *Lucius*; *L. Crassus* for *Lucius Crassus*.  
 Lacedaemonian. *Lacedaemonius, a, um*; subs. *Lacedaemonius, i, m*.  
 Lamb. *Agnus, i, m*.  
 Land. *Terra, ae, f*; *ager, agri, m*.  
 Large, great. *Magnus, a, um*.  
 Larissa. *Larissa, ae, f*.  
 Lasting. *Senpiternus, a, um*.  
 Latinus. *Latinus, i, m*.  
 Latter, this. *Hic, haec, hoc*; former—latter, *ille—hic*.  
 Laugh, laugh at. *Rideo, ère, risi, risum*.  
 Laurentia. *Laurentia, ae, f*.  
 Law. *Lex, legis, f*; law, right, *ius, juris, n*; law of nations, *ius gentium*.  
 Lay siege to, besiege. *Obsideo, ère, sedi, sessum*.  
 Laywaste. *Populor, ari, atussum*.  
 Lead. *Duco, ère, duxi, ductum*; to lead back, *redùco, ère, duxi, ductum*; to lead forth, *edùco, ère, duxi, ductum*.  
 \*Leader. *Dux, ducis, m. and f*.  
 Learn. *Disco, ère, didici*.  
 Leonidas. *Leonidas, ae, m*.  
 Letter. *Litèrae, arum, f. pl.*; *epistola, ae, f*; letters, learning, *litèrae, arum, f. pl*.  
 Liberate, set free. *Libèro, are, avi, atum*.  
 Liberty. *Libertas, atis, f*.  
 Life. *Vita, ae, f*.  
 Limit. *Terminus, i, m*; *finis, is, m. and f*.  
 Literary. *Literarius, a, um*.  
 Live. *Vivo, ère, vixi, victum*; to live, dwell, *habito, are, avi, atum*.  
 Livia. *Livia, ae, f*.  
 Longa (in *Alba Longa*). *Longa, ae, f*.  
 Lose. *Amitto, ère, misi, missum*; to lose, waste, destroy, *perdo, ère, didi, ditum*.

Love (subs.). *Amor, oris, m*.  
 Love (verb). *Amo, are, avi, atum*.  
 Lucius. *Lucius, i, m*.  
 Lucretia. *Lucretia, ae, f*.  
 Lucullus. *Lucullus, i, m*.  
 Lycurgus. *Lycurgus, i, m*.  
 Lysander. *Lysander, dri, m*.

## M.

M. *M.*, abbreviation of *Marcus*.  
 Macedonia. *Macedonia, ae, f*.  
 Macedonian. *Macedonicus, a, um*; subs. *Macèdo, ònis, m*.  
 Magi, wise men. *Magi, orum, m. pl*.  
 Majesty, dignity, rank. *Majestas, atis, f*.  
 Make, form. *Facio, ère, feci, factum*; to make, appoint, *creo, are, avi, atum*.  
 Make an irruption. *Irrumpo, ère, rüpi, ruptum*.  
 Man. *Homo, inis, m*; man, hero, husband, *vir, viri, m*.  
 Manlius. *Manlius, i, m*.  
 Many, much. *Multus, a, um*; many, several, very many, *plures, a*.  
 March, advance. *Incèdo, ère, cessi, cessum*; *proficiscor ci, profectus sum*.  
 Marcius. *Marcus, i, m*.  
 Marius. *Marius, i, m*.  
 Marriage. *Matrimonium, i, n*.  
 Master. *Magister, tri, m*; master as owner or proprietor, *dominus, i, m*.  
 Matron. *Matrona, ae, f*.  
 Metellus. *Metellus, i, m*.  
 Minor (in proper names). *Minor, oris, m. and f*.  
 Misenum. *Misenum, i, n*.  
 Mithridates. *Mithridates, is, m*.  
 Mithridatic. *Mithridaticus, a, um*.  
 Mother. *Mater, tris, f*.  
 Mountain, mount. *Mons, tis, m*.  
 Mourn, mourn for. *Lugeo, ère, zictum*.  
 Move (trans.). *Moveo, ère, movi, motum*.

Much. *Multus, a, um*; much good, *multum boni*; much time, *multum temporis*.  
 Mummius. *Mummius, i, m*.  
 Murderer. *Interfactor, oris, m*.  
 Must. Expressed by periphrastic conj. (F. B. 425; A. & S. 162, 15.)  
 My. *Meus, a, um, voc. m. sing. mi*.

N.

Name. *Nomen, inis, n*.  
 Narrow pass or passage: *Angustiae, arum, f. pl*.  
 Nation, race. *Gens, gentis, f*.  
 Naval. *Navalis, e*.  
 Near. *Apud, ad* with acc.  
 Nearly. *Fere*.  
 Need, there is need. *Opus est*.  
 Neighboring. *Finitimus, a, um*.  
 Neither. *Neque, nec*; neither—nor, *neque—neque, nec—nec*.  
 Neptune. *Neptūnus, i, m*.  
 Nero. *Nero, onis, m*.  
 Nest. *Nidus, i, m*.  
 Never. *Nunquam*.  
 New. *Novus, a, um*.  
 Night. *Nox, noctis, f*.  
 No, adj. *Nullus, a, um*. (F. B. 113, R.) No one, nobody, *nemo, inis, gen. and abl. not in good use*.  
 Noble. *Nobilis, e*.  
 Not. *Non*; with imper. and subj. *ne*; not only—but also, *non solum—sed etiam*.  
 Not to know, be ignorant of. *Nescio, ire, tvi or ii, itum*.  
 Now. *Nunc*.  
 Numa. *Numa, ae, m*.  
 Number. *Numerus, i, m*.  
 Numitor. *Numitor, oris, m*.

O.

ObeY. *Obedio, ire, tvi or ii, itum*.  
 Observe, keep as a law. *Observo, ave, avi, atum; servo, are, avi, atum*.

Obtain. *Obtineo, ere, ui, tentum*.  
 Occupied with, busy with. *Districus; to be occupied with, distringor, gi, districtus sum*.  
 Occupy. *Occūpo, are, avi, atum*.  
 Offer sacrifices (in honor of the dead). *Parento, are, avi, atum*.  
 Often. *Saepe*.  
 Olympic. *Olympius, a, um*; Olym-  
 pic games, *Olympia, orum, n. pl*.  
 Old (in expressions of age). *Natus, a, um*; two years old, *duo annos natus*.  
 On. *In* with abl.  
 On account of. *Propter* with accus.  
 Once. *Semel*.  
 One. *Unus a, um*. (F. B. 113, R.)  
 Certain one, *quidam, quaedam, quoddam, subs. quiddam*.  
 Opening, beginning. *Initium, i, n*.  
 Opinion. *Sententia, ae, f*.  
 Opportunity, power. *Potestas, atis, f*.  
 Or. *Aut, vel*.  
 Oracle. *Oraculum, i, n*.  
 Oration. *Oratio, onis, f*.  
 Orator. *Orator, oris, m*.  
 Order, to direct. *Jubeo, ere, jussi, jussum*; to order, arrange, institute, *ordino, are, avi, atum*.  
 Order, by order. *Jussu*, used only in abl. sing.  
 Other. *Alius, a, ud*. (F. B. 113, R.) Some—others, *alii—alii*.  
 Otherwise. *Aliter*.  
 Otho. *Otho, onis, m*.  
 Ostia. *Ostia, ae, f*.  
 Our. *Noster, tra, trum*.  
 Over. *Super, supra*, sometimes indicated by *gen.*, as, the bridge over the Ister, *pons Istri*.  
 Overwhelm. *Obruo, ere, ui, utum*.

P.

P. *P.*, abbreviation of *Publius*.  
 Pain, grief. *Dolor, oris, m*.  
 Palace. *Palatium, i, n*.

- Palestine. *Palaestina, ae, f.*  
 Pannonia. *Pannonia, ae, f.*  
 Papirius. *Papirius, i, m.*  
 Pardon. *Ignosco, ère, nōvi, nōtum.*  
 Parent. *Parentis, m. and f.*  
 Part. *Partis, tis, f.*  
 Past. *Præteritus, a, um; the*  
   *past, præterita, òrum, n. pl.*  
 Pausanias. -*Pausanias, ae, m.*  
 Peace. *Pax, pacis, f.*  
 Peacock. *Pavo, ònis, m.*  
 Pelopidas. *Pelopidas, ae, m.*  
 Peloponnesian. *Peloponnesiæcus,*  
   *a, um.*  
 Penetrate. *Penetro, are, avi, atum.*  
 People. *Populus, i, m.; common*  
   *people, plebeians, plebs, plebis, f.*  
 Perdiccas. *Perdiccas or Perdicca,*  
   *ae, m.*  
 Pericles. *Pericles, is, m.*  
 Perish. *Pereo, ire, ivi or ii, itum.*  
 Perseus. *Perseus, i, m.*  
 Persian. *Persicus, a, um; subs.*  
   *Persa or Perses, ae, m.*  
 Persuade. *Persuadeo, ère, si, sum.*  
 Pharsalia. *Pharsalia, ae, f.*  
 Pharsalus. *Pharsalus, i, f.*  
 Philip. *Philippus, i, m.*  
 Phyle. *Phyle, es, f.*  
 Pierce. *Confodio, ère, fodi, fos-*  
   *sum.*  
 Pity (verb). *Misereor, èri, miser-*  
   *tus or misertus sum.*  
 Place. *Locus, i, m. (pl. i, m. and*  
   *a, n.)*  
 Plan. *Consilium, i, n.*  
 Play, sport. *Ludus, i, m.*  
 Play (verb). *Ludo, ere, si, sum.*  
 Please, be pleasing to. *Placeo,*  
   *ère, ui, itum; to displease, not*  
   *to be pleasing to, displiceo, ère,*  
   *displicui, displicitum.*  
 Plunder, rob. *Spolio, are, avi,*  
   *atum.*  
 Pompey. *Pompeius, i, m.*  
 Pompilius. *Pompilius, i, m.*  
 Pontard. *Pugio, ònis, m.*  
 Pontius. *Pontius, i, m.*  
 Pontus. *Pontus, i, m.*  
 Poor, poor man. *Pauper, èris.*  
 Porsena. *Porsena, ae, m.*  
 Portion, part. *Partis, tis, f.*  
 Possession. *Possessio, ònis, f.*  
 Power, reign. *Imperium, i, n.; un-*  
   *restricted power, tyranny, domi-*  
   *natio, ònis, f.*  
 Powerful. *Potens, tis; very pow-*  
   *erful, most powerful, potentiss-*  
   *mus, a, um.*  
 Praise (subs.). *Laus, dis, f.*  
 Praise (v.). *Laudo, are, avi, atum.*  
 Prayers. *Preces, um, f. pl.*  
 Prepare. *Paro, are, avi, atum;*  
   *praeparo, are, avi, atum.*  
 Prediction. *Prædictum, i, n.*  
 Present. *Donum, i, n.*  
 Priest, priestess. *Sacerdos, òtis,*  
   *m. and f.*  
 Priscus. *Priscus, i, m.*  
 Prison. *Carcer, èris, m.*  
 Prize. *Aestimo, are, avi, atum;*  
   *prize highly, magni aestimare.*  
 Proconsul. *Proconsul, ūlis, m.*  
 Promise. *Promitto, ère, misi, mis-*  
   *sum; to promise, offer, polliceor,*  
   *èri, itus sum.*  
 Provided, provided that. *Dum-*  
   *mòdo.*  
 Providence. *Providentia, ae, f.*  
 Prudence. *Prudentia, ae, f.*  
 Prudent. *Prudens, tis.*  
 Ptolemy. *Ptolemaeus, i, m.*  
 Publicola. *Publicola, ae, m.*  
 Pupil. *Discipulus, i, m.*  
 Put, place. *Pono, ère, posui, posi-*  
   *tum.*  
 Put an end to. *Finio, ire, ivi,*  
   *itum.*  
 Put to or upon. *Impono, ère, po-*  
   *sui, positum.*  
 Put to death, kill. *Occido, ère,*  
   *cidi, ctum.*  
 Pyrrhus. *Pyrrhus, i, m.*

## Q

- Q. Q., abbreviation of *Quintus*.  
 Queen. *Regina, ae, f.*  
 Question. *Quaestio, ònis, f.*

Quickly. *Celeriter*.  
 Quintus. *Quintus*, i, m.

R. [www.libroo.com](http://www.libroo.com)

Ransom. *Redīmo*, ēre, ēmi, emptum.  
 Reach, arrive at. *Pervenio*, ire, vēni, ventum.  
 Read. *Lego*, ēre, legi, lectum.  
 Rebellious, rebelling. *Rebellans*, antis.  
 Receive. *Accipio*, ēre, cēpi, ceptum; *recipio*, ēre, cēpi, ceptum.  
 Recover. *Recipio*, ēre, cēpi, ceptum.  
 Regal, royal. *Regius*, a, um.  
 Regulus. *Regūlus*, i, m.  
 Reign (subs.). *Regnum*, i, n.; imperium, i, n.  
 Reign (v.). *Regno*, āre, āvi, ātum.  
 Reject. *Imprōbo*, āre, āvi, ātum; reject, divorce, *repudio*, āre, āvi, ātum.  
 Relying upon, trusting to. *Fretus*, a, um; to rely upon, *fretus esse*.  
 Remain. *Maneo*, ēre, si, sum; remaneo, ēre, &c.  
 Remember. *Reminiscor*, ci.  
 Remnant, part left. *Reliquiae*, arum, f. pl.  
 Remus. *Remus*, i, m.  
 Render. *Reddo*, ēre, dīdi, dītum.  
 Render thanks, to thank. *Gratias agere*, egi, actum.  
 Report, rumor. *Fama*, ae, f.; rumor, ōris, m.  
 Report, communicate. *Nuntio*, āre, āvi, ātum.  
 Represent. *Repraesento*, āre, āvi, ātum.  
 Republic. *Respublica*, reipublicae. (See A. & S. 91.)  
 Reside, dwell. *Habito*, āre, āvi, ātum.  
 Response, answer. *Responsum*, i, n.  
 Restore. *Restituo*, ēre, ui, ūtum; *reddo*, ēre, dīdi, dītum.  
 Return, come back. *Reverto*, ēre, ti, sum; *redeo*, ire, ivi or ii, ūtum.

Reward. *Praemium*, i, n.  
 Right (subs.). *Ius*, juris, n.; rights, jura.  
 Right, rightly. *Recte*.  
 Ring. *Annūlus*, i, m.  
 Rise, rise in importance, come into notice. *Emergo*, ēre, si, sum.  
 River. *Flumen*, inis, n.; *fluvius*, i, m.  
 Rock, piece of rock, stone. *Saxum*, i, n.  
 Roman. *Romānus*, a, um; sube. *Romānus*, i, m.  
 Rome. *Roma*, ae, f.  
 Romulus. *Romūlus*, i, m.  
 Rout. *Fundo*, ēre, fudi, fusum.  
 Royal. *Regius*, a, um.  
 Ruler. *Rector*, ōris, m.  
 Rullianus. *Rullianus*, i, m.  
 Rush, rush together to or into. *Concurro*, ēre, curri, cursum.

S.

Sacrifice, offer sacrifices (in honor of the dead). *Parento*, āre, āvi, ātum.  
 Salamis. *Salāmis*, is or inis, f.; *Salamina*, ae, f.  
 Samnites. *Samnites*, ium, m. pl.  
 Sardinia. *Sardinia*, ae, f.  
 Saturn. *Saturnus*, i, m.  
 Saturnia. *Saturnia*, ae, f.  
 Say. *Dico*, ēre, dixi, dictum.  
 Scaevola. *Scaevola*, ae, m.  
 Scipio. *Scipio*, ōnis, m.  
 School. *Ludus*, i, m.  
 Scythian. *Scythes* (or a), ae, m.  
 Sea. *Mare*, is, abl. e or i, n.; by sea and land, *terra marique*.  
 Secretary. *Scriba*, ae, m.  
 Second. *Secundus*, a, um; sometimes alter, a, um. (F. B. 113, R.)  
 Secure, obtain. *Consēquor*, qui, cūtus sum.  
 See. *Video*, ēre, vidi, visum; to see, witness, *specto*, āre, āvi, ātum.  
 Seek. *Peto*, ēre, ivi or ii, ūtum.  
 Self-control. *Moderatio*, ōnis, f.

- Sell. *Vendo, Ære, didi, ditum*; to sell as slaves, *sub corôna vendere*.
- Senate. *Senatus, us, m.*
- Senator. *Senator, oris, m.*
- Send. *Mitto, Ære, misi, missum*; to send to take one's place, *in locum mittere*.
- Serve as soldier, serve in the field or in war, serve. *Milito, are, avi, atum*.
- Service, use. *Usus, us, m.*
- Servitude. *Servitus, utis, f.*
- Servius. *Servius, i, m.*
- Set fire to, set on fire. *Incendo, Ære, di, sum*.
- Seven. *Septem, indecl.*
- Seven hundred. *Septingenti, ae, a.*
- Seventh. *Septimus, a, um.*
- Seventy. *Septuaginta, indecl.*
- Severe. *Acer, acris, acre.*
- Sewer, drain. *Cloaca, ae, f.*
- Shepherd. *Pastor, oris, m.*
- Shield. *Clypeus or clipeus, i, m.*
- Ship. *Navis, is, f.*
- Short. *Brevis, e*; shortly, a short time, *brevi*; a short time after, *brevi postea*.
- Show, exhibit. *Ostendo, Ære, di, sum*; *praesto, are, stiti, stitum or statum*; *monstro, are, avi, atum*.
- Shun. *Vito, are, avi, atum*.
- Sicily. *Sicilia, ae, f.*
- Silver. *Argentum, i, n.*
- Silvius. *Silvius, i, n.*
- Since. *Quum* with subj.
- Six. *Sex, indecl.*
- Sixth. *Sextus, a, um.*
- Slave. *Servus, i, m.*
- Slay. *Occido, Ære, cidi, ctum*.
- Sleep. *Somnus, i, m.*
- Slightly, lightly. *Leviter*.
- Snow. *Nix, nivis, f.*
- So. *Tam, sic, adeo*; so—as, just—as; *ut—ita, tam—quam*.
- So great, such. *Tantus, a, um.*
- Soldier. *Miles, utis, m. and f.*
- Son. *Filius, i* (abl. sing. *filii*), *m.*
- Son-in-law. *Gener, Æri, m.*
- Sparta. *Sparta, ae, f.*
- Spartan. *Spartanus, a, um*; subs. *Spartanus, i, m.*
- Spear. *Hasta, ae, f.*
- Spirit, courage. *Anîmus, i, m.*
- Sport. *Ludus, i, m.*
- Spring. *Ver, veris, m.*
- State. *Civitas, atis, f.*
- Star. *Stella, ae, f.*
- Statue. *Statua, ae, f.*
- Stay, remain. *Maneo, Ære, si, sum*.
- Storm. *Imber, bris, m.*
- Strength. *Vis, vis* (pl. *vires*), *f.*; *robur, oris, n.*; *opes, um, f. pl.*
- Strike, strike through. *Percutio, Ære, cussi, cussum*.
- Study. *Studeo, Ære, ui.*
- Subdue. *Subigo, Ære, egi, actum*.
- Subjugate. *Subigo, Ære, egi, actum*; to subjugate, impose the yoke of servitude, *servitutis jugum impono, Ære, imposui, impositum*.
- Succeed. *Succedo, Ære, cessi, cecsum*; *sequor, qui, cutus sum*.
- Sue for, seek. *Peto, Ære, tvi or ii, itum*.
- Sufficiently. *Satis*.
- Summon. *Arcesso, Ære, tvi or ii, itum*.
- Superbus (surname of one of the *Tarquins*.) *Superbus, i, m.*
- Superior. *Superior, us*; superior, greater, *major, us*.
- Supper. *Coena, ae, f.*
- Supplies, provisions. *Commeatus, us, m.*
- Surpass. *Supero, are, avi, atum*.
- Surrender, give up. *Dedo, Ære, didi, ditum*.
- Surround. *Circundo, are, dedi, datum*; *cingo, Ære, cinxi, cinctum*.
- Syracusan. *Syracusanus, a, um*; subs. *Syracusanus, i, m.*
- Syracuse. *Syracusae, arum, f. pl.*
- Sword. *Gladius, i, m.*

## T.

T. *T.*, abbreviation for *Titus* ;

*T. Nero* for *Tiberius Nero*.

Take. *Capio, ēre, cepi, captum.*

Take, take possession of. *Occūpo, are, avi, atum.*

Tarquinius. *Tarquinius, i, m.*

Teach. *Doceo, ēre, ui, tum.*

Tell. *Dico, ēre, dixi, dictum.*

Temple. *Templum, i, n.*

Ten. *Decem*, indecl.

Tenth. *Decimus, a, um.*

Terms, condition. *Conditio, ōnis, f.*

Terrify. *Terreo, ēre, ui, itum* ; to terrify greatly, *perterreo, ēre, ui, itum.*

Terror. *Terror, ōris, m.*

Than. *Quam.*

Thanks. *Gratiae, arum, f. pl.* ; to give or render thanks, *gratias agere, egi, actum.*

Thanksgiving. *Supplicatio, ōnis, f.*

That. *Ille, a, ud* ; (followed by a relative clause explaining it) *is, ea, id.*

That (*conj.*). *Ut* ; with comparatives *quo.*

That not. *Ne, quom̄nus, quin.*

Theban. *Thebanus, a, um* ; subs. *Thebanus, i, m.*

Thebes. *Thebae, arum, f. pl.*

Theft. *Furtum, i, n.*

Their (*referring to the subject*). *Suus, a, um* ; their (*not referring to the subject*), expressed by genitive of the demonstratives, as *illorum, eorum, &c.*

Themistocles. *Themistocles, is, m.*

Then. *Tunc, illo tempore.*

There. *Ibi, illic.*

Therefore. *Ergo, igitur.*

Thermopylae. *Thermopylae, arum, f. pl.*

Thessalian. *Thessalus, a, um* ; subs. *Thessalus, i, m.*

Thessalus. *Thessalus, i, m.*

Thessaly. *Thessalia, ae, f.*

Thing. *Res, rei, f.*

Think. *Puto, are, avi, atum* ; to think earnestly about, weigh in mind, *agito, are, avi, atum.*

Third. *Tertius, a, um.*

Thirst. *Sitis, is, f.*

Thirtieth. *Tricesimus, a, um.*

Thirty. *Triginta*, indecl.

This. *Hic, haec, hoc.*

Thither. *Eo, illo, illuc.*

Thou, you. *Tu, tui, &c.*

Though, although. *Etiamsi, etsi, quamquam.*

Thousand. *Mille* ; a thousand men, *mille*, oftener *millia*.

Thrasylulus. *Thrasylulus, i, m.*

Three. *Tres, tria.*

Through. *Per* with accus.

Thus. *Sic, ita.*

Tigranes. *Tigranes, is, m.*

Tigranocerta. *Tigranocerta, ōrum.*

Time. *Tempus, ōris, n.*

Titus. *Titus, i, m.*

To. *Ad, in* with acc. ; before names of towns indicated by the accusative without a preposition.

To-day. *Hodie, hodierno die.*

To death. *Capitis* ; to condemn to death, *capitis damnare.*

To-morrow. *Cras, crastino die.*

Tomb. *Tumulus, i, m.*

Torquatus. *Torquatus, i, m.*

Treachery, treason. *Proditio, ōnis, f.*

Trojan. *Trojanus, a, um* ; subs. *Trojanus, i, m.*

Troy. *Troja, ae, f.*

Try, attempt. *Tento, are, avi, atum.*

Tullius. *Tullius, i, m.*

Turn, turn to or upon (*trans.*). *Converto, ēre, ti, sum.*

Twelve. *Duodēcim*, indecl.

Twenty. *Viginti*, indecl.

Two. *Duo, ae, o.*

Two hundred. *Ducenti, ae, a.*

Two years, space of two years. *Biennium, i, n.*

Tyrant. *Tyrannus, i, m.*

Tyre. *Tyrrus, i, f.*

Tyrian. *Tyrius, a, um*; suba. *Tyrius, i, m.*

## U.

Uncertain. *Incertus, a, um.*  
Understand. *Intelligo, ěre, lexi, lectum.*

Undertake. *Suscipio, ěre, cępi, ceptum.*

Unfavorable. *Non aequus, a, um*; *iniquus, a, um.*

Union, concord. *Conspiratio, ōnis, f.*

United. *Foedoratus, a, um.*

Unlearned. *Indoctus, a, um.*

Unless. *Nisi.*

Untouched, unharmed. *Intactus, a, um.*

Unwilling. *Inuitus, a, um.*

Unworthy. *Indignus, a, um.*

Upon, on, in. *In* with abl.

Use, make use of. *Utor, uti, usus sum.*

Useful. *Utilis, e.*

Useless. *Inutilis, e.*

## V.

Valerius. *Valerius, i, m.*

Very. Often indicated by the superlative of the adjective; very powerful, *potentissimus.*

Vespasian. *Vespasianus, i, m.*

Victim. *Victima, ae, f.*

Victorious, a victor. Expressed by *victor, ōris, m.*, in apposition with the noun.

Victory. *Victoria, ae, f.*

Village. *Vicus, i, m.*

Violate. *Violo, ěre, avi, atum.*

Virgin. *Virgo, ĩnis, f.*

Virginia. *Virginia, ae, f.*

Virginian. *Virginianus, i, m.*

Viriathus. *Viriathus, i, m.*

Virtue. *Virtus, ūtis, f.*

Visit, go to. *Adco, ěre, ĩvi or ĩi, itum.*

Vitellius. *Vitellius, i, m.*

Voice. *Vox, vocis, f.*

Volscian. *Volscus, a, um*; suba. *Volscus, i, m.*

Voluntary. *Voluntarius, a, um.*

Voluptuousness, pleasures. *Deliciae, arum, f. pl.*

## W.

Wage, carry on as war. *Gero, ěre, gessi, gestum*; *infěro, inferre, intŭli, illatum.*

Wait for, await. *Opperior, tri, peritus or portus sum.*

Walk. *Ambŭlo, ěre, avi, atum.*

War. *Bellum, i, n.*

Watching, keeping awake. *Per-vigilia, ae, f.*

Wealthy. *Dives, ūtis*; *locŭplex, ětis.*

Wear out, weaken. *Conficio, ěre, fěci, fectum.*

Weariness. *Lassitŭdo, ĩnis, f.*

What, which (*interrog. adj.*). *Qui, quae, quod?*

When. *Quum*; *interrog. quando.*

Where. *Ubi*, when not *interrog.* generally with the correlative *ibi* in the principal clause.

Whether. *Utrum*; whether—or (in double questions), *utrum—an*; (in other cases) *seu—seu*; *sive—sive*; whether in dependent questions, *num, ne, nonne*; *num* is more common than in direct questions and here does not necessarily expect the answer *no.* (177, R. 2.)

While. *Dum.*

Whither. *Quo, quonam.*

Who, which, what. *Quis, quae, quod or quid?*

Whole. *Totus, a, um.* (F. B. 113, R.)

Whose. *Cujus, a, um*; *cujus, quorum.*

Why. *Cur.*

Wife. *Uxor, ōris, f.*; *conjug, ūgis, f.*

Winter. *Hivus, ěnis, f.*

Wisdom. *Consilium, i, n.; sapientia, ae, f.*

Wise. *Sapiens, entis.*

Wish. *Volo, velle, volui.* (F. B. 410; A. & S. 178.)

With. *Cum* with abl.; also indicated by the *abl. alone.*

Withdraw, come off (from battle).

*Discēdo, ēre, cessi, cessum.*

Without. *Sine* with abl.

Withstand. *Sustineo, ēre, ui, tentum.*

Witness, see. *Specto, āre, āvi, ātum.*

World. *Orbis, is, m.; orbis terrarum.*

Worthy. *Dignus, a, um.*

Wound (*subs.*). *Vulnus, ēris, n.*

Wound (*v.*). *Vulnēro, āre, āvi, ātum.*

Write. *Scribo, ēre, psi, ptum.*

## X.

Xanthippus. *Xanthippus, i, m.*  
Xerxes. *Xerxes, is, m.*

## Y.

Year. *Annus, i, m.*

Yesterday. *Hieri; hesterno die.*

Yet. *Tamen.*

You. *Tu, tui, &c.*

Your. *Tuus, a, um* (in reference to one person); *vester, tra, trum* (in reference to more than one).

Yourself. *Tu ipse, tui ipstus, &c.*; sometimes particularly as object, *tu, tui.*

Youth, a young person. *Adolescens, entis, m. and f.*



[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

## HISTORICAL AND GEOGRAPHICAL INDEX.

---

☞ The numerals accompanying the proper names in the following Index refer to one or more paragraphs in the Latin where those names occur.

---

### A.

- A.* An abbreviation for *Aulus*, a man's name; 46, 85.
- Acca, ae, f.*; *Acca Laurentia, ae, f.* The wife of Faustulus, and nurse of Romulus and Remus; 7.
- Achaia, ae, f.* Achaia, an important province in the northern part of the Peloponnesus. After the destruction of Corinth all southern Greece was reduced to a Roman province with the name of Achaia; 90.
- Achaeus, a, um*; *Achaicus, a, um, adj.* Achaean, 156; subs. *Achaeus, i, m.*, an Achaean; 97, 155.
- Actium, i, n.* A promontory and town at the entrance of the Ambracian Gulf on the western coast of Greece; celebrated for the victory of Augustus over Antony and Cleopatra; 82.
- Adherbal, alis, m.* Son of Micipsa and cousin of Jugurtha. Micipsa left the kingdom of Numidia to his two sons, Adherbal and Hiempsal, and his nephew Jugurtha whom he had adopted as a son. Jugurtha, however, not satisfied with a share merely of the government, slew his cousins and became sole king of Numidia; 65.
- Adrastia, ae, f.* A district and city of Mysia; 130.
- Aeacides, ae, m.* A patronymic denoting a descendant of Aeacus who was the grandfather of Achilles. The name is often applied to Achilles; Alexander the Great also claimed it for himself; 140.
- Aegeus, i, m.* One of the early kings of Athens, and the father of Theseus; 95.
- Aegos flumen.* Aegospotamos, a river and town in the Thracian Chersonesus, noted for the defeat of the Athenians by Lysander; 115.
- Aegyptus, i, f.* Egypt; 78.
- Aegyptius, a, um.* Egyptian; subs. *Aegyptius, i, m.*, an Egyptian; 95, 133.

- Aemilius, i, m.* The family name of several distinguished Romans. *L. Aemilius*, surnamed *Paullus*, fell in the battle of Cannae; 49. Another of the same name conquered Perseus and reduced Macedonia to a Roman province; 59, 154.
- Aeneas, ae, m.* A Trojan prince who after the destruction of Troy is said to have fled into Italy and formed a settlement; 2.
- Aequi, ōrum, m. pl.* A warlike people of Latium in Italy; 31.
- Aetolus, a, um.* Aetolian; subs. *Aetolus, i, m.*, an Aetolian; 145, 154, 155.
- Africa, ae, f.* Africa; 44, 46.
- Africanus, a, um.* African. Also the surname given to the two most distinguished Scipios for their achievements in Africa during the Punic wars; 56, 61.
- Africus, i, m.* (sc. *ventus*). Southwest wind, as blowing from Africa; 132.
- Agis, idis, m.* A king of the Lacedaemonians in the time of Alexander the Great; 136.
- Agrirentum, i, n.* A large and wealthy town in Sicily; 52.
- Agrippa, ae, m.* A family name among the Romans. *Menenius Agrippa* induced the people who had revolted at Rome and taken up their quarters upon *Mons Sacer*, to return into the city; 27. *Herodes Agrippa*, son of Aristobulus prince of Judea, was educated at Rome with Drusus, the son of Tiberius. He gave offence to Tiberius, and was thrown into prison, but on the accession of Caligula was set at liberty; 83.
- Agrippina, ae, f.* (1) The wife of Germanicus and mother of the emperor Caligula; 84. (2) The daughter of Germanicus and Agrippina (No. 1); she was the mother of the emperor Nero, and as her third husband was married to the emperor Claudius; 85, 86.
- Alba, ae, f.; Alba Longa, ae, f.* A city of Latium founded by Ascanius; 3, 14.
- Albanus, a, um.* Alban. *Mons Albanus*, a rocky mountain sixteen miles southeast of Rome; 3. *Lacus Albanus*, the Alban Lake west of Mount Albanus; 4.
- Albanus, i, m.* An Alban, a citizen of Alba; 5, 14.
- Alcibiades, is, m.* An Athenian general in the Peloponnesian war; 109, 110, 112, 113, &c.
- Alcmæon, ōnis, m.* The last of the Athenian archons appointed for life; 99.
- Alexander, dri, m.* The most distinguished of this name was the son and successor of Philip, king of Macedonia; 127—141. A second by the same name was king of Epirus and son-in-law of Philip; 127. A third was the son of Perseus, the last king of Macedonia; 154.
- Alexandria, ae, f.* Alexandria, a celebrated city of Egypt built by Alexander the Great; 78, 79.
- Allia, ae, f.* A small river a few miles north of Rome; 33.
- Alpes, ium, f.* The Alps, a high range of mountains north of Italy; 48, 75.
- Ammon or Hammon, ōnis, m.* An appellation of Jupiter as worshipped in Africa; 133.

- Amphictyon, ðnis*, m. One of the early kings of Athens; 95.
- Amphipolis, is*, f. A city of Macedonia, now *Emboli*; 123.
- Amulius, i*, m. Son of Procas, king of Alba; he was the brother of Numitor; 5, 6, 8.
- Anaxarchus, i*, m. A philosopher of Abdera, who accompanied Alexander into Asia; 139.
- Anchises, ae*, m. Anchises, the father of Aeneas; 2.
- Ancus, i*, m.; *Ancus Marcius, i*, m. The fourth king of Rome; 15, 17.
- Andriscus, i*, m. A Macedonian who claimed to be the son of Perseus, and was accordingly called *Pseudophilippus*, i. e., False Philip; 62.
- Anio, ñnis*, m. A small river of Italy, a tributary of the Tiber; now *Teverone*; 27, 34.
- Antigonus, i*, m. One of Alexander's generals; 143.
- Antiochia, ae*, f. The chief city of Syria, founded by Seleucus and named by him in honor of his father Antiochus; 73.
- Antiochus, i*, m. Antiochus the Great, king of Syria, long engaged in war against the Romans, and finally defeated by Cornelius Scipio near Magnesia; 53, 150.
- Antipater, tri*, m. One of Alexander's generals; after the death of Alexander he received the government of Greece and Macedonia; 136, 142.
- Antonia, ae*, f. Paternal aunt of Nero, by whom she was put to death; 86.
- Antonius, i*, m. Antony; *M. Antonius* formed a triumvirate with Octavius and Lepidus; 80, 81, 82. *C. Antonius* was the colleague of Cicero in the consulship; 74.
- Apollo, inia*, m. The god of divination; 98, 107, 145.
- Appius, i*, m.; *Appius Claudius, i*, m. One of the *Decemviri*; 30.
- Apulia, ae*, f. A province in southern Italy; 49, 70.
- Arbela, òrum*, n. A town in Assyria, famous for the victory of Alexander over Darius; 134.
- Ardea, ae*, f. A city of Latium, a few miles south of Rome; 21, 22.
- Argos, n.* (only in nom. and acc.), or *Argi, òrum*, m. pl. The capital of the province of Argolis in the Peloponnesus; the name was often applied to the province itself, and poetically to all Greece; 42, 96.
- Argivus, i*, m. An inhabitant or citizen of Argos; also a Greek; 96.
- Argyraspides, um*, m. pl. A term applied to a company of Macedonian soldiers who wore silver shields; 137.
- Aridaeus, i*, m. Brother and successor of Alexander the Great; 142.
- Ariminum, i*, n. A town in Umbria, on the Adriatic; 77.
- Aristobulus, i*, m. A king of Judea, who was taken by Pompey and carried as prisoner to Rome; 73.
- Aristotiles, is*, m. A distinguished philosopher, and the teacher of Alexander the Great; 141.
- Armenia, ae*, f. A country of Asia, divided by the river Euphrates into two unequal parts, viz.: the eastern, called *Armenia Major*, and the western, called *Armenia Minor*; 71.
- Armenius, a, um*. Armenian; 71.

- Artaphernes, is, m.* Nephew of Darius; 101.  
*Artaxerxes, is, m.* Son and successor of Darius, king of Persia; 119, 120.  
*Artemisium, i, n.* A promontory of the island Euboea; 104.  
*Aruna, unius, m.* Son of Tarquin the Proud; 24.  
*Ascanius, i, m.* Son of Aeneas; 3.  
*Asia, ae, f.* Asia; 101.  
*Asiaticus, a, um.* Asiatic; also a surname given to L. Cornelius Scipio for his achievements in Asia, especially his victory over king Antiochus; 58.  
*Asina, ae, m.* A surname of *Cneus Cornelius*, who was the colleague of Duillius in the consulship in the early part of the first Punic war; 43.  
*Athenae, arum, f. pl.* The capital of Attica; 95, 97, 112, 116.  
*Atheniensis, e, adj.* Athenian; subs. *Atheniensis, is, m.*, an Athenian; 95, 100, 116.  
*Atilius, i, m.* A family name among the Romans, as *M. Atilius* surnamed *Regulus*; 44.  
*Atreus, i, m.* Son of Pelops; 99.  
*Attalus, i, m.* One of Philip's generals and the uncle of his wife Cleopatra; 127.  
*Atthis, idis, f.* The daughter of Cranaus, who was one of the early kings of Attica; 95.  
*Attica, ae, f.* An important province in Greece; 102, 108, 118.  
*Atticus, a, um.* Attic, Athenian; subs. *Atticus, i, m.*, an inhabitant of Attica; 95.  
*Augustus, i, m.* Surname of Octavius Caesar, the first of the Roman emperors; 81, 86. This surname was also often applied to the emperors generally.  
*Aurelius, i, m.* Name of a Roman gens or family, as *L. Aurelius Cotta*; 69.  
*Aventinus, i, m.* The Aventine, one of the seven hills of Rome; 8.

## B.

- Babylonia, ae, f.* Babylonia, a province of Syria; also Babylon, the capital of Babylonia; 139.  
*Balbus, i, m.* Balbus, a man's name; 247, 248.  
*Bacchantes, ium, pl.* The votaries of Bacchus, the god of wine; 137.  
*Bestia, ae, m.* A surname in the Calpurnian family at Rome; *L. Calpurnius Bestia* was consul when war was declared against Jugurtha; 65.  
*Bibulus, i, m.* A proper name; *L. Bibulus* was Caesar's colleague in the consulship; 75.  
*Bitynia, ae, f.* A fruitful province of Asia Minor; 69.  
*Bocotia, ae, f.* A district of Greece north of Attica; 96.  
*Boeotius, i, m.* A Boeotian; 121.  
*Brennus, i, m.* A distinguished Gallic leader; 147, 148.

- Britannia, ae, f.* Great Britain; 85, 86.  
*Britannicus, a, um.* British; also a surname given to Germanicus, the son of the emperor Claudius; 75, 85.  
*Britannus, i, m.* An inhabitant of Great Britain, a Briton; 75.  
*Bruttii, ōrum, m.* A people in the south of Italy; also their country; 54.  
*Brutus, i, m.* A Roman surname; *L. Junius Brutus*, one of the first consuls of Rome; 22, 23, 24; *M. Junius Brutus* and *D. Junius Brutus* acted prominent parts in the assassination of Caesar; 79, 81.  
*Byzantium, i, n.* A city on the Bosporus, now *Constantinople*, 69, 90, 113.

C.

- C.* Abbreviation for *Caius*; *Cn.* for *Cneus*, *Cneius* or *Onacus*, names common among the Romans; 43, 46, 64, 72.  
*Cabira, indecl.* A town in Pontus; 71.  
*Cadmea, ae, f.* The citadel of Thebes in Boeotia, named after Cadmus, its founder; 120.  
*Cadmus, i, m.* A Phoenician who is said to have been the inventor of alphabetic writing; 96.  
*Caecilius, i, m.* A Roman name, as *Q. Caecilius Metellus*; 62.  
*Caepio, ōnis, m.* A Roman consul; 63.  
*Caesar, āris, m.* A surname of the Julian family; *C. Julius Caesar*, a distinguished general and statesman; 75, 77, 83. The title or surname *Caesar* was applied generally to denote the Roman emperors; 88.  
*Caius, i, m.* A Roman name.—*Caius Caligula, ae, m.* A Roman emperor, successor of Tiberius; 84, 86, 94. *Caius Augustus*, son of Germanicus; 83.  
*Calpurnius, i, m.* (See *Bestia*.)  
*Camillus, i, m.* A distinguished Roman general; 31, 32, 33.  
*Campania, ae, f.* A province in Central Italy; 40, 51.  
*Cannae, ārum, f. pl.* A village in Apulia, famous for the great victory of Hannibal over the Romans; 49.  
*Cannensis, e, adj.* Of or belonging to Cannae; 53.  
*Capitolium, i, n.* Capitol. This was the citadel of Rome, and was erected on the Capitoline Hill; 21, 33, 85.  
*Cappadocia, ae, f.* A country of Asia Minor; 83.  
*Caprea, ae, f., or Capreae, ārum.* An island in the Tuscan Sea; now *Capri*; 83.  
*Capua, ae, f.* The chief city of Campania; 70.  
*Carrae, ārum, f. pl.* A city near the Euphrates, famous for the defeat of Crassus by the Parthians; 76.  
*Carthāgo, ōnis, f.* An ancient city in Northern Africa; 47, 50.—*Carthago Nova.* New Carthage, a town in Spain; now *Carthagena*; 53.  
*Carthaginensis, e, adj.* Carthaginian; subs. *Carthaginicensis, is, a* Carthaginian; 43, 44, 45, 46, &c.

- Casca, ae, m.* Surname of *Servilius*, one of the conspirators against Caesar; 79.
- Cassander, dri, m.* Son of Antipater and king of Macedonia after the death of Alexander; 143, 144.
- Cassius, i, m.* A Roman name. *C. Cassius*, one of the conspirators against Caesar; 76, 79, 81.
- Catilina, ae, m. (L. Sergius).* The notorious conspirator against the Roman government; 74.
- Catinensis* or *Catiniensis, is.* A Catinean, a citizen of Catina a city in Sicily; 109.
- Catti, drum, m. pl.* A people in Germany; 94.
- Catulus, i, m.* Surname of *C. Lutatius*, a Roman consul at the close of the first Punic war; 46.
- Caudinus, a, um.* Caudine; *Furcillae Caudinae*, the Caudine Forks, a narrow defile near Caudium, in Italy; 37.
- Cecrops, opis, m.* The most ancient king of Attica; 95.
- Censorinus, i, m.* Surname of *L. Marcius*, a Roman consul in the third Punic war; 60.
- Chacronæa, ae, f.* A town in Boeotia; 125.
- Chalcedon, onis, f.* A town on the Thracian Bosphorus, opposite to Byzantium; 69.
- Charops, opis, m.* The first decennial archon at Athens; 99.
- Cicero, onis, m.* The celebrated Roman orator; 74, 80.
- Cilicia, ae, f.* A province in the southern part of Asia Minor; 90.
- Cineas, ae, m.* A friend and favorite minister of Pyrrhus; 41.
- Cinna, ae, m.* A surname among the Romans. *L. Cornelius Cinna*, confederate of Marius in the civil war; 68.
- Cirrhæus, a, um.* Cirrhæan, of or pertaining to Cirrha, a town near Delphi; 145.
- Claudius, i, m.* The fourth Roman emperor; 85, 90. *Appius Claudius*, one of the decemviri; 30. *M. Claudius Marcellus*, a Roman consul; 51.
- Cleomènes, is, m.* A king of Sparta; 150.
- Cleopatra, ae, f.* Queen of Egypt, 79, 82. Another of the same name was the daughter of Philip of Macedon; 127.
- Cluentius, i, m.* A leader in the Social war; 66.
- Cnaeus* or *Cneus* (abbrev. *Cn.*), *i, m.* A Roman name, as *Cnaeus Octavius*, 154; *Cn. Pompeius*, 72.
- Cocles, tis, m. (Horatius).* A Roman distinguished in the war with Porsena; 25.
- Collatinus, i, m.* Surname of Tarquinius, the husband of Lucretia; 21, 22, 23.
- Commagène, es, f.* The northern province of Syria; 90.
- Conon, onis, m.* A celebrated Athenian general; 114, 115.
- Corinthus, i, f.* Corinth, a city of Achaia; 16, 62, 155, 156.
- Corinthius, a, um.* Corinthian; subs. *Corinthius, i, m.*, a Corinthian; 62.
- Coriolanus, i, m.* A surname given to *Qu. Marcius*, derived from *Corioli*, the name of a town which he had taken in war; 28.
- Corioli, drum, m. pl.* A town in Latium; 28.

- Cornelius, i, m.* The name of a distinguished Roman gens or clan, including the *Scipios, Sulla, &c.*; 43, 48, 53, 66. (See also *Asina*.)  
*Corvinus, i, m.* Surname of *M. Valerius*, tribune of the soldiers; 35.  
*Cotta, ae, m.* Surname of *M. Aurelius*, a Roman consul in the time of the Mithridatic war; 69.  
*Cranaus, i, m.* King of Attica and successor of Cecrops; 95.  
*Crassus, i, m.* Surname in the Licinian gens. *M. Licinius Crassus*, a Roman general defeated and slain by the Parthians; 76.  
*Cratærus, i, m.* A general in the army of Alexander the Great; 142.  
*Cremæra, ae, f.* A river of Etruria, in Italy; 29.  
*Cremōna, ae, f.* A town of Cisalpine Gaul, on the Po; 88.  
*Creon, ontis, m.* An archon at Athens; 99.  
*Creta, ae, f.* The island of Crete; now *Candia*; 96, 98.  
*Critias, ae, m.* One of the thirty tyrants at Athens; 118.  
*Crixus, i, m.* A leader in the war of the gladiators; 70.  
*Cures, ium, f. pl.* The ancient capital of the Sabines; 18.  
*Curatii, orum, m. pl.* Three brothers who were selected from the Alban army to engage in combat with the three Horatii, also brothers, from the Romans; 14. (See note on *Horatiörum et Curiatiorum*, 14.)  
*Cursor, öris, m.* Surname of *L. Papius*, dictator in the Samnite war; 36.  
*Cynosephälæ, arum, f. pl.* "Dogs' Heads," two hills in Thessaly; 57, 151.  
*Cyprus, i, f.* An island in the Mediterranean sea, near Asia Minor; 143.  
*Cyrus, i, m.* Brother of Artaxerxes; 114, 119.  
*Cyzicus, i, f., or Cyzicum, i, n.* An ancient city in Asia Minor; 69.

## D.

- Dacus, a, um.* Dacian, relating to Dacia, a province north of the Danube; subs. *Dacus, i, m.*, a Dacian; 94.  
*Danaus, i, m.* Brother of Aegyptus and founder of Argos; 96.  
*Darius, i, m.* A celebrated king of Persia; 101, 103, 114, 131.  
*Datis, is, m.* One of the generals of Darius; 101, 102.  
*Deiotärus, i, m.* A king of Galatia; 73.  
*Delphi, orum, m. pl.* A town of Phocis, celebrated for the temple and oracle of Apollo; 103, 107, 147.  
*Delphicus, a, um.* Delphic; 98.  
*Demarätus, i, m.* The father of Tarquinius Priscus; 16.  
*Demetrius, i, m.* The name of several Greeks, one of whom was the son of Philip V. and the brother of Perseus, the last king of Macedonia; 51, 57, 143, 152.  
*Demosthènes, is, m.* An Athenian general; 111.  
*Deucalion, önis, m.* An ancient king of Phthia, in Thessaly; 95.  
*Domitidänus, i, m.* A Roman emperor; 94.  
*Draco, önis, m.* A lawgiver of Athens; 100.  
*Drusus, i, m.* Son of Germanicus; 83. *Drusus Caesar, öris, m.* Son of Tiberius; 83.



*Duilius, i, m. (Caius).* A Roman commander and consul in the first Punic war; 43.

www.libtool.com.cn

*Egeria, ae, f.* A prophetic nymph from whom Numa professed to receive instructions; 13.

*Eleusis* or *Eleusin, inis, f.* (accus. *Eleusin*). An ancient town of Attica; 95.

*Elius, i, m.* An Elean, native of Elis, in the western part of the Peloponnesus; 99.

*Epaminondas, ae, m.* A celebrated Theban general; 121.

*Epirus, i, f.* A province in the north of Greece; 38, 42, 82.

*Erechtheus* or *Erechtheus, i, m.* An ancient king of Athens; 95.

*Eretria, ae, f.* Important city on the island of Euboea; 102.

*Eryzias, ae, m.* The last of the decennial archons at Athens; 99.

*Etruria, ae, f.* A country of Central Italy; Tuscany; 16.

*Etruscus, i, m.* An Etruscan; 25.

*Euboea, ae, f.* An island in the Aegean sea; 102, 104.

*Euphrates, is, m.* A large river of Asia; 134.

*Euröpa, ae, f.* The continent of Europe; 58. Also the name of the sister of Cadmus; 96.

*Eurybiades, is, m.* A king of Sparta; 105.

*Eurymedon, ontis, m.* An Athenian general in the Peloponnesian war; 111.

F.

*Fabius, i, m.* The name of a distinguished Roman family; 29, 36.

*Fabricius, i, m.* A distinguished leader of the Romans in the war against Pyrrhus; 40, 42.

*Falerii, örüm, m. pl.* A town of Etruria; 32.

*Faliscus, a, um.* Of or belonging to Falerii; subs. *Faliscus, i, m.*, a citizen of Falerii; 33.

*Faustulus, i, m.* A shepherd who brought up Romulus and Remus; 7.

*Flaminius, i, m. (C.)* A Roman consul defeated by Hannibal at the Lake of Trasimösus; 48. *T. Quinctius Flaminius* or *Flaminius, i, m.*, the conqueror of king Philip of Macedonia; 151.

*Furcülac, örüm, f. pl.* (See *Caudinus*; 37.)

*Furius, i, m.* A Roman family name; as *M. Furius Casmillus*; see *Camillus*; 32.

G.

*Galatia, us, f.* A country of Asia Minor; 73.

*Galba, ae, m. (Sorgius).* A Roman emperor; 87.

- Gallia, ae, f.* The ancient country of Gaul; 75, 81.  
*Gallicus, a, um.* Gallic; 146.  
*Gallus, i, m.* A Gaul, a native of Gaul; 33, 34, 35, 48.  
*Ganāla, ae, f.* A town in Palestine; 143.  
*Germania, ae, f.* Germany; 90.  
*Germanicus, a, um, adj.* German; 88.  
*Germanicus, i, m.* Surname of several Roman generals who achieved victories over the Germans; *Germanicus Caesar* was the father of the emperor Caligula and the grandfather of Nero; 83, 84, 86.  
*Germanus, i, m.* A German; 75.  
*Gracchus, i, m. (Sempronius).* A Roman general defeated by Hannibal at the river Trebia; 48.  
*Graecia, ae, f.* The country of Greece; 42, 57, 96, 116, &c.  
*Graecus or Graius, a, um.* Grecian, 98; subs. *Graecus* or *Graius, i, m.*, a Greek; 107, 119, 120.  
*Gylippus, i, m.* A Spartan commander in the Sicilian expedition; 110, 111.

## H.

- Halys, yos, m.* A river in Asia Minor; 134.  
*Hamilcar, āris, m.* The father of Hannibal; 44, 47.  
*Hammon, ōnis, m.* (See *Anmon*.)  
*Hannibal, ālis, m.* A celebrated Carthaginian general in the second Punic war; 29, 47, 51.  
*Hanno, ōnis, m.* A Carthaginian general in the second Punic war; 55.  
*Hasdrubal, ālis, m.* Son of Hamilcar and brother of Hannibal; 48, 50, 54. Another of the same name was the brother-in-law of Hannibal, and the founder of New Carthage, in Spain.  
*Hellespontus, i, m.* The straits of the Dardanelles; 106, 113, 134.  
*Hercules, is, m.* A hero of antiquity, celebrated for his great strength and his wonderful achievements; 99.  
*Herennius, i, m.* The father of Pontius Thelesinus, who conquered the Romans at the Caudine Forks; 37.  
*Herodes, is, m.* (See *Agrippa*.)  
*Hiempsal, ālis, m.* Son of Micipsa and cousin of Jugurtha; 65. (See *Adherbal*.)  
*Hiero, ōnis, m.* A king of Syracuse at the time of the first Punic war; 43.  
*Hierosolyma, ae, f., or ōrum, n. pl.* Jerusalem, the capital of Judea; 73, 90, 91.  
*Hispania, ae, f.* Spain; 48, 53, 81, &c.  
*Hispanus, a, um.* Spanish; subs. *Hispanus, i, m.*, a Spaniard; 53.  
*Horatii, ōrum, m. pl.* (See *Curatii*; also note on *Horatiorum et Curatiorum*, 14.)  
*Horatius, i, m.* (See *Cocles* and *Pulvillus*.)  
*Hostilius, i, m.* A Roman name; *Tullus Hostilius*, the third king of Rome; 14. *C. Hostilius Mancinus*, a Roman consul; 64.  
*Hyphāsis, is, m.* A river of India, a tributary of the Indus; 138.

## I

- Iberus*, *i*, *m*. A river of Spain; now *the Ebro*; 46.  
*Ilium*, *i*, *n*. Ilium or Troy; 129.  
*Illyricus*, *a*, *um*, or *Illyrius*, *a*, *um*. Illyrian, of or pertaining to Illyria, a country on the northeastern coast of the Adriatic; 141, 146.  
 Subs. *Illyricus* or *Illyrius*, *i*, *m*, an Illyrian; 123.  
*Iniachus*, *i*, *m*. The first king of Argos; 96.  
*India*, *ae*, *f*. India, an extensive country of Asia, deriving its name from the river Indus; 137.  
*Ionia*, *ae*, *f*. A country in the western part of Asia Minor; 113, 114.  
*Ionæ*, *um*, *m*. *pl*. The Ionians; 101.  
*Iphitus*, *i*, *m*. A king of Elis, who revived the Olympic games, and may almost be regarded as their founder; 99.  
*Ister*, *tri*, *m*. The river Danube. This name is applied to the lower part of the river, the upper part usually taking the name *Danubius*; 101.  
*Italia*, *ae*, *f*. The country of Italy; 38, 46, 81.  
*Italicus* or *Italus*, *a*, *um*, *adj*. Italian. subs. *Italus*, *i*, *m*, an Italian; 1.

## J.

- Janiculum*, *i*, *n*. A hill on the west side of the Tiber, not one of *the seven hills* of Rome, though included within the wall built by Aurelian in the third century; 1.  
*Judæa*, *ae*, *f*. The country of Judea; 73.  
*Judeus*, *a*, *um*. Jewish; subs. *Judæus*, *i*, *m*, a Jew; 73.  
*Jugurtha*, *ae*, *m*. A king of Numidia, conquered by the Romans; 65.  
 (See *Adherbal*.)  
*Julius*, *i*, *m*. (See *Caesar*.)  
*Junius*, *i*, *m*. (See *Brutus*.)  
*Jupiter*, *Jovis*, *m*. The king of the gods; 4, 21, 133.  
*Juvenicus*, *i*, *m*. A Roman general; 62.

## L.

- L*. An abbreviation for *Lucius*, a Roman name; 22, 36, 49, 58, 60, &c.  
*Lacedaemon*, *ōnis*, *f*. The city of Lacedaemon or Sparta, the capital of Laconia; 111.  
*Lacedaemonius*, *a*, *um*. Lacedaemonian or Spartan; subs. *Lacedaemonius*, *i*, *m*, a Lacedaemonian or Spartan; 44, 57, 98, 102, &c.  
*Laconia*, or *Laconica*, *ae*, *f*. A country of the Peloponnesus; 97, 108.  
*Laco* or *Lacon*, *ōnis*, *m*. A Laconian; 120.  
*Laevinus*, *i*, *m*. A Roman family name; *P. Valerius Laevinus*, a Roman consul; 38, 39. *M. Valerius Laevinus*, also a Roman consul and a distinguished commander; 51, 52.  
*Lamachus*, *i*, *m*. An Athenian general in the Sicilian expedition; 109, 110.

- Larissa, ae, f.* A town in Thessaly; 123.  
*Latinus, i, m.* An ancient king of the Laurentians in Italy; 2.  
*Latium, i, n.* Latium, a country of Italy containing Rome; 21.  
*Latinus, a, um, adj.* Latin; subs. *Latinus, i, m.,* an inhabitant of Latium, a Latin; *pl.* the Latins; 15.  
*Laurentia, or Larentia, ae, f.* (See *Acca*.)  
*Lavinia, ae, f.* Daughter of Latinus and wife of Aeneas; 2.  
*Lavinium, i, n.* A town in Latium, a few miles south of Rome, founded by Aeneas and named by him after his wife Lavinia; 2.  
*Leonidas, ae, m.* A Spartan king who fell at Thermopylae; 104.  
*Lepidus, i, m.* One of the triumvirs with Octavius and Antony; 80.  
*Leuctra, ōrum, n. pl.* A small town in Boeotia; 121.  
*Leuctricus, a, um, adj.* Leuctrian; of or belonging to Leuctra; 122. •  
*Libānus, i, m.* Mount Lebanon in Syria; 132.  
*Liber, ōri, m.* A name sometimes applied to Bacchus, the god of wine; 137.  
*Licinius, i, m.* A Roman name. *P. Licinius,* a Roman consul and commander in the war with Perseus; 59. *L. Licinius Lucullus,* a Roman consul in the time of the Mithridatic war; 69, 71.  
*Ligures, um, m. pl.* The Ligurians, inhabitants of Liguria, in the western part of Italy; 48.  
*Lilybaeum, i, n.* A promontory on the southwestern coast of Sicily; 46.  
*Livia, ae, f.* The mother of Tiberius; 83.  
*Lucānus, i, m.* A poet put to death by Nero; he was the nephew of Seneca the philosopher; 86.  
*Lucius, i, m.* A name common among the Romans; as *Lucius Tarquinius Priscus,* 16; usually represented by the abbreviation *L.,* as *L. Brutus;* 22.  
*Lucretia, ae, f.* The wife of Collatinus; 21, 23, 24.  
*Lucretius, i, m.* The father of Lucretia; 24.  
*Lucullus, i, m.* (See *Licinius*.)  
*Lusitania, ae, f.* Lusitania; now *Portugal;* 63.  
*Lutatius, i, m.* (See *Catūlus*.)  
*Lycia, ae, f.* The country of Lycia in Asia Minor; 90, 96.  
*Lycurgus, i, m.* The great lawgiver of Sparta; 98. Another was king of Sparta, successor of Cleomenes; 150.  
*Lydia, ae, f.* A country in Asia Minor; 114, 119.  
*Lysander, ōri, m.* A celebrated Spartan general; 114, 115, 116.  
*Lysimachus, i, m.* One of the generals of Alexander the Great; 143, 144.

## M.

- M.* An abbreviation for *Marcus,* a Roman name; 35, 44, 60, 74, &c.  
*Macedonia, ae, f.* Macedonia, Macedon, a country north of Thessaly; 51, 62.  
*Macēdo, ōnis, m.* A Macedonian; 122, 125.  
*Macedonicus, a, um, adj.* Macedonian; 57, 154.

- Magi, ōrum, m. pl.* The Magi, the learned men among the Persians; 139.
- Magnesia, æ, f.* A city in Lydia, in Asia Minor; 58.
- Magnus, i, m.* Surname of Alexander, meaning *the Great*; 143.
- Mancinus, i, m.* A Roman consul in the war with the Numantians; 64.
- Manlius, i, m. (M.)* A Roman consul in the third Punic war; 60. *T. Manlius*, a Roman youth, surnamed *Torquatus* for his achievements in the Gallic war; 34.
- Mantineæ, æ, f.* A city of Arcadia, in the Peloponnesus; 121.
- Marathon, ōnis, m.* A town and plain in Attica, celebrated for the victory of Miltiades over the Persians; 102.
- Marathonius, a, um.* Marathonian; of or belonging to Marathon; 103, 106.
- Marcellus, i, m.* (See *Claudius*.)
- Marcus, i, m.* (See *Ancus, Censorinus, and Coriolanus*.)
- Mardonius, i, m.* A Persian general, defeated by Pausanias in the battle of Plataea; 107.
- Marius, i, m.* A distinguished Roman general, the conqueror of Jugurtha, and leader in the civil war against Sulla. He was consul seven times; 65, 67.
- Mars, Martis, m.* The god of war; sometimes put for war itself; 6, 115.
- Marsi, ōrum, m. pl.* A people of Latium; 66.
- Maximus, i, m.* A Roman surname; as of *Q. Fabius*, the famous dictator in the second Punic war, who weakened the force of Hannibal by delay; 29.
- Medius, i, m.* A Thessalian, friend of Alexander the Great; 139.
- Megarensis, is, m. and f.* A Megarian, a native of Megara, in Sicily; 100.
- Meleager, gri, m.* A commander in the service of Alexander the Great; 142.
- Memphis, is, f.* A city in Egypt; 133.
- Menenius, i, m.* (See *Agrippa*.)
- Metellus, i, m. (Q. Caecilius).* A Roman consul and leader in the war against Jugurtha; 62.
- Metius, i, m.* (See *Suffetius*.)
- Micipsa, æ, m.* A king of Numidia, the father of Adherbal and Hiempsal, and the uncle of Jugurtha; 65.
- Miltiades, is, m.* A celebrated Athenian general, conqueror at Marathon; 102.
- Minerva, æ, f.* Goddess of wisdom and patron divinity of Athens; 95.
- Minor, ōis.* (See *Armenia*.)
- Minos, ōis, m.* A king and lawgiver of Crete; 96.
- Misenum, i, n.* A promontory and town in Campania, in Italy; 83.
- Mithridates, is, m.* A celebrated king of Pontus; 67, 68, 69, 71.
- Mithridaticus, a, um.* Mithridatic; of or belonging to Mithridates; 67.
- Mucius, i, m.* A Roman name. *Mucius Scaevola*, a Roman youth who attempted to assassinate Porsena; 26.

- Mummius, i, m.* A Roman general who destroyed Corinth; 62, 156.  
*Munychia, ae, f.* A hill in the peninsula of Piræus, at the foot of which lies the harbor of the same name; 118.  
*Mycæle, ea, f.* A high promontory or mountain of Ionia, in Asia Minor; 107. [www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

## N.

- Nabis, is or idis, m.* A king of Sparta; 57.  
*Nasica, ae, m.* A surname in the Scipio family. *P. Scipio Nasica, a* Roman consul in the war against Jugurtha; 65.  
*Neptūnus, i, m.* The god of the sea; 9.  
*Nero, ōnis, m.* The fifth Roman emperor; 86, 94. Another of the same name was the son of Germanicus; 83. Also a surname of *Tiberius* and *Claudius*; 83, 85.  
*Nicias, ae, m.* An Athenian statesman and general; 109, 110.  
*Nicomēdes, is, m.* A king of Bithynia; 69.  
*Nilus, i, m.* The river Nile, in Egypt; 79, 133.  
*Nola, ae, f.* An ancient city in Campania; 51.  
*Nova, ae, f.* (See *Carthago*.)  
*Numa, ae, m.* (*Pompilius*). The second king of Rome; 13, 15.  
*Numantia, ae, f.* A city in Spain; 64.  
*Numantini, ōrum, m. pl.* The inhabitants of Numantia, the Numantines; 64.  
*Numidia, ae, f.* The country of Numidia, in Africa; 55.  
*Numida, ae, m.* A Numidian; 55, 65.  
*Numitor, ōris, m.* A king of Alba, grandfather of Romulus and Remus; 5, 8.  
*Nysa, ae, f.* A city in India; 137.

## O.

- Oceānus, i, m.* The Ocean; often used also to denote the Atlantic, sometimes the Pacific; 75, 137.  
*Octavia, ae, f.* The wife of the Emperor Nero; 86.  
*Octavianus, i, m.* (*Caesar*). The first Roman emperor, usually called Augustus after his victory at Actium; 80.  
*Octavius, i, m.* (*Cnaeus*). A Roman commander in the war against Perseus; 154.  
*Oenomaus, i, m.* A celebrated gladiator; 70.  
*Olympia, ōrum, n. pl.* The Olympic games; 99.  
*Olympiācus, or Olympius, a, um.* Olympic; 141.  
*Olynthus, i, f.* A city of Thrace; 120.  
*Olynthii, ōrum, m. pl.* The Olynthians; 124.  
*Orcādes, um, f. pl.* The Orkney islands, near Scotland; 85.  
*Oriens, entis, m.* The East, the countries of the East; 81, 129.  
*Orōdes, is, m.* The king of Parthia, by whom Crassus was taken and slain; 76.

*Ostia, ae, f.* A town in Latium, at the mouth of the Tiber; 15.  
*Otho, ðnis, m.* A Roman emperor who reigned but a few months; 87, 88.

www.libtool.com.cn

P.

- P.* An abbreviation for *Publius*, a Roman name; 38, 48, 49, 59, &c.  
*Palæstina, ae, f.* Palestine; 90.  
*Palatium, i, n.* The Palatine, one of the seven hills of Rome. The residence of Augustus was upon this; hence the term came to signify a *palace*; 86.  
*Pannonia, ae, f.* A Roman province north of Illyria; 146.  
*Papirius, i, m.* (See *Cursor*.)  
*Parmenio, ðnis, m.* A general in the service of Alexander the Great; 134, 135.  
*Parnassus, i, m.* A high mountain in Phocia, whose two summits were sacred to Apollo and the Muses; at its base stood the city of Delphi; 147.  
*Parthi, ðrum, m. pl.* A Scythian people in the vicinity of the Caspian, principally known as roving warriors; 76.  
*Paulus, or Paulus, i, m.* A surname in the Aemilian gens or tribe. *L. Aemilius Paulus*, the name of two Roman consuls, one of whom fell in the battle of Cannæ, 49; the other conquered Perseus at Pydna; 59, 154.  
*Pausanias, ae, m.* The leader of the Spartans in the battle of Plataea; 107. Another of the same name murdered Philip of Macedon; 127.  
*Pelasgi, ðrum, m. pl.* The Pelasgians, the earliest inhabitants of Greece; 97.  
*Peligni, ðrum, m. pl.* A people of Central Italy; 66.  
*Pelopidas, ae, m.* A celebrated Theban general; 120, 122.  
*Peloponnesus, i, f.* The Peloponnesus, a peninsula forming the southern part of Greece; now *the Morea*; 42, 96.  
*Peloponnesiæcus, a, um.* Peloponnesian; 109.  
*Pelops, ðpis, m.* Probably a Phrygian, the son of Tantalus. He settled in the southern peninsula of Greece, which from him was called Peloponnesus, i. e. the island of Pelops; 96, 99.  
*Perdiccæ, or Perdicca, ae, m.* One of the most distinguished of the generals of Alexander the Great; 140, 142, 143.  
*Pericles, is, m.* A celebrated Athenian orator and statesman; 108.  
*Persæ, ae, m.* A Persian; 102, 107, 114, 119, &c.  
*Perseus, i, m.* The last king of Macedonia; 152, 153, 154.  
*Persicus, a, um, adj.* Persian; 129.  
*Phalærum, i, n.* The oldest harbor of Athens; often called *Phalæricus portus*; 107.  
*Pharnaces, is, m.* Son of Mithridates; 72.  
*Pharsalus, i, f.* A city in Thessaly, where Pompey was defeated by Caesar; 78.  
*Philippi, ðrum, m. pl.* A city in Macedonia; 81.

- Philippus*, *i*, *m*. The name of several Macedonian kings, the most celebrated of whom was the father of Alexander the Great; 51, 57, 59, 122, 125, &c.
- Philopator*, *ōris*, *m*. A surname, meaning a lover of a father, given in derision to Ptolemy, king of Egypt, who slew his father and mother; 150.
- Phoebidas*, *ae*, *m*. A Lacedaemonian commander, who treacherously got possession of the Cadmea; 120.
- Phoenice*, *es*, or *Phoenicia*, *ae*, *f*. The country of Phoenicia, in Syria; 96, 132, 143.
- Phoroneus*, *i*, *m*. Son of Inachus, king of Argos; 96.
- Phyle*, *es*, *f*. A castle in Attica; 118.
- Picenum*, *i*, *n*. A district in the eastern part of Italy; 54.
- Picentes*, *um*, *pl*. The Picenes, the inhabitants of Picenum; 66.
- Piraeus*, or *Piraeus*, *i*, *m*. The Piraeus, the celebrated port of Athens; 107, 118.
- Pisa*, *ae*, *f*. A city of Elis, in Greece; 96.
- Plataeae*, *arum*, *f*, *pl*. Plataea, a city in Boeotia; 107.
- Plataenses*, *ium*, *m*, *pl*. The Plataeans, the inhabitants of Plataea; 102.
- Plautius*, *i*, *m*. (*A.*) A Roman commander who subdued the southern part of the island of Britain in the reign of Claudius; 85.
- Poenus*, *i*, *m*. A Carthaginian; 43, 44, 45.
- Pompeius*, *i*, *m*. The name of a Roman gens. *Cn. Pompeius*, a Roman consul and a distinguished commander, defeated by Caesar at Pharsalia; 72, 73, 77, 78. *Q. Pompeius*, also consul and commander, defeated in several engagements by the Numantines; 64.
- Pompeianus*, *a*, *um*, *adj*. Pompeian, of or belonging to Pompey; 79.
- Pompilius*, *i*, *m*. (See *Numa*.)
- Ponius*, *i*, *m*. (*Thelestinus*). A general of the Samnites, who conquered the Romans at the Caudine Forks; 37.
- Pontus*, *i*, *m*. A province in Asia Minor, south of the Black sea; 67.
- Porsena*, *ae*, *m*. A king of Etruria, in Italy; 25, 26.
- Postumius*, *i*, *m*. The name of a Roman gens or clan. *A. Postumius*, a Roman in whose consulship the first Punic war was brought to a close; 46. *Spurius Postumius*, a Roman consul, defeated by the Samnites at the Caudine Forks; 37.
- Praeneste*, *ia*, *n*. A town in Latium; 40.
- Priscus*, *i*, *m*. The surname of *Lucius Tarquinius*, the fifth king of Rome; 16, 18, 19.
- Procas*, *ae*, *m*. (*Silvius*). A king of Alba; 5.
- Pseudophilippus*, *i*, *m*. (See *Andriscus*.)
- Ptolemaeus*, *i*, *m*. Name of the kings of Egypt after Alexander the Great; 79, 143, 150. Another of the same name was the son of Pyrrhus, king of Epirus; 149.
- Publicola*, *ae*, *m*. Surname of *Valerius*, one of the first consuls at Rome; 23, 24.
- Pulvillus*, *i*, *m*. (*Horatius*). A Roman consul the first year after the banishment of Tarquin; 24.



- Punicus, a, um.* Punic, belonging to Carthage or the Carthaginians (*Poeni*); 46, 56, 57.  
*Pydna, ae, f.* A town of Macedonia, celebrated for the victory of Paulus over Perseus; 59.  
*Pyrenaeus, i, m.* The Pyrenees, a range of mountains between France and Spain; 48.  
*Pyrrhus, i, m.* A king of Epirus; 38—42.  
*Pythia, ae, f.* The priestess of Apollo, at Delphi; 103.

## Q

- Q.* or *Qu.* An abbreviation for *Quintus*; 26, 29, 62, &c.  
*Quinctius, i, m. (T.)* A Roman general at the time when the city was taken by the Gauls; 34. (See also *Flaminius*.)

## R.

- Regulus, i, m. (M. Atilius).* A distinguished Roman consul, taken prisoner by the Carthaginians in the first Punic war; 44, 45.  
*Remus, i, m.* The brother of Romulus; 6, 8.  
*Rhadamanthus, i, m.* Brother of Minos; 96.  
*Rhea, ae, f. (Silvia).* Daughter of Numitor and mother of Romulus and Remus; 6.  
*Rhenus, i, m.* The river Rhine; 75.  
*Rhodanus, i, m.* The river Rhone, in Gaul; 75.  
*Rhodus, i, f.* The island of Rhodes, on the coast of Asia Minor; 90.  
*Roma, ae, f.* Rome; 16, 17, 19, 23, &c.  
*Romanus, a, um, adj.* Roman; subs. *Romānus, i, m., a Roman*; 9, 19, 24, &c.  
*Romulus, i, m.* The founder of Rome; 8, 11, 13, &c. *Romulus Silvius*, an Alban king; 4.  
*Rullianus, i, m. (Q. Fabius).* Master of the knights or cavalry (*magister equitum*) under the dictator Papirius Cursor; 36.  
*Rutilius, i, m.* A Roman consul, slain in the Social war; 66.

## S.

- S.* An abbreviation for *Sextius* or *Spurius*; *Sp.* for *Spurius*; 24.  
*Sabini, orum, m. pl.* The Sabines, a people of Italy, bordering upon Latium; 13, 14, 91.  
*Saguntum, i, n.* A town in Spain, on the Mediterranean; 47.  
*Saguntini, orum, m. pl.* The Saguntines, citizens of Saguntum; 47.  
*Salamis, is or ins, f. (acc. Salamina), or Salamina, ae, f.* The island of Salamis, off the coast of Attica; 100, 103, 106.  
*Samnites, ium, m. pl.* The Samnites, the inhabitants of Samnium, in Italy; 36—38.  
*Samothracia, ae, f.* An island near the coast of Thrace; 154

- Samus*, or *Samos*, *i*, *f*. An island on the coast of Asia Minor; 90, 112.
- Sardes*, *ium*, *f*. Sardis, the ancient capital of Lydia; 101.
- Sardinia*, *ae*, *f*. The island of Sardinia, west of Italy; 46, 139.
- Sarmatæ*, *arum*, *m*. pl. The Sarmatians, a people dwelling between the Vistula and the Don, i. e. in parts of Poland and Russia; 94.
- Saturnia*, *ae*, *f*. The town and citadel built by Saturn; 1.
- Saturnus*, *i*, *m*. Saturn, the most ancient king of Latium; 1.
- Scaevola*, *ae*, *m*. (See *Mucius*.)
- Scipio*, *onis*, *m*. The name of a distinguished Roman family; 48, 50, 58.
- Scythia*, *ae*, *f*. Scythia, an extensive country in the north of Europe and Asia; 101, 125.
- Scythæ*, *arum*, *m*. pl. The Scythians; 101, 125.
- Sejanus*, *i*, *m*. The prefect of the praetorian bands under Tiberius; 88.
- Seleucia*, *ae*, *f*. A city of Syria, on the Orontes; 78.
- Seleucus*, *i*, *m*. A general of Alexander the Great; 143, 150.
- Sempronius*, *i*, *m*. (See *Gracchus*.)
- Sena*, *ae*, *f*. A town on the coast of Umbria (not *Picenum*), in Italy; 54.
- Seneca*, *ae*, *m*. A philosopher and rhetorician, put to death by the order of Nero; 86.
- Senones*, *um*, *m*. pl. A powerful people in Gaul; 33.
- Sergius*, *i*, *m*. (See *Catilina* and *Galba*.)
- Servilius*, *i*, *m*. (See *Casca*.)
- Servius*, *i*, *m*. A Roman name. *Servius Tullius*, *i*, *m*., the sixth king of Rome; 18, 19, 20.
- Sicilia*, *ae*, *f*. The island of Sicily; 43, 52, 108, 109, &c.
- Silvia*, *ae*, *f*. (See *Rhea*.)
- Silvius*, *i*, *m*. The name of several kings of Alba, the first of whom was the son of Aeneas; 3, 4, 5. Also a surname of Otho; 88.
- Solon*, *onis*, *m*. The celebrated lawgiver of Athens; 100.
- Sparta*, *ae*, *f*. The capital of Laconia, in the Peloponnesus; also called Lacedaemon; 98, 121.
- Spartanus*, *a*, *um*, *adj*. Spartan; sub. *Spartanus*, *i*, *m*., a Spartan; 98, 108, 116.
- Spartacus*, *i*, *m*. A celebrated gladiator who waged war against the Romans; 70.
- Spurius*, *i*, *m*. (See *Postumius*.)
- Suffetius*, *i*, *m*. (*Metius*). Dictator of the Albans. Having been summoned to aid the Romans against the Veientes, he drew off his forces at the very moment of battle and awaited the issue of the engagement. For this perfidy he was put to death by order of Tullius Hostilius; 14.
- Sulla*, *ae*, *m*. A distinguished Roman dictator and general; 66—68.
- Sulpicius*, *i*, *m*. A Roman consul; 154.
- Superbus*, *i*, *m*. The surname of Tarquin, the last king of Rome; 20, 21.
- Surenas*, *ae*, *m*. A general of the Parthians who defeated Crassus; 76.
- Sutrin*, *orum*, *m*. pl. The inhabitants of Sutrium, in Etruria; 31.
- Syphax*, *acis*, *m*. King of Numidia at the time of the second Punic war; 55.

*Syracusa*, *arum*, f. pl. A city in Sicily; 43, 52, 110.

*Syracusani*, *orum*, m. pl. The Syracusans, the citizens of Syracuse; 109, 110.

*Syria*, *ae*, f. A country in Asia, on the Mediterranean; 132.

*Syriacus*, *a, um*, adj. Syrian; 58.

## T.

*T.* An abbreviation for *Titus*; 34, 37, 57.

*Tandquil*, *ilis*, f. The wife of Tarquinius Priscus; 16, 18, 19.

*Tantalus*, *i*, m. The father of Pelops; 96.

*Tarentum*, *i*, n. A town of Lower Italy; 42.

*Tarentini*, *orum*, m. pl. The Tarentines, the inhabitants of Tarentum; 38.

*Tarpeia*, *ae*, f. A Roman maiden who betrayed the citadel of Rome to the Sabines; 10.

*Tarpeius*, *i*, m. One of the seven hills of Rome, also called *Capitolinus*. The Capitol was erected upon it; 11.

*Tarquini*, *orum*, m. pl. An ancient town of Etruria; 16.

*Tarquinius*, *i*, m. Tarquin, the name of the fifth king of Rome and of his descendants, as *Tarquinius Superbus*, the last king of Rome; and *Tarquinius Collatinus*, the husband of Lucretia; 16, 18, 19, 21, 23, &c.

*Taurus*, *i*, m. A range of mountains forming the southern limit of the high table-lands of Central Asia; in a more restricted sense the term usually denotes only the mountain-chain in the south of Asia Minor; 58.

*Terentius*, *i*, m. (See *Varro*.)

*Thaebae*, *arum*, f. pl. The capital of Boeotia, in Greece; 96, 120.

*Thebanus*, *a, um*, adj. Theban, 121; subs. *Thebanus*, *i*, m., a Theban; 120, 121, 125.

*Thelestinus*, *i*, m. (See *Pontius*.)

*Themistocles*, *is*, m. A celebrated Athenian commander; 103—107.

*Theramenes*, *is*, m. One of the Thirty Tyrants of Athens; 117.

*Thermopylae*, *arum*, f. pl. The famous defile or pass between Locria and Thessaly where Leonidas fell; 104, 105.

*Theseus*, *i*, m. An ancient king of Athens, son of Aegeus; 95.

*Thesprotius*, *i*, m. A Thesprotian; a native of Thesprotia, in Epirus; 97.

*Thessalia*, *ae*, f. The country of Thessaly, in Greece, south of Macedonia; 78, 95, 97, 124.

*Thessalus*, *a, um*, adj. Thessalian, 123; subs. *Thessalus*, *i*, m., a Thessalian; 139.

*Thessalus*, *i*, m. A native of Thesprotia, in Epirus, who is said to have formed a settlement in Thessaly, and to have given his name to the country; 97.

*Thessalonica*, *ae*, f. A city of Macedonia; 149.

*Thracia*, *ae*, f. The country of Thrace, east of Macedonia; 90, 124.

*Thrasylbulus*, *i*, m. An Athenian who liberated the city from the Thirty Tyrants; 118.

- Tibēris, is, m.* The river Tiber, in Italy; 6, 7, 15.  
*Tiberius, i, m.* The second Roman emperor; 83, 84, 94.  
*Ticinus, i, m.* A river in Cisalpine Gaul, famous for the victory of Hannibal over the Romans; 48, 53.  
*Tigrānes, is, m.* Son-in-law of Mithridates and king of Armenia; 71.  
*Tigranocerta, ōrum, n.* A city of Armenia, built by Tigranes; 71.  
*Tissaphernes, is, m.* A distinguished Persian satrap of Lower Asia, under Darius; afterwards general in the service of Artaxerxes; 114.  
*Titus, i, m.* A Roman emperor; 91, 92.  
*Torquatus, i, m.* Surname of *T. Manlius* and his descendants; 34.  
*Trasimēnus, i, m.* A lake in Etruria; 48.  
*Trebia, ae, f.* A river in Cisalpine Gaul; 48.  
*Triptolēmus, i, m.* A king of Eleusis who was regarded as the inventor of agriculture; 95.  
*Troezen, enis, f. (acc. Troezēna).* An ancient city of Argolis; 108.  
*Troja, ae, f.* The city of Troy; 2, 86.  
*Trojāni, ōrum, m. pl.* The Trojans; 2.  
*Tullia, ae, f.* The daughter of Servius Tullius and wife of Tarquinius Superbus; 20.  
*Tullius, i, m.* (See *Servius* and *Cicero*.)  
*Tullus, i, m.* (See *Hostilius*.)  
*Tuscia, ae, f.* Tuscany, in Italy, the same as Etruria; 48.  
*Tuscūlum, i, n.* An ancient town of Latium; 26.  
*Tyrus, i, f.* The city of Tyre, in Phoenicia; 132.  
*Tyrii, ōrum, m. pl.* Tyrians, the inhabitants of Tyre; 132.

## V.

- Valcrius, i, m.* A Roman name. (See *Publicola*, *Corvinus*, *Laevinus*.)  
*Varro, ōnis, m. (C. Terentius).* A Roman consul defeated at Cannae; 49.  
*Vecta, ae, f.* An island off the southern coast of Britain; now the *Isle of Wight*; 90.  
*Veientes, um, or Veientāni, ōrum, m. pl.* The Veintians, the inhabitants of Veii, in Etruria; 29, 32.  
*Vespaſiānus, i, m.* The emperor Vespasian; 89, 90, 92.  
*Vesta, ae, f.* Vesta, the goddess of the hearth, to whom a perpetual fire was kept burning; 6.  
*Vestālis, e, adj.* Vestal; 6.  
*Veturia, ae, f.* The mother of Coriolanus; 28.  
*Veturius, i, m. (T.)* A Roman consul defeated by the Samnites at the Caudine Forks; 37.  
*Virginia, ae, f.* The daughter of Virginius, slain by her father to save her from the designs of Appius Claudius; 30.  
*Virginius, i, m. (L.)* A distinguished Roman centurion, father of Virginia; 30.  
*Viriāthus, i, m.* The leader of the Lusitanians in their war with the Romans; 63.

*Vitellius, i, m.* A Roman emperor; 88, 89.

*Volsci, ōrum, m. pl.* The Volsci or Volscians, a people of Latium; 28, 31.

*Volturnia, ae, f.* The wife of Coriolanus; 28.

[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

X.

*Xanthippus, i, m.* A Spartan commander who took Regulus prisoner in the first Punic war; 44.

*Xerxes, is, m.* A celebrated Persian king; 103—107.

Z.

*Zama, ae, f.* A town of Numidia, in Africa, famous for the victory of Scipio over Hannibal; 56.

## Latin Classical Books.

# Second Latin Book;

COMPREHENDING AN HISTORICAL LATIN READER, WITH NOTES AND RULES FOR TRANSLATING, AND AN EXERCISE BOOK, DEVELOPING A COMPLETE ANALYTICAL SYNTAX, IN A SERIES OF LESSONS AND EXERCISES, INVOLVING THE CONSTRUCTION, ANALYSIS, AND RECONSTRUCTION OF LATIN SENTENCES.

By ALBERT HARKNESS, A. M.

SENIOR MASTER IN THE PROVIDENCE HIGH SCHOOL.

12mo. 362 pages. Price 90 cents.

This work is designed as a sequel to the author's "First Latin Book." It comprises a complete analytical syntax, exhibiting the essential structure of the Latin language, from its simplest to its most expanded and elaborate form.

The arrangement of the lessons is decidedly philosophical, gradually progressive, and in strict accordance with the law of development of the human mind. Every new principle is stated in simple, clear, and accurate language, and illustrated by examples carefully selected from the reading lessons, which the student is required to translate, analyze, and reconstruct. He is also exercised in forming new Latin sentences on given models. This, while it gives variety and interest to what would otherwise be in the highest degree monotonous, completely fixes in the mind the subject of the lesson, both by analysis and synthesis.

The careful study of this volume, on the plan recommended by the author, will greatly facilitate the pupil's progress in the higher departments of the language. Such is the testimony of the numerous institutions in which Harkness's improved edition of Arnold has been introduced.

*From J. A. SPENCER, D. D., late Professor of Latin in Burlington College, N. J.*

"The present volume appears to me to carry out excellently the system on which the late lamented Arnold based his educational works; and in the Selections for Reading, the Notes and Rules for Translating, the Exercises in Translating into Latin, the Analyses, &c., I think it admirably adapted to advance the diligent student not only rapidly, but soundly, in an acquaintance with the Latin language."

*From PROF. GAMMELL, of Brown University.*

"The book seems to me, as I anticipated it would be, a valuable addition to the works now in use among teachers of Latin in the schools of the United States, and for many of them it will undoubtedly form an advantageous substitute."

*From PROF. LINCOLN, of Brown University.*

"It seems, to me, to carry on most successfully the method pursued in the First Book. Though brief, it is very comprehensive, and combines judicious and skillfully ordered exercises with systematic instruction."

*From J. J. OWEN, D. D. Professor of the Latin and Greek Languages and Literature in the Free Academy, New York.*

"This Second Latin Book gives abundant evidence of the author's learning and tact to arrange, simplify, and make accessible to the youthful mind the great and fundamental principles of the Latin language. The book is worthy of a place in every classical school, and I trust will have an extensive sale."

*From PROF. ANDERSON, of Lewisburg University, Pennsylvania.*

"A faithful use of the work would diminish the drudgery of the student's earlier studies, and facilitate his progress in his subsequent course. I wish the work a wide circulation."

# HARKNESS' SECOND LATIN BOOK:

COMPRISING A

**HISTORICAL LATIN READER, WITH NOTES AND RULES FOR TRANSLATING—AND AN EXERCISE BOOK, DEVELOPING A COMPLETE ANALYTICAL SYNTAX, IN A SERIES OF LESSONS AND EXERCISES, INVOLVING THE CONSTRUCTION, ANALYSIS, AND RECONSTRUCTION OF LATIN SENTENCES.** BY ALBERT HARKNESS, A. M., PRINCIPAL OF THE CLASSICAL DEPARTMENT IN THE NEW ENGLAND NORMAL INSTITUTE. 362 PAGES. PRICE 90 CTS.

---

Just Published by

D. APPLETON AND COMPANY, NEW-YORK.

THIS work is designed as a sequel to the author's "FIRST LATIN BOOK," recently published, and has already acquired a wide reputation. It comprises a complete analytical syntax, exhibiting the sentential structure of the Latin language, from its simplest to its most expanded and modified form.

The arrangement of the lessons is decidedly philosophical, gradually progressive, and we believe in strict accordance with the law of development of the human mind. Every new principle is stated in simple, clear and accurate language, and illustrated by examples carefully selected from the reading lessons which the student is required to translate, analyze and reconstruct—he is also exercised in forming new Latin sentences on given models. This, while it gives variety and interest to what would otherwise be in the highest degree monotonous, completely fixes in the mind the subject of the lesson both by analysis and synthesis.

---

### Opinions of Distinguished and Practical Instructors.

*From W. S. TYLER, Professor of Languages in Amherst College.*

Among the chief merits of Harkness' Second Book are the following:

1. It happily unites the analytic and the synthetic methods, and requires the pupil to turn Latin into English, and also English into Latin, in every lesson. Neither of these methods is complete without the other.

2. It points out, with clearness and correctness, the differences between the two languages as to idiom, construction, &c., and teaches the scholar at once to use *idiomatic English*, and to write *pure Latin*.

3. The Rules for Translating are concise, perspicuous and judicious—well selected and well expressed. The editor teaches by example, also, a neat and free, but *not* loose or inexact style of translation.

4. The analysis of the structure of sentences is eminently philosophical and at the same time sufficiently simple and intelligible for beginners. This is one of the most striking excellencies of the book.

5. The notes furnish the right kind of guidance and assistance, showing the student what to do and how to do it, but not doing it for him.

I am so well pleased with the book, that I shall put my own boy into it; and I predict for it unusual success.

*From J. J. OWEN, D. D., Professor of the Latin and Greek Languages and Literature in the Free Academy, New-York.*

I am happy to express to you my high sense of the value of Prof. Harkness' labors in the cause of classical learning, especially in the Elementary Latin books which he has edited for your publishing house. His "Second Latin Book" gives abundant evidence of his learning, and tact to arrange, simplify, and make accessible to the youthful mind the great and fundamental principles of the Latin language. The book is worthy of a place in every classical school, and I trust will have an extensive sale.

*From the Rev. J. A. SPENCER, D. D., late Professor of Latin and Oriental Languages in Burlington College, New Jersey.*

I have given some attention to the "Second Latin Book" of Mr. Harkness, and am happy to find it all that the public had reason to expect from the high reputation acquired by Mr. H.'s previous labors. The present volume appears to me to carry out excellently the system on which the late lamented Arnold based his educational works; and in the Selections for Reading, the Notes and Rules for Translating, the Exercises in Translating into Latin, the Analyses, &c., I think it admirably adapted to advance the diligent student, not only rapidly but soundly, in an acquaintance with the Latin language.

*From DR. CASWELL, Regent of Brown University.*

Accept my very sincere thanks for the copy of "Harkness' Second Latin Book," which you had the kindness to send me. I have looked it over so far as to be satisfied that it will be a very useful book.

*From PROF. GAMMELL, of Brown University.*

The examination has led me to form a most favorable estimate of the plan of the work, and also of the manner in which it has been executed. The book seems to me, as I anticipated it would be, a valuable addition to the works now in use among teachers of Latin in the schools of the United States, and for many of them it will undoubtedly form an advantageous substitute.

*From PROF. LINCOLN, of Brown University.*

I have examined with great satisfaction the copy of Harkness' Second Latin Book. It seems to me to carry on most successfully the method pursued in the First Book. Though brief, it is very comprehensive, and combines judicious and skillfully formed exercises with systematic instruction.

*From S. BELDEN, Principal of the Fruit Hill Classical Institute, R. I.*

The perusal of your Second Latin Book has given me much satisfaction. In my experience as a classical teacher, I have long felt the need of a work of this kind, elucidating more fully than is usually done in Latin Grammar the nature and structure of Latin sentences, especially those that are complex and of more difficult construction. I think that you have been very successful in making plain and easy this most difficult and yet very important part of Latin Syntax. While, therefore, I am pleased with the reading extracts, I am especially so with the syntactical exercises. I shall at once introduce the work into my school.



*From G. E. JACKSON, Classical Instructor in the Boarding School, Alexandria, Va.*

If Mr. Harkness' work will not make *swift* Latin students, it will at least make *thorough* ones. It seems better adapted to introduce a student to Cicero than any other work, and might, perhaps, be usefully substituted in the room of Cæsar and Nepos

*From N. B. COOKE, Principal of the High School, Bristol, R. I.*

Harkness' Second Latin Book has completed the work which his First so admirably began,—the development of a lucid and truly philosophical method of introducing the young pupil to the knowledge of the Latin. Such a work has hitherto been a desideratum. With these books, I conceive that the teacher will desire nothing more to cover the same ground.

*From PROF. HAVEN, of the University of Michigan.*

I admire in this book the perspicuity and natural order of the rules, its correctness, sufficient fulness, and freedom from redundancy, and, at the same time, its beautiful typography. I am fully convinced that a faithful use of the First and Second Latin Books will place the pupil securely on the right track, and facilitate, more than any other elementary treatises with which I am acquainted, his thorough understanding of the language.

I heartily wish that all students preparing for this college would study both books thoroughly.

*From PROF. ANDERSON, of Lewisburg University, Pa.*

I am happy to be able to express my high gratification, both with the plan and the execution of the work. The simplicity, yet thoroughness, with which each successive grammatical point is treated, peculiarly adapts it for those who are striving to master both the form and the spirit of the language. A faithful use of the work would diminish the drudgery of the student's earlier studies, and facilitate his progress in his subsequent course. I wish the work a wide circulation.

*From A. P. S. STUART, Principal of the Holden High School, N. Danvers, Mass.*

Your Second Latin Book is what I was prepared to expect from the character of your First Book—a lucid development of the structure of the Latin sentence, embracing at once what is sufficient, and yet no more than is necessary to give the pupil a clear and comprehensive view of the structure of the language. I shall recommend its introduction into my school.

*From DAVID TURNER, Principal of the Select Classical and English School, Richmond, Va.*

I have examined your Second Latin Book with care, and beg to say that I regard it as a valuable contribution to the cause of sound classical learning. In the Latin text, and in the Exercises in Grammatical Analysis which it contains, it is an admirable introduction to the study of the classic authors.

*From E. L. HART, Principal of the English & Classical School, Farmington, Conn.*

I have examined the Second Latin Book just published by the Messrs. Appleton, with much care and great pleasure. I like its *plan*,—the *union of Reading Lessons in Latin with Exercises* in the analysis and reconstruction of Latin sentences, and in translations from English into Latin. It is the *true* way of teaching Latin. The Exercises are remarkable for their simplicity and clearness, and lead on the scholar step by step from first principles in their simplest forms to their more complicated combinations in a manner most thorough and easily comprehended, till the perfect structure of the Latin language is gradually wrought out before him.

*From J. W. FAIRM, Principal of the Classical Institute, Philadelphia.*

In my opinion, Harkness' Second Latin Book is an excellent manual. The epitomes of Roman and Grecian history which constitute the Reader are decidedly superior in Latinity to those which have hitherto been in use. While the style is very concise, it is also clear, and the narrative sufficiently connected to be interesting. The notes are especially worthy of commendation, since they not only furnish translation of difficult words and passages, but also by the frequent references to grammar, direct the attention of the learner to the distinction of the moods and the structure and idioms of the language.

*From J. F. CADY, Principal of the High School, Warren, R. I.*

As no Latin book has yet appeared so suitable for beginners as your First Book, so there is nothing so suitable for a sequel to it as your Second Book. I regard the presentation of the parallel Latin and English idioms in both books as an invaluable feature, conducive alike to a clear and satisfactory understanding of the Latin, and to precision and elegance in translating into English. The First and Second Latin Books are altogether unrivalled; they will bear all reasonable tests, and will be more fully appreciated the more fully they are understood.

*From E. S. HOWARD, Principal of the Girls' High School, Bangor.*

I have examined the work as far as I have been able, and am much pleased with it. I think it admirably adapted to accomplish the purpose for which it is designed. It will, I have no doubt, have a wide circulation.

*From G. CAPRON, Principal of the Worcester High School.*

The exercises which are to be studied in connection with the reading lessons render the Second Latin Book invaluable for the young scholar. The pupil who goes through these exercises, in accordance with the design of the author, must, of necessity, carefully study the text, and, by a constant repetition of the words and sentences, become familiar with the vocabulary, and fix in the mind the construction and idioms of the language. The book seems to me admirably adapted to introduce the scholar to the study of the classic authors.

*From R. S. JAMES, Principal of the High School, Norwalk, Conn.*

In substituting the concise histories of the Roman Empire and of Greece for the ridiculous mythology and trifling anecdotes of former Readers, you have rendered an incalculable service to the minds of the young. But the chief excellence of the work consists in the superior manner in which the principles of the grammar are developed and illustrated. Your series is used in this institution, and we find it a pleasure to teach with such books.

*From V. G. WALKER, Principal of the East Corinth Academy, Maine.*

Harkness' Second Latin Book is just what is needed in our schools. I think it the most thorough and complete work on the construction of Latin sentences I have ever seen. I believe it well calculated to interest the scholar in those parts commonly dry and difficult, and by a series of progressive exercises to give a great amount of knowledge with less than the ordinary amount of study.

*From S. H. TAYLOR, Principal of Phillip's Academy, Andover, Mass.*

The author, who is a very successful teacher, has just views of the manner in which the Latin should be studied, and has clearly and happily embodied these in his book, which in all its parts is well executed, and I regard it as very happily adapted to give the pupil who will faithfully study it critical and comprehensive views of the Latin language.

## Latin Classical Works.

### Select Orations of M. Tullius Cicero

WITH NOTES, FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES.

BY E. A. JOHNSON,

PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN THE UNIVERSITY OF NEW YORK.

12mo. 459 pages. Price \$1.

This edition of Cicero's Select Orations possesses some special advantages for the student which are both new and important. It is the only edition which contains the improved text that has been prepared by a recent careful collation and correct deciphering of the best manuscripts of Cicero's writings. It is the work of the celebrated Orelli, Madvig, and Klotz, and has been done since the appearance of Orelli's complete edition. The Notes, by Professor Johnson, of the New York University, have been mostly selected, with great care, from the best German authors, as well as the English edition of Arnold.

*From THOMAS CHASE, Tutor in Latin in Harvard University.*

"An edition of Cicero like Johnson's has long been wanted; and the excellence of the text, the illustrations of words, particles, and pronouns, and the explanation of various points of construction and interpretation, bear witness to the Editor's familiarity with some of the most important results of modern scholarship, and entitle his work to a large share of public favor."

"It seems to us an improvement upon any edition of these orations that has been published in this country, and will be found a valuable aid in their studies to the lovers of classical literature."—*Troy Daily Whig*,



### Cicero de Officiis,

WITH ENGLISH NOTES, MOSTLY TRANSLATED FROM ZUMPT AND BONNELL,

BY THOMAS A. THACHER,

OF YALE COLLEGE.

12mo. 194 pages. Price 90 Cents.

In this edition, a few historical notes have been introduced in cases where the Dictionary in common use have not been found to contain the desired information; the design of which is to aid the learner in understanding the contents of the treatise, the thoughts and reasoning of the author, to explain grammatical difficulties, and inculcate a knowledge of grammatical principles. The Editor has aimed throughout to guide rather than carry the learner through difficulties; requiring of him more study, in consequence of his help, than he would have devoted to the book without it.

*From M. L. STOEVEK, Professor of the Latin Language and Literature in Penn. College.*

"I have examined with much pleasure Prof. Thacher's edition of Cicero de Officiis, and am convinced of its excellence. The Notes have been prepared with great care and good judgment. Practical knowledge of the wants of the student has enabled the Editor to furnish just the kind of assistance required; grammatical difficulties are removed, and the obscurities of the treatise are explained, the interest of the learner is elicited, and his industry directed rather than superseded. There can be but one opinion with regard to the merits of the work, and I trust that Professor Thacher will be disposed to continue his labors so carefully commenced, in this department of classical learning."

## Greek Classical Works.

# Greek Ollendorff;

BEING A PROGRESSIVE EXHIBITION OF THE PRINCIPLES OF THE  
GREEK GRAMMAR.

www.libtool.com.cn  
BY ASAHEL C. KENDRICK,

PROFESSOR OF THE GREEK LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE IN THE UNIVERSITY  
OF ROCHESTER.

12mo. 371 pages. Price \$1.

The present work is what its title indicates, strictly an *Ollendorff*, and aims to apply the methods which have proved so successful in the acquisition of the modern languages to the study of Ancient Greek, with such differences as the different genius of the Greek, and the different purposes for which it is studied, suggest. It differs from the modern Ollendorffs in containing exercises for reciprocal translation, in confining them within a smaller compass, and in a more methodical exposition of the principles of the language.

The leading object of the author was to furnish a book which should serve as an *introduction* to the study of Greek, and precede the use of any grammar. It will therefore be found, although not claiming to embrace all the principles of the Grammar, yet complete in itself, and will lead the pupil, by insensible gradations, from the simpler constructions to those which are more complicated and difficult. The exceptions, and the more idiomatic forms, it studiously avoids, aiming only to exhibit the regular and ordinary usages of the language as the proper starting-point for the student's further researches.

In presenting these, the author has aimed to combine the strictest accuracy with the utmost simplicity of statement. His work is therefore adapted to a younger class of pupils than have usually engaged in the study of Greek, and will, it is hoped, win to the acquisition of that noble tongue many in our academies and primary schools who have been repelled by the less simple character of our ordinary text-books.

---

## EXERCISES IN

# Greek Composition.

ADAPTED TO THE FIRST BOOK OF XENOPHON'S ANABASIS

By JAMES R. BOISE,

PROFESSOR OF GREEK IN THE UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN.

12mo. 185 pages. Price 75 Cents.

These Exercises consist of easy sentences, similar to those in the *Anabasis*, in having the same words and constructions, and are designed by frequent repetition to make the learner familiar with the language of Xenophon. Accordingly, the chapters and sections in both are made to correspond. No exercises can be more improving than those in this volume; obliging the student as they do, by analysis and synthesis, to master the constructions employed by one of the purest of Greek writers, and imbuing him with the spirit of one of the greatest historians of all antiquity.

## Greek Classical Works.

SHORT AND COMPREHENSIVE

# Greek Grammar

By J. T. CHAMPLIN.

PROFESSOR OF GREEK AND LATIN IN WATREVILLE COLLEGE

12mo. 208 pages. Price 75 cents.

In compiling this grammar, Prof. Champlin has drawn upon the best critics and grammarians, and with the results of his research has interwoven much original matter suggested during several years' experience in teaching, and editing Greek authors. His design is to exhibit the essential facts and principles of the language in the clearest, briefest, and most practicable form possible. With this view, all theories and complications belonging to general grammar have been avoided, and only their results used. The amplification and illustration of principles have been carried only so far as is necessary to their comprehension. In this way all the real wants of the Greek student are met, while his attention is not distracted by unnecessary and embarrassing details. Materials for oral exercises are supplied, and a sketch of Greek versification is given in an appendix.

*From the REV. MR. ANDERSON, New Orleans.*

"I believe the author has fully accomplished what he proposes in his preface. To those wishing to study Greek, I am satisfied he has presented a book which will much tend to simplify the study to beginners—and at the same time, without being too voluminous, presents as lucid and full an exposition of the principles of the language, as can be contained within so small a compass.

---

## Kuhner's Greek Grammar,

TRANSLATED BY

PROFESSORS EDWARDS AND TAYLOR.

Large 12mo. 620 pages. Price \$1 50.

Kuhner's is universally acknowledged to be the most accurate, comprehensive, clear, and practical grammar of the Greek language now extant. It is the work of one who devoted his life to Greek philology, and spent years of patient labor in perfecting this work. Too full and learned for the beginner, it is just what is needed for the college curriculum, containing all that a book of reference should contain. The student will never appeal to its pages in vain. In fulness of illustration, copiousness of reference, and philosophical analysis of the various forms of language, it is unsurpassed, we might say unequalled.

The present translation is made by two distinguished American scholars, who have revised the whole, verified the references, and appended an original treatise of their own on Greek versification. As now presented to the public, it is believed to be as perfect a grammar of the Greek language as enlightened research and profound scholarship can produce.

## Greek Classical Works.

# Xenophon's Anabasis.

WITH EXPLANATORY NOTES FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES IN THE UNITED STATES.

BY JAMES R. BOISE,

PROFESSOR OF GREEK IN THE UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN.

12mo. 393 pages. Price \$1.

A handsome and convenient edition of this great classic, really adapted to the wants of schools, has long been needed; the want is here met by Professor Boise in a manner that leaves nothing to be desired. Decidedly the best German editions, whether text or commentary be considered, have appeared within the last few years; and of these Mr. Boise has made free use; while, at the same time, he has not lost sight of the fact that the classical schools of this country are behind those of Germany, and that simpler and more elementary explanations are therefore often necessary in a work prepared for American schools. Nothing has been put in the notes for the sake of a mere display of learning,—pedantry is out of place in a school-book; and nothing has been introduced by way of comment except what can be turned to practical use by the reader.

An historical introduction, which will enable the pupil to enter on his task intelligently, is prefixed. An abundance of geographical information, embodying the latest discoveries of travellers, is supplied; and the whole is illustrated with Kiepert's excellent map, showing the entire route of the ten thousand on their retreat.

*From DR. WILLIAM SMITH, London, Author of "History of Greece,"  
"Dictionary of Antiquities," &c. &c.*

"I am very much obliged to you for a copy of your edition of Xenophon's Anabasis, which I have carefully inspected, and think to be decidedly the best edition of the work I have hitherto seen, for school and college purposes."

---

# Xenophon's Memorabilia of Socrates

WITH NOTES AND AN INTRODUCTION.

BY R. D. C. ROBBINS,

PROFESSOR OF LANGUAGES IN MIDDLESEX COLLEGE, VERMONT.

12mo. 421 pages. Price \$1.

This will be found an exceedingly useful book for College classes. The text is large and distinct, the typography accurate, and the notes judicious and scholarly. Instead of referring the student to a variety of books, few of which are within his reach, the editor has wisely supplied whatever is necessary. An admirable treatise on the Life of Socrates introduces the work, and English and Greek indexes render it easy to refer to the text and notes.

*From PROF. HARRISON, University of Virginia.*

"The Notes contain, in much detail, the grammatical and other explanations which it would be convenient for the learner to have placed before him, instead of having to refer to various books. I have no doubt that the Notes are very carefully prepared, and in accordance with the best authorities."

## Greek Classical Works.

SHORT AND COMPREHENSIVE

# Greek Grammar

www.libtool.com.cn

BY J. T. CHAMPLIN.

PROFESSOR OF GREEK AND LATIN IN WATERVILLE

12mo. 208 pages. Price 75 cents.

In compiling this grammar, Prof. Champlin has drawn upon the grammarians, and with the results of his research has interwoven much suggested during several years' experience in teaching, and editing. His design is to exhibit the essential facts and principles of the language, in the most brief, and most practicable form possible. With this view complications belonging to general grammar have been avoided, and only the essentials used. The amplification and illustration of principles have been so far as is necessary to their comprehension. In this way all the Greek student are met, while his attention is not distracted by barren details. Materials for oral exercises are supplied, and verification is given in an appendix.

From the Rev. Mr. ANDERSON, *New Orleans*.

"I believe the author has fully accomplished what he had in view. To those wishing to study Greek, I am satisfied he has presented the most perfect and to simplify the study to beginners—and at the same time presents as lucid and full an exposition of the language, as can be contained within so small a compass.

## Kuhner's Greek

TRANSLATED BY

PROFESSORS EDWARDS

Large 12mo. 628 pages.

Kuhner's is universally acknowledged to be a clear, and practical grammar of the Greek language. It is one who devoted his life to the study of the language.

perfecting this work. The full and learned author has adapted it for the college curriculum, containing all the essentials.

The student will never appeal to its pages for a solution of a grammatical question, and philosophical inquiries, and a comprehensive, we might say, a complete, and a complete.

The present translation is the work of two of our best scholars, and has been carefully revised by the author.





## Greek Classical Works.

# Arnold's Greek Course.

REVISED, CORRECTED AND IMPROVED.

BY THE REV. J. A. SPENCER, D. D.

LATE PROFESSOR OF LATIN AND ORIENTAL LANGUAGES IN BURLINGTON COLLEGE, N. J.

**FIRST GREEK BOOK, ON THE PLAN OF THE FIRST LATIN BOOK.** 12mo. 291 pages. Price 75 cents.

**PRACTICAL INTRODUCTION TO GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION.** 12mo. 287 pages. Price 75 cents.

**SECOND PART TO THE ABOVE.** 12mo. 248 pages. Price 75 cents.

**GREEK READING BOOK.** CONTAINING THE SUBSTANCE OF THE PRACTICAL INTRODUCTION TO GREEK CONSTRUING, AND A TREATISE ON THE GREEK PARTICLES; ALSO, COPIOUS SELECTIONS FROM GREEK AUTHORS, WITH CRITICAL AND EXPLANATORY ENGLISH NOTES, AND A LEXICON. 12mo. 618 pages. Price \$1 25.

A complete, thorough, practical, and easy Greek course is here presented. The beginner commences with the "First Book," in which the elementary principles of the language are unfolded, not in abstract language, difficult both to comprehend and to remember, but as practically applied in sentences. Throughout the whole, the pupil sees just where he stands, and is taught to use and apply what he learns. His progress is, therefore, as rapid as it is intelligent and pleasant. There is no unnecessary verbiage, nor is the pupil's attention diverted from what is really important by a mass of minor details. It is the experience of teachers who use this book, that with it a given amount of Greek Grammar can be imparted to a pupil in a shorter time and with far less trouble than with any other text-book.

The "First Book" may with advantage be followed by the "Introduction to Greek Prose Composition." The object of this work is to enable the student, as soon as he can decline and conjugate with tolerable facility, to translate simple sentences after given examples and with given words; the principles employed being those of imitation and very frequent repetition. It is at once a Syntax, a Vocabulary, and an Exercise book. The "Second Part" carries the subject further, unfolding the most complicated constructions, and the nicest points of Latin Syntax. A Key is provided for the teacher's use.

The "Reader," besides extracts judiciously selected from the Greek classics, contains valuable instructions to guide the learner in translating and construing, and a complete exposition of the particles, their signification and government. It is a fitting sequel to the earlier parts of the course, everywhere showing the hand of an acute critic, an accomplished scholar, and an experienced teacher.

*From the REV. DR. COLEMAN, Professor of Greek and Latin, Princeton, N. J.*

"I can, from the most satisfactory experience, bear testimony to the excellence of your series of Text-Books for Schools. I am in the daily use of Arnold's Latin and Greek Exercises, and consider them decidedly superior to any other Elementary Works in those Languages."

[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

---

[www.libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

Standard Classical Works.

- Arnold's First Greek Book,\* in the First Part of the First Latin Book.** 12mo. 237 pages, . . . . . 75
- Arnold's Practical Introduction to Greek Prose Composition.\*** 12mo. 237 pages, . . . . . 75
- Arnold's Second Part to the Above.\*** 12mo. 215 pages, . . . . . 73
- Arnold's Greek Reading Book.** Containing the substance of the Practical Introduction to Greek Composition and a Treatise on the Greek Particles; also, Choice Selections from Greek Authors, with Critical and Explanatory English Notes and a Lexicon. 12mo. 615 pages, . . . . . 1 55
- Dr. Arnold's Greek Courses have been carefully revised, corrected, and improved by J. A. SPENCER, D.D., making them a thorough, practical, and easy Greek course.
- Boase's Exercises in Greek Prose Composition.** Adapted to the First Book of Xenophon's Anabasis. By JAMES E. BOASE, Professor of Greek in University of Michigan. 12mo. 155 pages, . . . . . 70
- Champlin's Short and Comprehensive Greek Grammar.** By J. T. CHAMPLIN, Professor of Greek and Latin in Waterville College. 12mo. 268 pages, . . . . . 78
- First Lessons in Greek;\*** or, the Beginner's Companion-Book to Hadley's Grammar. By JAMES MONRO WRIGHT, teacher of Hopkins Grammar School, New Haven, Ct. (Recently published.) 12mo, . . . . . 73
- Hadley's Greek Grammar,\*** for Schools and Colleges. By JAMES HADLEY, Professor in Yale College. (Recently published.) 12mo. 366 pages, . . . . . 1 55
- Herodotus, Selections From;** Comprising mainly such portions as give a Connected History of the East, to the Fall of Babylon and the Death of Cyrus the Great. By HENRY M. JOHNSON, D.D., Professor of Philosophy and English Literature in Dickinson College. 12mo. 185 pages, . . . . . 75
- Kuhn's Greek Grammar.** Translated by Professors EDWARDS and TAYLOR. Large 12mo. 626 pages, . . . . . 1 50

Standard Classical Works.

**Kendrick's Greek Elements.** Being a Progressive Exhibition of the Principles of the Greek Grammar. By ASAHEL C. KENDRICK, Professor of Greek Language in the University of Rochester. 12mo. 811 pages, . . . . . 1 00

**Plato**

Gr  
pag

**Xeno**

and  
Mid

**Xeno**

of S  
in t

**Sopho**

of S  
in t

**Gesen**

Cor  
J. C  
inar

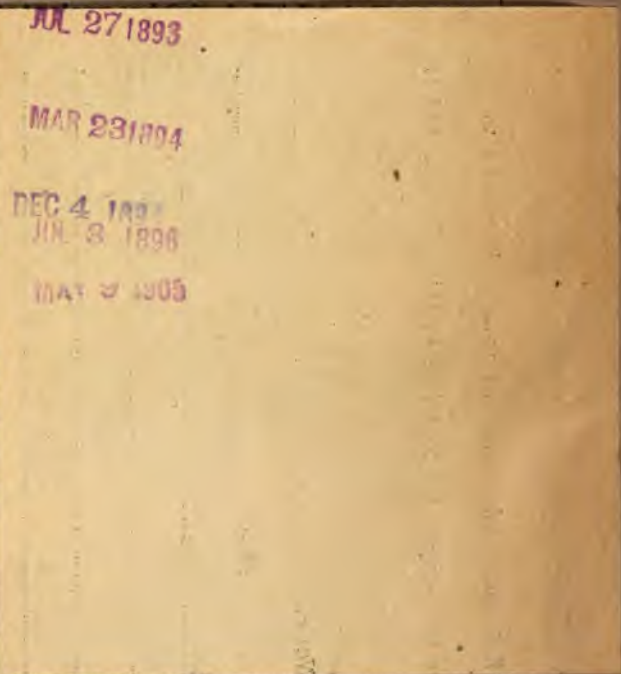
**Uhlen**

mar  
Syr  
by t

PUBLISH

20

Includin



Italian, Hebrew, and Syriac; of which a complete

**Descriptive Catalogue**

*Will be sent, free of postage, to those applying for it.*

A single copy for *examination*, of any of the works marked thus\*, will be transmitted by mail, postage prepaid, to any *Teacher* remitting one-half of its price. Any of the others will be sent by mail, *postage prepaid*, upon receipt of full retail price.